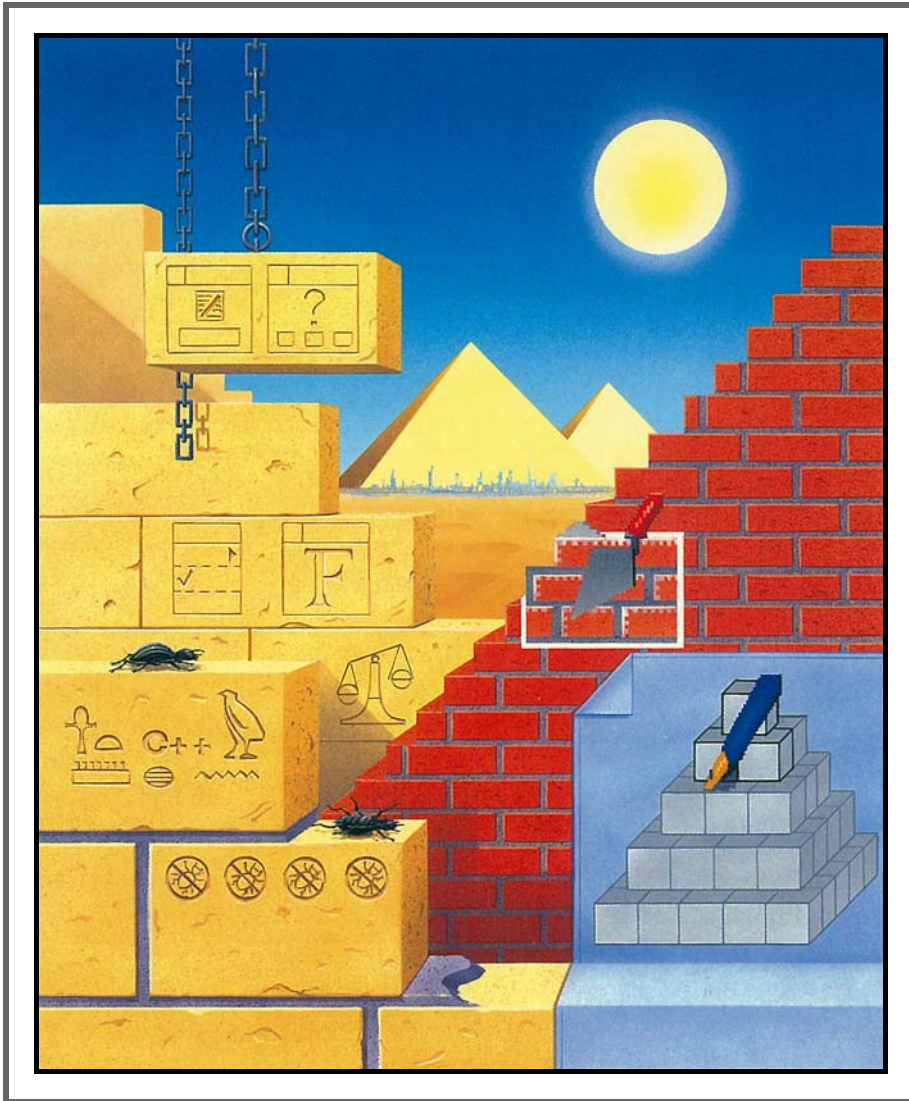


# User Interface Toolbox



---

Copyright © 1994 Acorn Computers Limited. All rights reserved.

Updates and changes copyright © 2014-2022 RISC OS Open Ltd. All rights reserved.

Issue 1 published by Acorn Computers Technical Publications Department.

Issues 2-4 published by RISC OS Open Ltd.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, or stored in any retrieval system of any nature, without the written permission of the copyright holder and the publisher, application for which shall be made to the publisher.

The product described in this manual is not intended for use as a critical component in life support devices or any system in which failure could be expected to result in personal injury.

The product described in this manual is subject to continuous development and improvement. All information of a technical nature and particulars of the product and its use (including the information and particulars in this manual) are given by the publisher in good faith. However, the publisher cannot accept any liability for any loss or damage arising from the use of any information or particulars in this manual.

If you have any comments on this manual, please complete the form at the back of the manual and send it to the address given there.

All trademarks are acknowledged as belonging to their respective owners.

Published by RISC OS Open Ltd.

Issue 1, December 1994 (Acorn part number 0484,231).

Issue 2, October 2014 (updates by RISC OS Open Ltd).

Issue 3, October 2019 (minor corrections by RISC OS Open Ltd).

Issue 4, September 2022 (updates by RISC OS Open Ltd).

---

# Contents

---

## **1 Introduction to the Toolbox 1**

Introduction 1
Toolbox Application Model 4
Toolbox objects 6
Event handling 11
Resource files 14
Task initialisation and run-time information 15
Message texts and nationalisation 16
An Example object 17
Toolbox SWIs 19
SWI Toolbox_CreateObject (0x44ec0) 19
SWI Toolbox_DeleteObject (0x44ec1) 20
SWI Toolbox_ShowObject (0x44ec3) 21
SWI Toolbox_HideObject (0x44ec4) 22
SWI Toolbox_GetObjectState (0x44ec5) 23
SWI Toolbox_ObjectMiscOp (0x44ec6) 24
SWI Toolbox_SetClientHandle (0x44ec7) 25
SWI Toolbox_GetClientHandle (0x44ec8) 25
SWI Toolbox_GetObjectClass (0x44ec9) 26
SWI Toolbox_GetParent (0x44eca) 27
SWI Toolbox_GetAncestor (0x44ecb) 28
SWI Toolbox_GetTemplateName (0x44ecc) 29
SWI Toolbox_RaiseToolboxEvent (0x44ecd) 30
SWI Toolbox_GetSysInfo (0x44ece) 31
SWI Toolbox_Initialise (0x44ecf) 32
SWI Toolbox_LoadResources (0x44ed0) 34
SWI Toolbox_TemplateLookUp (0x44efb) 35
Toolbox events 36

## **2 Building an application 39**

Guide To Hyper 39
How !Hyper was designed 41
How !Hyper was implemented 43
HyperCard Control Language 65

### **3 Colour Dialogue box class 67**

- User interface 67
- Application Program Interface 68
- Colour Dialogue methods 71
- Colour Dialogue events 79
- Colour Dialogue templates 82

### **4 Colour Menu class 83**

- User interface 83
- Application Program Interface 84
- Colour Menu methods 86
- Colour Menu events 90
- Colour Menu templates 91
- Colour Menu Wimp event handling 92

### **5 Discard/Cancel/Save Dialogue box class 93**

- User interface 93
- Application Program Interface 94
- DCS methods 96
- DCS events 101
- DCS templates 104
- DCS Wimp event handling 105

### **6 File Info Dialogue box class 107**

- User interface 107
- Application Program Interface 108
- File Info methods 110
- File Info events 119
- File Info templates 120
- File Info Wimp event handling 121

### **7 Font Dialogue box class 123**

- User interface 123
- Application Program Interface 124
- Font Dialogue methods 127
- Font Dialogue events 135
- Font Dialogue Templates 137
- Font Dialogue Wimp event handling 139

## **8 Font Menu class 141**

- User interface 141
- Application Program Interface 142
- Font Menu methods 144
- Font Menu events 146
- Font Menu templates 147
- Font Menu Wimp event handling 148

## **9 Iconbar icon class 149**

- User interface 149
- Application Program Interface 150
- Iconbar icon methods 154
- Iconbar icon events 166
- Iconbar icon templates 167
- Iconbar icon Wimp event handling 168

## **10 Menu class 169**

- User interface 169
- Application Program Interface 170
- Menu methods 177
- Menu events 201
- Menu Templates 203
- Menu Wimp event handling 204

## **11 Print Dialogue box class 205**

- User interface 205
- Application Program Interface 206
- Print Dialogue methods 210
- Print Dialogue events 217
- Print Dialogue templates 222
- Print Dialogue Wimp event handling 224

## **12 Prog Info Dialogue box class 225**

- User interface 225
- Application Program Interface 226
- Prog Info methods 228
- Prog Info events 239
- Prog Info templates 242
- Prog Info Wimp event handling 243

## **13 Quit Dialogue box class 245**

- User interface 245
- Application Program Interface 246
- Quit methods 248
- Quit events 253
- Quit templates 255
- Quit Wimp event handling 256

## **14 SaveAs Dialogue box class 257**

- User interface 257
- Application Program Interface 258
- Save As methods 266
- Save As events 277
- Save As templates 280
- Save As Wimp event handling 281

## **15 Scale Dialogue box class 283**

- User interface 283
- Application Program Interface 284
- Scale methods 288
- Scale events 294
- Scale templates 296
- Scale Wimp event handling 297

## **16 Window class 299**

- User interface 299
- Application Program Interface 300
- Window methods 307
- Other SWIs 325
- Window events 328
- Window templates 329
- Window Wimp event handling 332
- Toolbars 334
- User interface 334
- Application program interface 335
- Toolbar methods 336

### **Gadgets 337**

- Application Program Interface 337
- Generic gadget methods 342
- Gadget Wimp event handling 350
- Action buttons 351
- Adjuster arrows 360
- Button gadget 361
- Display fields 368
- Draggable gadgets 371
- Labels 379
- Labelled boxes 380
- Number ranges 381
- Option buttons 389
- Pop-up menus 396
- Radio buttons 400
- Sliders 409
- String sets 417
- Writable fields 426

## **17 ResEd 433**

- Starting ResEd 436
- The object prototypes window 437
- The resource file display 438
- Editing object templates in general 442
- Editing the Menu class 445
- Example menu 450
- Editing a Window object template and gadgets 455
- Gadgets 466
- Editing other classes 491
- Exporting and importing messages 503
- Keystroke equivalents 504
- Mouse behaviour 505

## **18 ResTest 507**

- Starting ResTest 507
- The event log window 509

## **Resource File Formats 511**

- Resource file format 512

## **Support for RISC OS 3.10 517**

## **19 Index 519**



---

# 1

# Introduction to the Toolbox

---

**T**his chapter is intended to give the reader an overview of the RISC OS Toolbox, and to introduce the concepts used throughout the rest of this manual.

## Introduction

The Toolbox was designed with the following goals:

- to facilitate writing consistent, high-quality desktop applications under RISC OS 3.10 and later
- to encourage the writing of applications whose user interface complies with the RISC OS Style Guide
- to be easy to learn
- to be language-independent
- to make it no harder to do operations which can currently be done using the Wimp.

The Toolbox has the following characteristics:

- it is structured as a set of RISC OS relocatable modules
- it will only run on RISC OS 3.10 or later
- it does not directly call back to code in the client application
- it is SWI-driven
- it can be used from C, C++, BASIC or Assembler with equal ease
- communication back to the client application is via events
- the client application does not have direct access to data structures maintained by the Toolbox
- it uses a new resource file format to hold templates for the user interface objects which the application will use at run-time.

Note: The appendix *Support for RISC OS 3.10* on page 517 describes support for RISC OS 3.10 machines.

## Terminology

The following terms are used throughout this manual:

Term	Meaning
Class	A data type, together with a definition of the operations which can be performed on that data type
Client application	A piece of software which uses the Toolbox
Colours	Refers either to desktop colours (in the range 0-15), or to an RGB colour (represented by one word as 0xbbggrr00)
Dialogue box	A window which contains gadgets, and which is typically used to carry out a 'dialogue' with the user, ending in the user either cancelling the dialogue, or confirming that they want to apply the options indicated by the current dialogue state
Method	One of the operations defined for a class (it can be thought of as a 'function')
Persistent dialogue box	One which remains on the screen even when the menu tree is closed down. It must be explicitly removed by cancelling it, or by pressing Escape.
Resource file	Described in <i>Resource File Formats</i> on page 511. It is a file containing a sequence of templates from which to build objects.
String	A NUL-terminated sequence of ASCII characters.
Textual name (name)	Can be formed of any sequence of alphanumeric characters and underscores ('_'). It must begin with an alphabetic character. Special names used by the Toolbox can begin with the underscore character ('_'). A name cannot be longer than 12 characters, including the NUL terminator character.
Transient dialogue box	One which appears on the screen, and is removed when the current menu tree is closed down
User	The human user of a client application
User Interface Object (object)	A fundamental building block for windowed applications (e.g. a menu). All objects share a set of common methods which can be applied to them. An object consists of a fixed size header followed immediately in memory by a variable size body.
Word	A 4-byte entity, aligned at a 4-byte address.

## General notes

- Where a buffer holds a string, this string will be NUL-terminated on exit from a SWI or when delivered in an event block. Strings which are given as input parameters to a SWI should be terminated by a control character (i.e. in the range 0-31 inclusive).
- Where the size of a buffer is specified, this includes any terminating character. If the size of buffer supplied for a string is not large enough an error is **not** returned; instead the buffer is filled (including a terminating NUL), and the returned number of bytes 'written to the buffer' will be the size of buffer which would be required. Thus you may wish to check that the number of bytes written to the buffer is less than or equal to the supplied buffer size.
- Note that **all** SWIs have a flags word in R0. All undefined bits in this flags word should be 0.
- Unless otherwise stated, changes to objects which are visible on the screen are immediate.

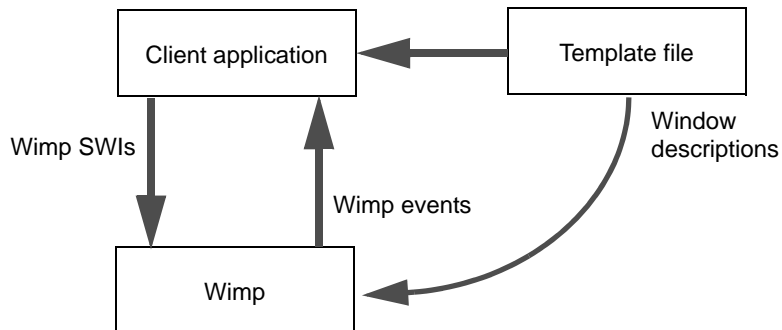
## Toolbox Application Model

The Toolbox is intended to provide a layer of abstraction between an application and the Wimp. In a manner analogous to the use of High Level Programming Languages, the Toolbox allows the programmer to think more in terms of the problem to be solved rather than the detailed mechanics of how to achieve a solution.

### Traditional desktop application

In a traditional desktop application, the programmer writes code which interfaces directly to the Window Manager (Wimp) through Wimp SWIs. Such an application uses a 'Templates' file to define templates from which it can create windows at run-time, but must create other user-interface objects from within its code (e.g. menus). The events which are delivered to a Wimp application refer to low-level Wimp operations like mouse clicks:

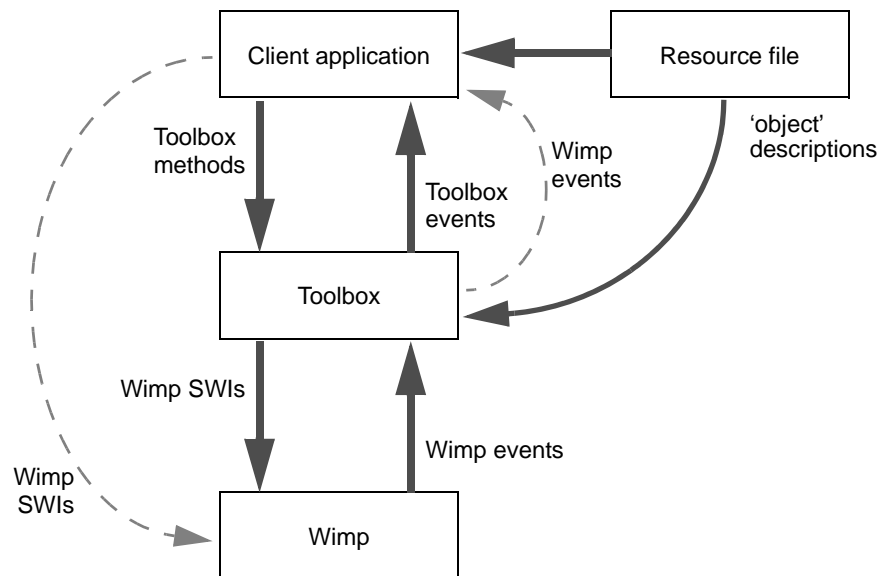
Figure 1.1 Wimp application model



## Toolbox application

In a Toolbox desktop application, the programmer writes code which interfaces mainly to the Toolbox through Toolbox 'methods', only occasionally resorting to making low-level Wimp SWI calls. A Toolbox application uses a 'Resources' file to define templates from which it can create a large number of user-interface objects including windows, menus and iconbar icons. Events which are delivered to a Toolbox application are at a higher level of abstraction than Wimp events.

Figure 1.2 Toolbox application model



## Wimp events

The application will generally see all Wimp events, with the following exceptions:

- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| ColourDbox    | will not see redraw events.  |
|               | Where it has input focus you will not see keypress events.   |
| Window object | will not see Open Window Request or Close Window Request events if the window is marked as being auto-open or auto-close respectively. |

## Toolbox objects

An object is essentially one part of the user interface of a desktop application; for example, a window or a menu or an icon on the icon bar.

At run-time, each object is identified by an *object id* which is allocated when the object is created. An object id is a 32-bit integer, which should not be interpreted by the client application. An object id of 0 is used to indicate 'no object'.

### Object classes

The type of an object is called its 'class', which identifies its attributes and the set of operations which can be performed on it at run-time.

It is possible to determine the class of an object at run-time, using SWI Toolbox\_GetObjectClass.

The set of classes which are supported in this release of the Toolbox are:

<b>Class name</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>page</b>
Colour Menu	a menu for selecting a desktop colour	83
Colour Dbox	a dialogue box for selecting any colour	67
DCS	a dialogue box for discard/cancel/save for unsaved data	93
File Info	a dialogue box showing information on a given file	107
Font Dbox	a dialogue box for selecting font characteristics	123
Font Menu	a menu for selecting a font	141
Iconbar Icon	an icon on the left or right of the iconbar	149
Menu	a Wimp menu	169
Print Dbox	a dialogue box for selecting print options	205
Prog Info	a dialogue box for showing program information	225
Quit	a dialogue box for handling quit with unsaved data	245
SaveAs	a dialogue box for saving data by icon drag	257
Scale View	a dialogue box for selecting a scale factor	283
Window	a Wimp window	299

The Toolbox is designed to be extensible, so this set of classes will be increased in future releases, and can also be increased by third party developers.

### Object components

An object 'component' defines one of a set of distinct parts which make up an object; for example a menu entry is a component of a Menu object, and a gadget (see later) is a component of a Window object. A component is allocated a

component id by which to identify it uniquely within its containing object; this component id is chosen by the client application when the component is created. For menus it can have a value in the range 0 to 0xffffffff, and for windows a value in the range 0 to 0x7fffff. All higher component ids are reserved for internal Toolbox use. A component id of 0xffffffff is used to indicate 'no component'.

## Object Methods

At run-time, the client application manipulates its objects by using 'methods', which are in fact implemented via Toolbox SWIs. The Toolbox will dispatch these methods to the appropriate module which implements the class of object to which the method is being applied.

### Creating an object

An object is created using SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject (see page 19). The client application supplies either the name of a template for the object, or the address of a block of memory containing such a template. If a name is provided, then the Toolbox will look for the template in the application's Resource file (see later). The client application will be passed back an object id for the newly-created object if successful.

When an object which has 'attached' objects is created, then the attached objects are also created. See *Attached objects* on page 11 for a fuller description of this process.

Given its object id, it is possible to find out the name of the template used to create an object using SWI Toolbox\_GetTemplateName.

### Deleting an object

An object is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject (see page 20). If the object is visible on the screen and it is deleted, then the Toolbox first hides the object.

When an object which has attached objects is deleted, then unless the 'non-recursive' bit is set in this SWI's flags word, all its attached objects are also deleted. See *Attached objects* on page 11 for a fuller description of this process.

### Showing an object

An object is shown on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject (see page 21).

By setting bits in the SWI's flags word, the client may choose to show the object with either SWI Wimp\_CreateMenu semantics or SWI Wimp\_CreateSubMenu semantics. This is generally referred to as showing the object 'transiently', and can

be used, for example, to show transient dialogue boxes. By default, an object is shown 'persistently', in other words it must be explicitly dismissed from the screen. Not all objects support both sets of semantics.

When an object is shown, the client application chooses where the object will appear on the screen by specifying one of three 'show types'.

- A 'default' show type means that the object will be shown at a place determined by the module which implements the object's class. For example, a Menu object will be shown by default at a place 64 OS units to the left of the mouse pointer's position, to comply with the RISC OS Style Guide.
- A 'top left' show type means that the client application supplies the coordinates of the top lefthand corner of where the object should be shown.
- A 'full specification' show type means that the client application supplies a buffer which contains all the information needed to position the object on the screen; the contents of this buffer is separately defined for each object class.

### **Hiding an object**

An object is hidden using SWI Toolbox\_HideObject (page 22). If the object was not visible on the screen, then this method has no effect.

### **Object-specific methods**

Each object class provides a number of methods which are specific to that class (for example, a Window object's title can be set using the Window\_SetTitle method). These methods are all accessed using SWI Toolbox\_ObjectMiscOp (see page 24), with an appropriate reason code.

## **Shared objects**

It is often useful in an application for many objects to refer to one single instance of another object. A typical example is a multi-document editor, where a potentially large number of Windows all refer to a single shared Menu structure.

A shared object is specified as such in its template description. Whenever an attempt is made to create an object from such a template, the Toolbox first checks to see if there is already a copy of the object in existence, and in which case the id of this object is returned.

Reference counts are maintained for Shared objects. When the client tries to create such an object the reference count is incremented, and it is decremented when the client attempts to delete the object. The Shared object is only really deleted when its reference count reaches zero.

Shared objects can also be used effectively in conjunction with attached objects which are described on page 11.



Note: Sharedness is inherited by attached objects.

## **Client handles**

Each object can have associated with it a one-word value called its client handle. The value of this handle is specified entirely by the client application and is not interpreted by the Toolbox. This mechanism is intended to allow a state to be associated with an object by the client application (e.g. in a multi-document editor a Window object's client handle might be a pointer to the data which must be displayed in the Window).

An object's Client Handle is set and read using SWIs `Toolbox_SetClientHandle` (see page 25) and `Toolbox_GetClientHandle` (see page 25) respectively.

## **Parent and ancestor objects**

When an object is shown (using SWI `Toolbox_ShowObject`), there are two other objects which may be useful for the client application; these are the parent and ancestor objects.

### **Parent objects**

The parent of an object is defined as the object (and optionally a component of that object) which caused the object to be shown. This is represented by the parent object id and parent component id. For example if a Window object has been displayed as the result of a Menu selection, then that Window object has a parent with an object id given by the Menu's id, and a parent component id given by the component id of the entry which was selected.

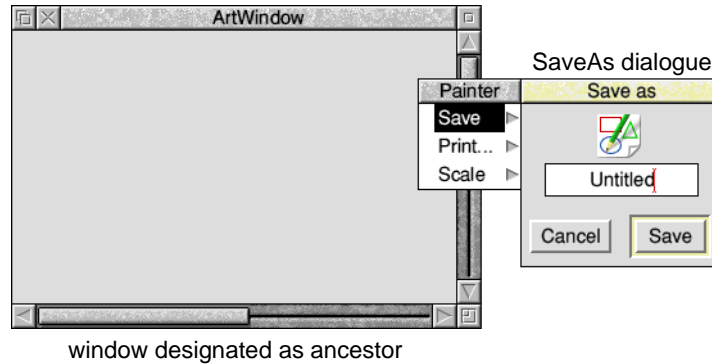
When SWI `Toolbox_ShowObject` is called explicitly by the client, the parent object and component ids must be specified. When this SWI is called on the client's behalf (for example, when a Menu is shown automatically for a Window), then the Toolbox fills this value in for the client.

### **Ancestor objects**

It is always possible to trace the 'parentage' of an object by recursively requesting the Parent of that object, thus moving 'up' the invocation hierarchy of objects which have been displayed. Since this is a common operation, an object can be designated as a potential so-called 'Ancestor'. When an object is shown, it normally inherits the ancestor of its parent object; however, if the parent is marked as a potential ancestor, then the ancestor of the shown object is set to the id of the parent object.

Take the case where a multi-document editor has a document Window which has a Menu, which has a SaveAs dialogue box as a submenu. When an event occurs for the dialogue box, the client is probably most interested in getting the id of the

document Window (to get at its data and save it). By designating the document Window as an ancestor, the client can ensure that its id is available when events occur on the SaveAs dialogue box.



The processes in the above example are as follows:

- 1 When the user presses Menu over the window, a `Toolbox_ShowObject` is raised on the Menu with the window as parent. As the window has been designated as ancestor, the Menu's ancestor will be the window.
- 2 When the user moves the pointer over the Save submenu arrow, the Menu module will show the SaveAs dialogue with itself (i.e. the Menu) as the parent object, and the Save component as the parent component. The SaveAs dialogue will inherit the Menu's ancestor (in this case the window).
- 3 Any event now raised on the SaveAs dialogue box will have the id block filled in with the Menu as the parent and the window as the ancestor.

The parent and ancestor of an object can be obtained by calling the SWIs `Toolbox_GetParent` and `Toolbox_GetAncestor`. Normally this will not be necessary, since (as shown in *The id block* on page 13) these values are made available on every return from `Wimp_Poll`.

## Auto-create and Auto-show objects

In order to save on coding required, it is possible to get the Toolbox to create an object from its template as soon as the resource file containing the template is loaded by the application. This is achieved by setting the Auto-create bit in the object template's flags word (see the chapter *ResEd* on page 433 to see how to do this). When such an object is created, the Toolbox raises a `Toolbox_ObjectAutoCreated` event, to allow the application to ascertain and store the object id of the newly-created object; the name of the template used to create the object is reported in this event.

It is also possible to specify that as soon as an object is created, it should be 'shown' on the screen. This is achieved by setting the Auto-show bit in the object template's flags word (see the chapter *ResEd* on page 433 to see how to do this). When such an object is created, it is shown using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject in its default place, and with no parent given.

It is also possible for an object to be auto-show but not auto-create.

If you specify an object as auto-create and that object is attached to another object, you will get two instantiations of the object, unless it is marked as Shared. It is therefore advisable to mark such objects as Shared, to avoid wastage.

## Attached objects

Certain objects allow other objects to be attached to them. When an object is created, all of its attached objects are also created, and a Toolbox\_ObjectAutoCreated event is raised for each such attached object.

An example of an attached object is the object which will be shown when a user clicks the Select mouse button on an Iconbar Icon object. This attached object is created when the Iconbar Icon object is created.

Such side-effects of creating a given object are described in the *Application Program Interface* section in the chapter on each object class.

When an object with attached objects is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_ObjectDelete, unless the non-recursive delete bit has been set, all attached objects are also deleted.

Attached objects can also usefully be combined with Shared objects. For example, if an application wishes the same Window to be displayed when the user clicks Select and Adjust on an Iconbar object, this can be achieved by specifying the same Window template name as the attached object to show for each of these mouse clicks, and marking the Window object as shared, so that the same object id is used for both cases.

It is important to note this side-effect of creating an object. For example, a Window object which has a complex menu tree attached to it, with many submenus and dialogue boxes, will have considerable side-effects when it is created.

Thus, in many cases, it is only necessary to create explicitly the 'topmost' object, and to allow the Toolbox to create the entire tree of attached objects.

## Event handling

An important part of managing the user interface using the Toolbox is the concept of a *Toolbox event*.

A Toolbox event is a Wimp event (not a message) which is delivered to the client application with an event code of Wimp\_ToolboxEvent (0x200). Each Toolbox event has its own event code, which is a 32-bit integer defined in a similar manner to Wimp message numbers.

Toolbox events are essentially an abstraction on Wimp events, and are generated by the Toolbox modules in response to user interaction with Toolbox objects, and also in response to client application operations. Toolbox events are also used to warn the client application that a particular action has been taken by the Toolbox.

For example, if a client application creates and shows a Print Dialogue Box, when the user clicks on the **Print** button, a Toolbox event will be delivered to the application indicating that a Print operation has been requested, and giving the number of pages to be printed, the scale factor to use during printing etc.

Note that underlying events will also be received by the client.

### Toolbox event Codes

Event codes are allocated by RISC OS Open. Events which are delivered by a Toolbox module will have codes which start at the SWI chunk base of the module.

The allocations are as follows; event codes are in the range 0 - 0x9ffff:

Event codes	Use
0x00001 - 0x0ffff	Available for use by the client
0x10000 - 0x3ffff	Reserved for inter-application protocols
0x40000 - 0x9ffff	Reserved for Toolbox module events

### Format of a Toolbox event

When a Toolbox event is delivered to an application, the Wimp Poll block has the following format:

Offset	Contents
+ 0	size of Toolbox event block (16 - 236 in a multiple of four bytes; i.e. words)
+ 4	unique reference number
+ 8	Toolbox event code
+12	flags
+ 16...	Event-specific data

Unless otherwise stated flags will be zero.

## The id block

Whenever the client application calls SWI Wimp\_Poll, the Toolbox fills in a 6-word block of memory known as the *id block*, to indicate which object an event has occurred on. However, as Wimp messages do not typically occur on an object the id block will not be updated for a Wimp message.

This block is laid out as follows:

+0	self id	Ancestor
+4	self component	
+8	parent id	Parent
+12	parent component	
+16	ancestor id	Self
+20	ancestor component	

When a Toolbox event occurs, the object id of the object on which this event occurred is placed in the 'self id' field of the id block, and the 'self component' field is also filled in if the event has occurred for a particular component of that object. For example, a mouse click on an action button gadget within a Window object will result in an ActionButton\_Selected Toolbox event being raised, with the Window object's id in the self id field of the id block, and the component id of the action button in the self component field.

The 'parent id' and 'parent component' fields are filled in by the Toolbox using the values which were last passed to SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject. The 'ancestor id' and 'ancestor component' fields are filled in accordingly (being the ancestor of the parent).

The Toolbox uses a value of 0 as an object id to indicate 'no object', and a value of -1 as a component id to indicate 'no component'.

When a Wimp event happens on an object, then the setting of the contents of the id block is object-specific, and is described in the object *events* section in the chapter on each object class.

The address of the 6-word block of client memory used as the application's id Block is passed to the Toolbox when the application registers itself using SWI Toolbox\_Initialise (see page 32).

Note that Toolbox events are delivered to the object to which they are most appropriate, so for example a SaveAs object will receive SaveAs\_DialogueCompleted events, whereas mouse clicks on a SaveAs object's underlying Window will be seen as being delivered to the Window object.

This behaviour can best be seen by taking some example Resource Files and dragging them to !ResTest, and monitoring the contents of the id Block as shown in !ResTest's log window, as events occur on the objects created from the Resource File.

### **Raising a Toolbox event**

A Toolbox event is raised using SWI Toolbox\_RaiseToolboxEvent. Normally a client application will not need to use this SWI directly; the client simply quotes the Toolbox event code (or number), and associates it with a particular user action in its description of an object in the resource file. For example, one of the attributes of a Menu object, is the Toolbox event which is raised when a particular Menu entry is selected by the user. The Toolbox will raise this Toolbox event on the application's behalf, whenever a Menu Selection event is returned for that menu entry.

## **Resource files**

A resource file contains templates for the objects which a client application will create at run-time.

### **Loading resource files**

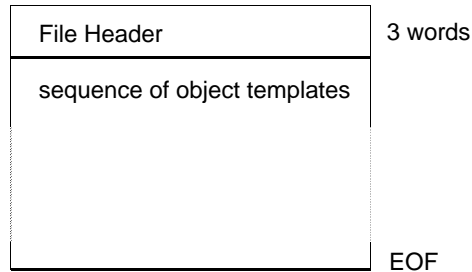
An application can load a resource file at run-time using SWI Toolbox\_LoadResources. This is done on the application's behalf for a file called 'res' when the application calls SWI Toolbox\_Initialise as described in *Task initialisation and run-time information* on page 15. SWI Toolbox\_LoadResources could then be called after task start-up to load any further Resource Files which it needs to use.

### **Resource file format**

Resource files replace Wimp template files as the means to define templates for the user interface objects which an application will create at run-time. Whereas Wimp template files only allowed window descriptions to be given, a resource file will contain templates for any kind of Toolbox object.

A resource file consists of a fixed size header, followed by a contiguous sequence of object templates, where each template has a fixed size header, followed by an object body.

A resource file format is similar to a Drawfile, and can be represented diagrammatically as follows:



Each template has a textual name which can have no more than 12 characters (including the terminating NUL). This name is used by the application when using a template in a call to SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject.

If a resource file is loaded which has named templates whose names clash with earlier loaded templates, the latest loaded template will be used, and the earlier template will no longer be accessible.

For a full description of the resource file format see the appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

## Task initialisation and run-time information

Before it can use the Toolbox, a client application must first call SWI Toolbox\_Initialise to register itself as a Toolbox task. This has several side-effects:

- If there is a file called `res<n>`, where `n` is the currently configured territory number, in the application's resource directory then it is loaded using SWI Toolbox\_LoadResources; if such a file is not found, then the Toolbox tries a file called `res`.
- The application directory is searched for a Sprites file, looking for file names in the following order:
  - `TVSprs<nn>` (only for interlaced modes, indicated by mode flags bit 8).
  - `<Wimp$IconTheme>Sprites<nn>`
  - `Sprites<nn>`

In each case `nn` is the resolution suffix appropriate for the current screen mode, as returned by Wimp\_ReadSysInfo 2 (11, 22, 23 or 24). If no file with the correct suffix is present a file with no suffix will be used. This file is then loaded into a block of memory and will be used as the application's sprite area.

- The application resource directory is searched for a file called `Message<n>`, where *n* is the currently configured territory number, which is then loaded and registered with `MessageTrans`. If no such file is found, then a file called `Messages` is searched for. The minimum requirement is that the `Messages` file should contain a message whose tag is `_TaskName`, giving the name of the application.
- `SWI Wimp_Initialise` is then called on behalf of the application.

When a Toolbox task has been registered with the Toolbox, the client application can obtain the following information by calling `SWI Toolbox_GetSysInfo`:

- the task's name (as given by the `_TaskName` message in the `Messages` file).
- the 4-word message file descriptor returned when the task was initialised.
- the application's directory name.
- the application's Wimp task handle.
- a pointer to the sprite area used to load the application's Sprites file.

**Important:** Since the Toolbox uses Wimp messages, a client application should **not** call `SWI Wimp_AddMessages` or `SWI Wimp_RemoveMessages`.

## Message texts and nationalisation

When using the Toolbox, the writer of a client application should be aware of where textual messages are held, which will need translating if the client is to be 'nationalised' for a particular RISC OS territory.

All of the modules contained in the Toolbox have a default set of messages and object templates which they will use when displaying windows, reporting errors, displaying menus etc. These are registered with `ResourceFS`, and are looked up using `MessageTrans`. So in order to produce a nationalised Toolbox, these messages and templates will need replacing.

In a resource file, textual messages are held in `Messages Tables`, and objects created at run-time will contain pointers to these messages. These messages are the ones which have been specified by the client of the Toolbox to be used when creating objects, and will often consist of alternative text to use instead of the defaults provided by the Toolbox modules themselves. These messages are **not** tagged messages looked up using `MessageTrans`, but are actual strings.

The client application will also have a file called `Messages` in its application directory. This file is automatically loaded by the Toolbox when the client calls `SWI Toolbox_Initialise`. The `Messages` file will contain at least the name of the application (in a message whose tag is `_TaskName`), and any other messages which the application wishes to look up using `MessageTrans` at run-time. This will



typically contain error messages, and ones which are not associated with objects. After calling SWI Toolbox\_Initialise, the client will have a MessageTrans file descriptor to use when looking up these Messages.

This means that in order to nationalise an application, the writer will need to provide new Messages and new resource file messages (using **Export messages** in ResEd).

## An Example object

Let us look at an example of a Toolbox object, to illustrate some of the features detailed in earlier sections.

An Iconbar Icon object is used to place an application icon sprite (and optionally some text) on the RISC OS icon bar. The template for such an object has the following fields, which can be set using !ResEd (the Resource Editor):

Field	Meaning
position	a negative integer giving the position of the Icon on the Iconbar (as specified in SWI Wimp_Createlcon)
priority	the priority of this Icon on the Iconbar (as specified in SWI Wimp_Createlcon)
sprite name	the name of the sprite to use for this Iconbar Icon
max sprite name	the maximum length of sprite name to be used
text	an optional string which will be used for a Text&Sprite Iconbar Icon (ie the text that will appear underneath the Icon on the Iconbar)
max text length	if the Iconbar Icon has text, then this field gives the maximum length of a text string which will be used for it
menu	the name of the template to use to create a Menu object for this Iconbar Icon
select event	the Toolbox event code to be raised when the user clicks Select on the Iconbar Icon (if 0 then Iconbar_Clicked is raised)
adjust event	the Toolbox event code to be raised when the user clicks Adjust on the Iconbar Icon (if 0 then Iconbar_Clicked is raised)
select show	the name of a template to use to show an object when the user clicks Select on the Iconbar Icon
adjust show	the name of a template to use to show an object when the user clicks Adjust on the Iconbar Icon

Field	Meaning
help message	the message to respond to a help request with, instead of the default
max help	the maximum length of help message to be used

The client application will create an Iconbar Icon object by calling SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject, supplying a template which gives values for all of the above fields.

As a side-effect of this creation, the Iconbar Icon's attached objects are also created (if their templates have been provided) i.e. menu, select show and adjust show. The object ids of these attached objects are then held within the Toolbox internal data structure which represents the Iconbar Icon.

When the application calls SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject on an Iconbar Icon, it will be shown in a Style Guide compliant place on the Iconbar. When SWI Toolbox\_HideObject is called, the Icon will be removed from the Iconbar.

When a HelpRequest message is received, the supplied help message will automatically be returned to the sender of the message.

When the user clicks the Select or Adjust mouse buttons on the Iconbar Icon, then if the names of suitable object Templates have been supplied, these objects will be shown automatically by the Toolbox.

When the user clicks the Menu button on the Iconbar Icon, then if the name of a suitable Menu object Template has been supplied, it will be shown in a RISC OS Style Guide compliant place (i.e. 96 OS units above the bottom of the screen).

There are a number of methods which have been defined for an Iconbar Icon to allow the client application to manipulate it at run-time; for example if it wishes to change the sprite used on the Iconbar for this Icon, then the Iconbar\_SetSprite method will be used; if it wishes to provide a new Menu object which will be displayed when the Menu button is clicked on the Iconbar Icon, then the Iconbar\_SetMenu method will be used.

## Toolbox SWIs

### SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject (0x44ec0)

#### On entry

R0 = flags (bit 0 set means create from memory)  
R1 = pointer to name of template  
(R1 = pointer to description block if bit 0 of flags word set)

#### On exit

R0 = id of created object  
R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This SWI creates an object either from a named template description which has been loaded from the resources file or from a template description block in memory. The exact format of the description block depends on the class of the object.

If the client application wishes to use the description block form of this SWI, then the block should begin with a standard object header, and the body of the object should be as specified in the *Templates* section of the chapter for that object. Any StringReferences, MsgReferences, and SpriteAreaReferences should hold 'real' pointers, and should not require relocation; also the 'body offset' field should contain a real pointer to the object body.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_create_object ( unsigned int flags,
                                              const void *name_or_template,
                                              ObjectId *id
                                              );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject (0x44ec1)

### On entry

R0 = flags (bit 0 set means do not delete recursively)

R1 = object id

### On exit

R1 - R9 preserved

### Use

This SWI deletes a given object.

By default, any objects 'attached' to this object are also deleted. If bit 0 of the flags word is set, then this does not happen.

If it is a Shared object, this will result in its reference count being decremented, and it will only be really deleted when this reaches 0.

The Toolbox raises a Toolbox\_ObjectDeleted event when the object's reference count reaches zero.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_delete_object ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId id
                                              );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject (0x44ec3)

### On entry

R0 = flags

bit 0 set means show using the semantics of Wimp\_CreateMenu

bit 1 set means show using the semantics of Wimp\_CreateSubMenu

bit 2 set means show as a nested window (requires use of show 'type' 1 to specify the Wimp handle of the parent window)

R1 = object id

R2 = show 'type':

Type	Meaning
0	show in the 'default' place. This has a different meaning depending on the type of object shown
1	R3 points to a buffer giving full details of how to show the object
2	R3 points to a 2-word buffer giving the screen coordinates of the top left corner of the object to be displayed
3	show centred
4	show at pointer

R3 = 0

or pointer to buffer giving object-specific data for showing this object

or pointer to 2-word buffer giving coordinates of top left corner of object

R4 = Parent object id

R5 = Parent component id

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This SWI shows the given object on the screen.

R2 gives the type of 'show' operation which is being performed. Not all types of show operation will be appropriate to all objects.

The buffer pointed at by R3 may hold data specific to this class of object, including information as to where the object should appear on the screen. The exact format of the buffer is specified separately for each object class. For example for a Window object, the buffer will hold a block of data which can be passed to SWI Wimp\_OpenWindow.

Note: some objects support a bit in their flags word specifying that a warning should be raised before the object is shown. In this case, the SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject will return, but the object will not yet be visible on the screen. The object will be visible (at the earliest) after the next call to Wimp\_Poll after the warning is delivered.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_show_object ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId id,
                                             int show_type,
                                             const void *type,
                                             ObjectId parent,
                                             ComponentId parent_component
                                             );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_HideObject (0x44ec4)

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = object id

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This SWI removes the given object from the screen, if it is currently being shown.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_hide_object ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId id
                                             );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_GetObjectState (0x44ec5)

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = object id

### On exit

R0 = object state

### Use

This SWI returns information regarding the current state of an object. The state is indicated by bits in the value returned in R0. Bits 0-7 refer to all objects and bits 8-31 are used to indicate object-specific state.

The generic state bits are:

Bit	Meaning when set
0	object is currently showing

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_get_object_state ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectId id,
                                                  unsigned int *state
                                                  );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_ObjectMiscOp (0x44ec6)

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = object id  
R2 = method code  
R3-R9 contain method-specific data.

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

The exact operation of this SWI depends on the class of the object being manipulated, and on the reason code supplied.

Each object class implements a number of methods which are specific to that object (e.g. a Window class may implement a method for adding/removing keyboard short-cuts for a Window object).



## SWI Toolbox\_SetClientHandle (0x44ec7)

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = object id  
R2 = client handle

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This SWI sets the value of the client handle for this object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_set_client_handle ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId id,
                                                    void *client_handle
                                                    );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_GetClientHandle (0x44ec8)

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = object id

### On exit

R0 = client handle for this object

### Use

This SWI returns the value of the client handle for this object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_get_client_handle ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId id,
                                                    void **client_handle
                                                    );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_GetObjectClass (0x44ec9)

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = object id

### On exit

R0 = object class

### Use

This SWI returns the class of the specified object. This is a 32-bit integer, which identifies a given class; allocation of class identifiers is handled by RISC OS Open.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_get_object_class ( unsigned int flags,  
                                                ObjectId id,  
                                                ObjectClass *object_class  
                                                );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_GetParent (0x44eca)

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = object id

### On exit

R0 = Parent id  
R1 = Parent component id

### Use

This returns the value of the object id which was passed as the parent in a SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject call (even if the parent has subsequently been deleted). The component id is for cases where the parent has a subcomponent like a Menu with a Menu entry. An object which has not yet been shown will have a parent object id of 0 and a component id of -1.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_get_parent ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId id,
                                             ObjectId *parent,
                                             ComponentId *parent_component
                                             );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_GetAncestor (0x44ecb)

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = object id

### On exit

R0 = Ancestor id  
R1 = Ancestor component id

### Use

This returns the id of the Ancestor of the given object (and its component id, in the case of an ancestor which has subcomponents like a Menu with a Menu entry). Note that the Ancestor may have been deleted, since this object was shown. An object which has not yet been shown will have an ancestor object id of 0 and a component id of -1.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_get_ancestor ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId id,
                                              ObjectId *ancestor,
                                              ComponentId *ancestor_component
                                              );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_GetTemplateName (0x44ecc)

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = object id  
R2 = pointer to buffer to hold template name  
R3 = length of buffer

### On exit

R3 = length of buffer required (if R2 was zero)  
    else buffer pointed at by R2 holds template name  
R3 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This SWI returns the name of the template used to create the object whose id is passed in R1.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_get_template_name ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId id,
                                                    char *buffer,
                                                    int  buff_size,
                                                    int  *nbytes
                                                    );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_RaiseToolboxEvent (0x44ecd)

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = object id  
R2 = component id  
R3 = pointer to Toolbox event block

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This SWI raises the given Toolbox event. The block pointed at by R3 should have the format described in *Format of a Toolbox event* on page 12. The Toolbox will put the unique reference number into the block before exit from this SWI. The object id and (optional) component id will be those filled in on return from Wimp\_Poll; they refer to the object on which the Toolbox event is being raised; the Toolbox does not check the validity of these values.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_raise_toolbox_event ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId id,
                                                    ComponentId component,
                                                    const ToolboxEvent *evnt
                                                    );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_GetSysInfo (0x44ece)

### On entry

R0 = flags

#### R0 Value Meaning

- 0 return task name
- 1 return 4-word messages file descriptor
- 2 return name of directory/path passed to Toolbox\_Initialise
- 3 return task's Wimp task handle
- 4 return pointer to sprite area used

R1, R2 depends on entry value of R0 (see below)

### On exit

R0

#### On entry On exit

- 0 R2 holds size of buffer required (if R1 was 0)  
else buffer pointed at by R1 holds task name
- 1 buffer pointed at by R1 contains a 4-word messages file descriptor
- 2 R2 holds size of buffer required (if R1 was 0)  
else buffer pointed at by R1 holds directory name passed to Toolbox\_Initialise
- 3 R0 contains task handle
- 4 R0 contains sprite area pointer

### Use

This SWI is used to get information for the client application. The nature of the information required is indicated by R0.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_get_sys_info ( unsigned int reason_code,
                                              _kernel_swi_regs *regs
                                              );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_Initialise (0x44ecf)

### On entry

- R0 = flags
- R1 = last Wimp version number known to task \* 100 (must be  $\geq 310$ )
- R2 = pointer to list of Wimp message numbers which the client wishes to receive, terminated by a 0 word
  - If R2 points to just a 0 word, then all messages are delivered
  - If R2 = 0, then no messages are delivered (apart from the Quit message)
- R3 = pointer to list of Toolbox event codes which the client wishes to receive, terminated by a 0 word
  - If R3 points to just a 0 word, then all Toolbox events are delivered
  - If R3 = 0, then no Toolbox events are delivered
- R4 = pointer to Directory name in which to find resources (may end with ':' character to specify a path from Toolbox version 1.50 onwards)
- R5 = pointer to 4-word buffer to receive messages file descriptor
- R6 = pointer to buffer to hold object ids on return from Wimp\_Poll (the id block)

### On exit

- R0 = current Wimp version number \* 100
- R1 = Wimp task handle for this client
- R2 = Pointer to Sprite area used
- Buffer pointed to by R5 is filled in with a MessageTrans file descriptor for the messages file to be used

### Use

This SWI is used by the client application before any other Toolbox SWIs.

First the Toolbox looks in the directory/path given by the string pointed to by R4 for a file called `res<n>`, where *n* is the currently configured territory number ("res7" for Germany for example), and tries to load it; this is done by calling SWI `Toolbox_LoadResources`. If a file for the current territory is not found, then the Toolbox looks for `res`.

The application directory is searched for a Sprites file appropriate for the current mode as described in *Task initialisation and run-time information* on page 15, and if such a file exists, a sprite area is allocated, and the file loaded into this area. A pointer to the area is returned in R2 (or 1 is returned if there was no such file found, and so the Wimp Sprite pool is used for Sprite references in the client application).



The resources directory/path is checked for a file called `Message<n>`, where *n* is the currently configured territory number, and if no such file is found for a file called `Messages`. This file is registered with `MessageTrans` and the 4-word `MessageTrans` file descriptor passed back in the buffer pointed to by R5 for use by the client.

`SWI Wimp_Initialise` is called on the client's behalf, using the Wimp version number passed in R1, and the messages list pointed at by R2. The task name passed to `SWI Wimp_Initialise` must be given in the client's messages file; it should be an entry with tag `'_TaskName'`.

The buffer pointed at by R6 will be used on each call to `Wimp_Poll` to inform the client which object an event occurred on, and that object's parent and ancestor objects. On return from `Wimp_Poll` this block will be filled in as follows:

- R6 + 0 ancestor object id
- R6 + 4 ancestor component id
- R6 + 8 parent object id
- R6 + 12parent component id
- R6 + 16'self' object id
- R6 + 20'self' component id

## C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_initialise ( unsigned int flags,
                                             int wimp_version,
                                             const int *wimp_messages,
                                             const int *toolbox_events,
                                             const char *directory,
                                             MessagesFD *mfd,
                                             IdBlock *idb,
                                             int *current_wimp_version,
                                             int *task,
                                             void **sprite_area
                                             );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_LoadResources (0x44ed0)

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = pointer to resource filename

### On exit

R1 - R9 preserved

### Use

This SWI loads the given resource file, and creates any objects which have the auto-create bit set. When such an object is created, the Toolbox raises a Toolbox\_ObjectAutoCreated Toolbox event.

The filename of the resource file should be a full pathname.

After this SWI has been called, any templates from the resource file can be used to create objects, by quoting the template name.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_load_resources ( unsigned int flags,  
                                              const char *resources  
                                              );
```

## SWI Toolbox\_TemplateLookUp (0x44efb)

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = pointer to template name (Ctrl terminated)

### On exit

R0 = pointer to description block

### Use

This SWI returns a pointer to a block suitable to pass to Toolbox\_CreateObject or Window\_ExtractGadgetInfo.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *toolbox_template_lookup ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  const char *name,
                                                  const ObjectTemplateHeader **hdr
                                                  );
```

## Toolbox events

### Toolbox\_Error (0x44ec0)

#### Block

+ 8      0x44ec0  
+ 16     error number  
+ 20... error text

#### Use

All Toolbox SWIs may return direct errors, with the V bit set. If any part of the Toolbox detects an error, whilst it is not processing a SWI, it will raise a Toolbox\_Error event which the client can report when it next calls Wimp\_Poll.

For example, if a client uses Toolbox\_ShowObject on an object which has the bit set to warn the client before the object is shown, the Toolbox will wait until the next call to Wimp\_Poll before actually showing the object; if there is an error when it tries to do the show, then this will be reported through a Toolbox\_Error event, since the SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject will have already returned with no error indicated.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                errnum;
    char               errmess [256-20-sizeof(ToolboxEventHeader)
                                -sizeof(ObjectId)
                                -sizeof(ComponentId)
                                -sizeof(int)];
} ToolboxErrorEvent;
```

## Toolbox\_ObjectAutoCreated (0x44ec1)

### Block

- + 8      0x44ec1
- + 16...   Name of template from which object was created

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised by the Toolbox after it creates objects from templates which have their *auto-create* bit set, when the application's resource file is loaded. This allows the client application to get the ids of such objects for later use.

This event is also raised when an attached object is created as a side-effect of creating the object to which it is attached.

The client can establish the object's id by looking at the 'self' field of the id block which it passed to Toolbox\_Initialise (see later).

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    char                template_name
[256-20-sizeof (ToolboxEventHeader) -sizeof (ObjectId) -sizeof (ComponentId)];
} ToolboxObjectAutoCreatedEvent;
```

## Toolbox\_ObjectDeleted (0x44ec2)

### Block

- + 8      0x44ec2
- + 12     flags bit 0 set means class id and client handle fields are valid
- + 16     class id of deleted object (if flags bit 0 is set)
- + 20     client handle of deleted object (if flags bit 0 is set)

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised by the Toolbox after it deletes an object. It is useful when a 'recursive' delete is done, resulting in other objects being deleted.

The client can establish the object's id by looking at the 'self' field of the id block which it passed to Toolbox\_Initialise.

When this event is received it is not possible to call any further Toolbox methods for the object.

### **C data type**

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    ObjectClass class_id;
    void *client_handle;
} ToolboxObjectDeletedEvent;
```

---

## 2

# Building an application

---

**T**his chapter describes how an application (!Hyper, which can be found in the Sources.DDE-Examples.Toolbox directory) was designed with Acorn C/C++. In particular it demonstrates how using !ResEd and !ResTest can lead to very short design times. The first section describes how to use !Hyper, and the second section is a description of how it was designed and implemented.

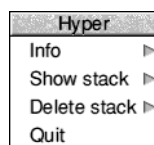
### Guide To Hyper

!Hyper is a multi-document viewer for HCL files (see *HyperCard Control Language* on page 65 for the syntax). HCL files define stacks of cards allowing multiple Draw objects to be linked such that a user may click on active areas (called *hot spots*) of a viewer to navigate between different cards. Only one card from a stack is visible at any time in a viewer, although being multi-document, !Hyper may display several views onto the same stack, each of which may be displaying a different card.

!Hyper is started by double-clicking on its application icon or by double clicking on an HCL file (but only after !Hyper has been seen by the Filer).

### Application icon menu

Clicking Menu over the application icon will display the following menu:



**Info** leads to a standard program information dialogue box.

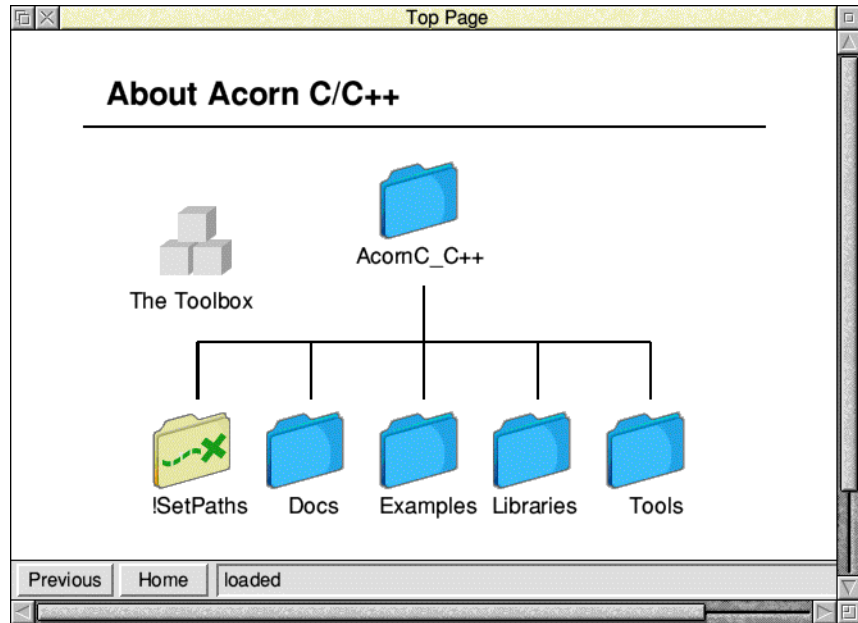
**Show stack** allows any closed viewers to be reopened or brings to the top an already opened one.

**Delete stack** will remove it from memory.

Note that if no stacks have been loaded then the show stack/delete stack will be greyed out.

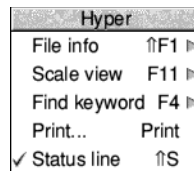
**Quit** will exit the application.

Once a stack has been loaded, !Hyper will open a viewer displaying the 'Home Card' of that stack. For example:



The user can move from one card to another by clicking on hotspots. Hot Spots will usually be identifiable in some way, though !Hyper will change the pointer shape whilst it is over one. It is also possible to jump to the Home Card or back to the previous card by clicking on the action buttons in the status area at the bottom of the window.

Pressing menu over a viewer window will display the following menu:



This allows various operations to be performed on the stack being displayed:

**File Info** displays information about the file.

**Scale View** leads to a standard scale dialogue box which lets the user zoom in and out on a card.



**Find Keyword** allows searching for keywords that are stored in the stack. This allows an index type search to be applied.

**Print...** allows the current card to be printed.

**Status Line** controls whether or not the status area is to be displayed at the bottom of the viewer window.

## Keyboard Short-cuts

Clicking in a viewer gives it the keyboard input focus. This then allows various keyboard short-cuts to work. The standard keys for **Find Keyword**, **Scale View**, **File Info** and **Print...** all work (as can be seen from the menu, pictured above) as well as **p** and **h** for previous and home.

## How !Hyper was designed

It is worth having !Hyper at hand whilst reading this section. Loading its resource file into !ResEd and !ResTest will make it easier to see the various linkages between objects and observe the events that are raised when interacting with the user interface. The chapters later in this manual give full information on each of the classes involved.

## Requirements

Before designing the structure of !Hyper we had to decide what it must be able to do. We wanted to design a HyperCard-type application with the following features:

- multi-document capability
- navigation between cards (based around Draw files) using hotspots
- home/previous facility
- keyboard driven option
- suitable for range of screen modes/scalable output
- easily extendible
- easy to make a demo version
- find capability
- ability to print a card
- maintain history of all loaded cards.

## **Design decisions**

From the required features, we made the following design decisions.

### **Shared objects and client handles**

The multi-document support suggested the use of shared objects and the use of client handles for maintaining what file the viewer was showing. By doing this we would reduce memory usage (by just having one copy of the shared menus and dialogues) without complicating the association between events on a menu and the viewer that it was opened from.

### **Event driven interface**

Given that we wanted to extend and modify the interface easily, we decided to make it event driven as opposed to object driven. In other words when registering event handlers, we register for specific event numbers, rather than a generic event (e.g. `ActionButton_Selected`) on a specific component of an object. In this way we are able to modify the interface (e.g. reorder a menu or even move menu entries off onto a submenu) without having to change the code.

### **AboutToBeShown events**

We also decided to take advantage of a number of features offered by the toolbox such as the 'About To Be Shown' events. These made it possible to set up dialogue boxes as they were being shown, and not have to update them constantly as other parts of the application altered data. A less obvious benefit of this mechanism is that since the toolbox tells us the object id of what is being shown, we do not have to remember this ourselves, and in fact it is possible to let the toolbox automatically create such objects.

A good example of this is the Program Information box. This is created by the toolbox as a side effect of creating the iconbar (which is created on initialisation due to it having its `AutoCreate` bit set). We then just need to register for the `ProgInfo_AboutToBeShownEvent` and in our handler set the version string from our message file.

### **Standard objects**

To be Style Guide compliant (and to make less work for ourselves) we can use the standard `PrintDbox`, `Scale`, `ProgInfo` and `FileInfo` object templates supplied by the Toolbox.

### **Keyboard short-cuts**

As we want !Hyper to be keyboard drivable, we can make use of the Toolbox's keyboard short-cuts facility.

## How !Hyper was implemented

The rest of this chapter takes you through the stages involved in implementing !Hyper. It breaks down into the following sections:

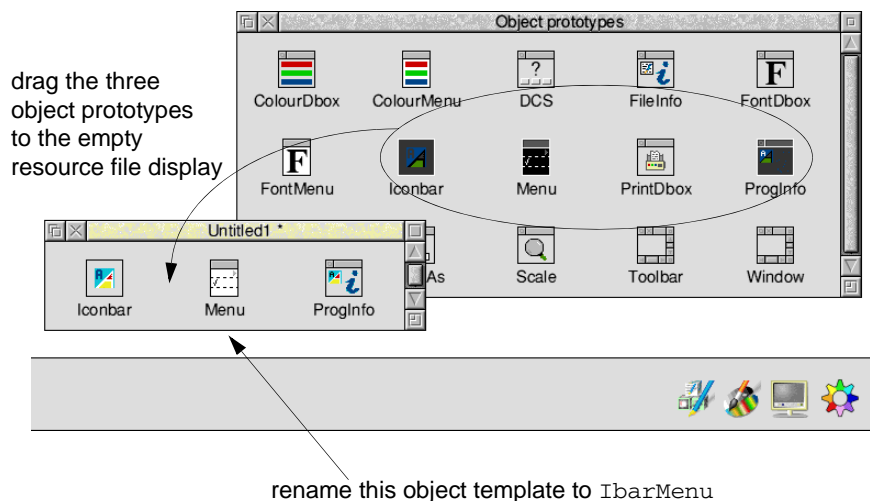
- *Creating and testing a simple resource file for !Hyper* (below).
- *File loading* on page 50 – coping with Filer\_Open messages on HCL files.
- *Handling views* on page 51 – extending our simple resource file, redraw handlers, implementing hotspots, linking data structures, showing and hiding views, adding keyboard short-cuts etc.
- *Modifying the interface* on page 60 – changing the interface by editing the resource file.
- *Client Events* on page 64 – a list of client events used in !Hyper.
- *Summary* on page 65 – features of the toolbox demonstrated in this chapter.

### Creating and testing a simple resource file for !Hyper

The first stage in implementing !Hyper was to create and test a very simple resource file consisting of an IconBar object template, a Menu object template for the iconbar icon, and a ProgInfo object template.

#### Creating a basic resource file

- 1 We began by starting the resource file editor (ResEd – described in the chapter ResEd on page 433), and then opened a new resource file display. Next we opened an object prototypes window and dragged an IconBar object template, menu and ProgInfo object template to our empty resource file:



- 2 Next we double-clicked on the ProgInfo object template in the resource file display. This opened its properties box and we entered the information we wanted to appear in this box. We also switched on **Deliver event Before showing**:

ProgInfo: ProgInfo

Title  
☐ Default ☒ Other  Length

Purpose

Author

Version

☐ Include "Licence" Licence type

Related web site button  
☐ Include "Web site" button  
Deliver event ☐ Default ☒ None ☐ Other   
Visit URL

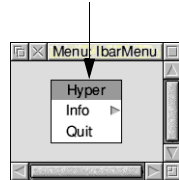
Deliver event  
☒ Before showing ☐ When hidden

☐ Use alternative window

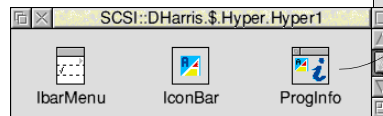
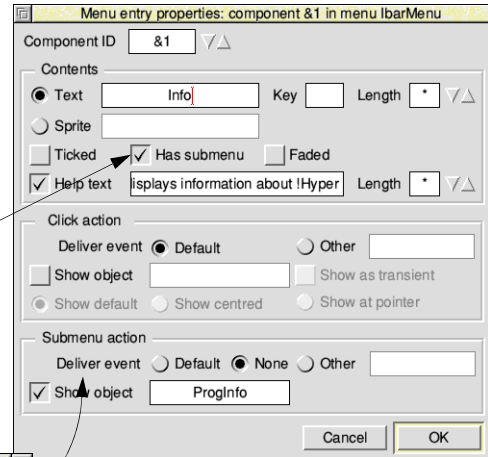
- 3 Then we edited the Menu object template in the resource file display and renamed it to IbarMenu. Next we double-clicked on IbarMenu and created two menu entries. The first entry we named Info, and the second entry Quit.

The Info entry we edited to include a submenu option to display the ProgInfo object template:

- 1 open IbarMenu and create an Info menu entry

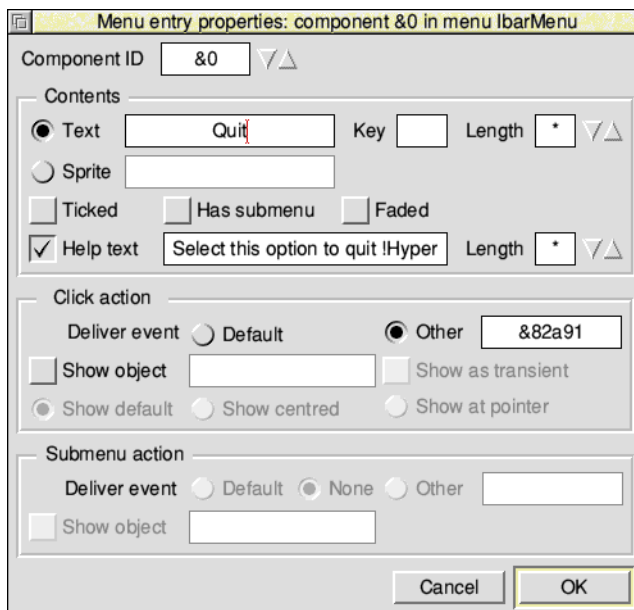


- 2 open the properties box for this menu entry and switch on **Has submenu**



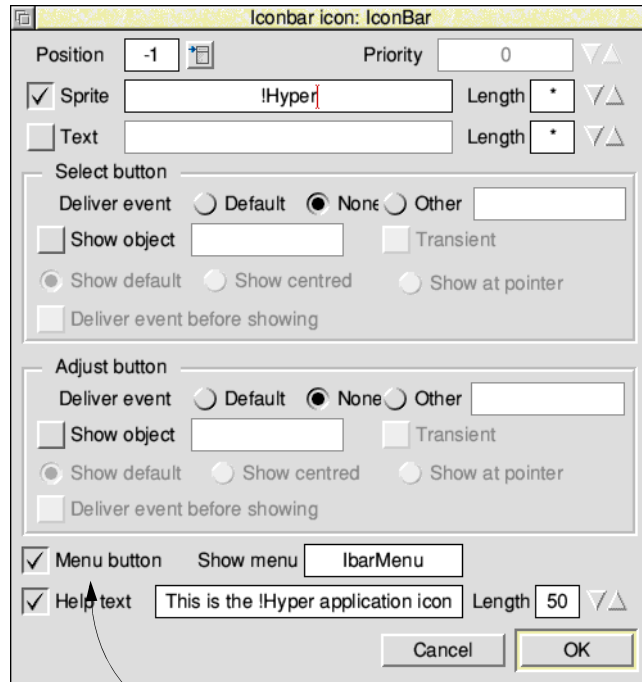
- 3 drag the ProgInfo object to the **Show object** option

The Quit entry was edited to return a particular event:



As we could choose our own events, the choice of 82a91 may seem strange. However, this is the same event that is generated by the Quit dialogue class, hence if we added editor features and required a quit confirmation, we could still use the same handles.

- 4 Finally we edited the Iconbar object template. We set up the sprite name, inserted some Help text, and dragged IbarMenu to the **Menu button** option:

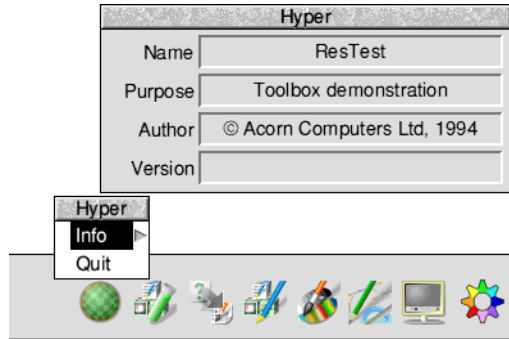


drag IbarMenu to the **Menu button** option

### Using ResTest to check the resource file

To test out this initial design we dragged the resource file from !ResEd to !ResTest's iconbar icon (ResTest is described on page 507). As we had set the AutoCreate and AutoShow options for the iconbar object template, it appeared

immediately on the iconbar. Pressing Menu over the icon opened our menu (IbarMenu) with the Quit and Info options. Sliding the mouse pointer over the submenu arrow opened the ProgInfo box:



Clicking on !ResTest's iconbar icon opened its Event Log window. We could now see what events were being raised when we tested the interface:



## Coding

We could now start writing some code. Being event driven, we decided to use eventlib. Our initial code merely consisted of initialising the Toolbox and eventlib and then registering our handlers. At this point we just needed some quit handlers (for the event generated by the Quit menu option and for the Wimp messages) and a handler to fill in the version string on the ProgInfo box.

Note the use of wimplib to provide easy access to the Wimp SWIs.



```

(from main.c)

static void app_init(void)
{
    /* initialise as a toolbox task */
    _kernel_oserror *e;
    if ((e=toolbox_initialise(0,310, messages, tbcodes,
        "<hyper$dir>",&mbl, &idblk,0,0,0)) != NULL) {
        wimp_report_error(e,0,0,0,0,0);
        exit(1);
    }

    /* initialise event lib */
    event_initialise(&idblk);

    /* not interested in nulls or keypresses- the toolbox
       handles all our keyboard shortcuts */
    event_set_mask(1+256);

    /* register events */

    event_register_message_handler(Wimp_MQuit,quit_handler,0);
    event_register_toolbox_handler(-1,Quit_Quit,
        tbquit_handler,NULL);
}

(from handler.c)

int tbquit_handler(int event_code, ToolboxEvent *event,
    IdBlock *id_block, void *handle)
{
    IGNORE(event);
    IGNORE(event_code);
    IGNORE(handle);
    IGNORE(id_block);

    quit =1;
    return 1;
}

int quit_handler(WimpMessage *message, void *handle)
{
    IGNORE(message);
    IGNORE(handle);

    quit =1;
    return 1;
}

```

```
int proginfo_show(int event_code, ToolboxEvent *event,
                  IdBlock *id_block, void *handle)
{
    IGNORE(handle);
    IGNORE(event);
    IGNORE(event_code);

    proginfo_set_version(0, id_block->self_id,
                        lookup_token("Version"));

    return 1;
}
```

## **File loading**

Next we turned our attention to file loading. This involved coping with Filer\_Open messages on HCL files and files that are dragged to the iconbar icon. To do this we registered some more Wimp message handlers.

```
(from main.c)

    event_register_message_handler(Wimp_MDataOpen, file_loader, 0);
    event_register_message_handler(Wimp_MDataLoad, file_loader, 0);

(from file.c)

int file_loader(WimpMessage *message, void *handle)
{
    /* only interested in HCL files */
    WimpMessage msg;
    IGNORE(handle);

    if (message->data.data_open.file_type != 0xfac) return 0;

    msg = *message;

    msg.hdr.your_ref = msg.hdr.my_ref;

    load_hcl_file(msg.data.data_load_ack.leaf_name);

    if (message->hdr.action_code == Wimp_MDataLoad)
        msg.hdr.action_code = Wimp_MDataLoadAck;
        wimp_send_message(Wimp_EUserMessage, &msg, msg.hdr.sender, 0, 0);

    return 1;
}
```

## Handling views

Now it was time to open a viewer onto a file. This involved going back to our resource file and adding some more object templates:

- a window object template to view the files in, which we called HyperViewer
- a menu to be shown on the viewer, which we called ViewerMenu
- attached to this menu a FileInfo box, a Scale box and a PrintDbox object template.

The dialogue box for FileInfo we filled in as follows (note that we switched on **Deliver event Before showing**):

File dialog box titled "FileInfo: FileInfo".

Title: ☒ Default ☐ Other  Length  \*

☒ Filename  HyperStack

Filetype  &FAC (&fac)

Deliver event

☒ Before showing ☐ When hidden

☐ Use alternative window

The dialogue box for Print we filled in as follows:

Print dialog box titled "Print dialogue: PrintDbox".

Optional features

☒ Copies  1

☒ Scale factor  100 %

☐ Page range ☐ All ☐ From  1 to  1

☒ Orientation ☒ Upright ☐ Sideways

☒ Draft button ☐ On ☒ Off

☐ Setup button Show window

☐ Save button ☐ Deliver event before showing

Deliver event

☐ Before showing ☐ When hidden

☐ Use alternative window

We changed the default values in the dialogue box for Scale as follows:

The 'Scale: Scale' dialog box has the following fields and options:

- Title:** ☒ Default ☐ Other [ ] Length [ \* ]
- Values:** Minimum [ 10 ] Maximum [ 200 ] Step size [ 5 ]
- Preset values:** [ 50 ] % [ 75 ] % [ 100 ] % [ 150 ] %
- ☐ Include "Scale to fit" button
- Deliver event:** ☐ Before showing ☐ When hidden
- ☐ Use alternative window [ ]
- Buttons: Cancel, OK

We then edited ViewerMenu, dragging the above three object templates to the **Show object** options in the appropriate Menu entry properties boxes.

For example, the **Scale View** Menu entry properties box:

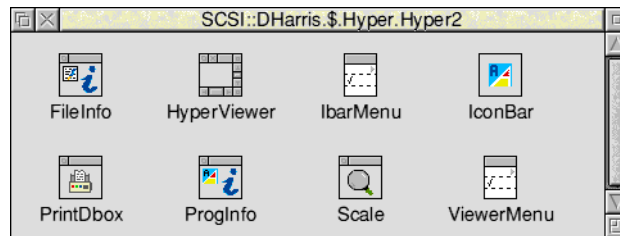
The 'Menu entry properties: component &0 in menu ViewerMenu' dialog box has the following fields and options:

- Component ID:** [ &0 ]
- Contents:**
  - ☒ Text [ Scale view ] Key [ F11 ] Length [ \* ]
  - ☐ Sprite [ ]
  - ☐ Ticked ☒ Has submenu ☐ Faded
  - ☒ Help text [ tion allows the view to be scaled ] Length [ \* ]
- Click action:**
  - Deliver event: ☒ Default ☐ Other [ ]
  - ☐ Show object [ ] ☐ Show as transient
  - ☒ Show default ☐ Show centred ☐ Show at pointer
- Submenu action:**
  - Deliver event: ☐ Default ☒ None ☐ Other [ ]
  - ☒ Show object [ Scale ]
- Buttons: Cancel, OK

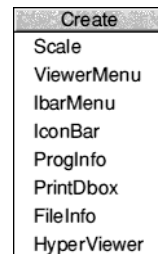
Having filled in all three menu entries, we then edited the HyperViewer window object template. We dragged ViewerMenu to the **Show menu** field, and filled in the other window properties boxes as appropriate.

Note that, to receive redraw events, we switched off the **Auto-redraw** flag in the Other properties dialogue in the HyperViewer window. This will affect the appearance in !ResTest and so, for the purposes of this demonstration, is left on.

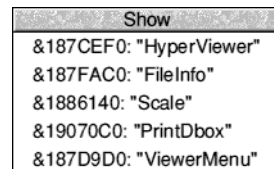
Our resource file display now looked like this:



After connecting them we dragged the resource file to !ResTest. Our icon appeared on the iconbar as before, but now when we pressed Menu over !ResTest's icon and looked at the Create submenu, we saw all the new object templates that we added.



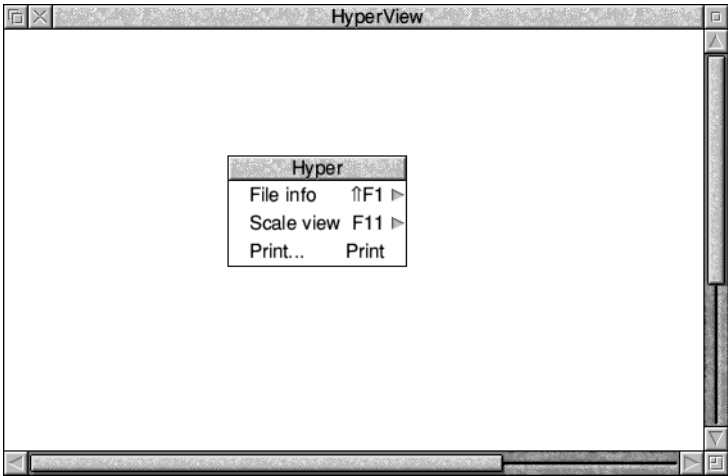
We then clicked on **HyperViewer** to create a viewer. This also unfaded the **Show** option and allowed us to go into the Show submenu and see all the object ids that had been created:



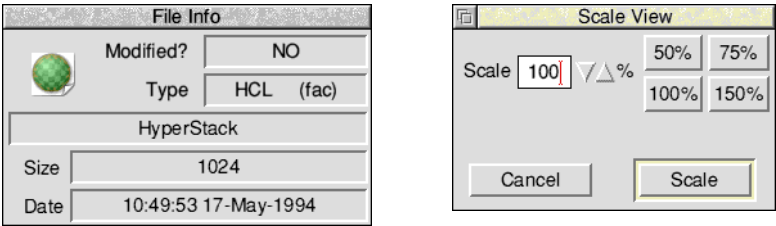
The Show submenu has three columns:

- the first indicates (via a tick) whether the object is showing
- the second is the unique identifier for a particular object – called the object id
- the third is the name of the template from which it was created.

When we clicked on the HyperViewer entry in the Show submenu the viewer was displayed on the screen. As a side effect of the creation the menu tree for the viewer was created as well. Pressing Menu over the viewer displayed the menu as one would expect:



Moving the pointer over the submenu arrows displayed the **File Info** and **Scale View** dialogue boxes:



Clicking on **Print ...** displayed the Print dialogue persistently:



The code to support these new features can be found in the C files under the !Hyper directory of the examples. As with the code fragments above, they take the form of registering a handler for a specific event in `app_init` (e.g. `FileInfo_AboutToBeShown`) and then handling the event elsewhere. Note that the print code is an essentially standard print job/render loop, differing only in that it uses the `DrawFile` module to do the rendering. See `print.c` for more information on this.

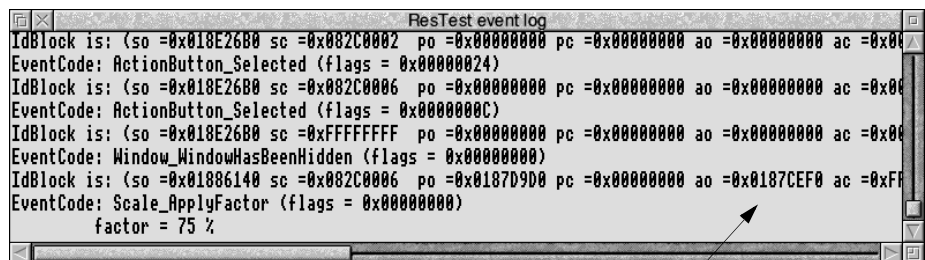
For the viewer (see `view.c`) we create a window object from a template (called `HyperView`, as seen in the !ResTest menu) and attach various handlers to cope with `RedrawRequests` and `CloseWindow` requests. Note that there is no need to register for `OpenWindow` requests as this is done on our behalf by the toolbox (as we set the `AutoOpen` bit of the window's template). We also register for mouse click events on the window. The relevant handler (`click_viewer`) sets input focus to the window and if applicable jumps to a new card.

### Redraw handler

The redraw handler (in `draw.c`) is a standard Wimp redraw handler that uses the `DrawFile` module to render into the window. Note that the `DrawFile` module is a generic renderer (i.e. not Wimp specific) and so needs absolute coordinates and a transformation matrix. We use the latter in the simplest sense – just as a way of scaling the Draw files.

### Scaling

The scaling is set whenever the user clicks scale on the Scale box. If you have the !ResTest Event log window open with the Resource file loaded, you will see that a 'Scale\_ApplyFactor' event is generated. We use this in a handler (in `draw.c`) to adjust the transformation matrix.



ancestor object id

The object id for the ancestor of the `Scale_ApplyFactor` event in this example is `&187CEFF`. This equates to the object id of `HyperViewer` (as shown in the Show submenu on page 53). This is because the viewer is the ancestor of this menu. The usefulness of this becomes apparent when more than one viewer object is shown.

### Implementing hotspots

To implement the hotspots on a view, we add gadgets (components of a Window Object) to our viewer window. We use the simplest gadget type, a button gadget, which is quite close in functionality to a Wimp icon (see `button.c`). Rather than hard code the definition of the gadget into the code, `Window_ExtractGadgetInfo` is used to get the basic gadget definition from a window template called 'Properties'.

### Linking the data structures

Not surprisingly, we link all the data structures for the loaded files together on a linked list. However, we do not need to search down this list every time an event happens: by using client handles (see `view.c`) we can attach the address of the relevant structure to an object. In this way, when we get a redraw event, we just find out the client handle of the viewer on which it happened and can determine what Draw files are to be rendered.

This also works for the menu tree; even though we are sharing the menu tree amongst all the open views, the `IdBlock` that initialised the toolbox is filled in with the ancestor of the tree. In Hyper, that will be a viewer (we set the `Ancestor` bit of the `HyperView` template). So, for example, when we receive a `Scale_ApplyFactor` event (as in *Scaling* on page 55), the ancestor is the viewer that leads to the scale object being shown. This also applies to `PrintDboxes`, even though they are shown persistently.

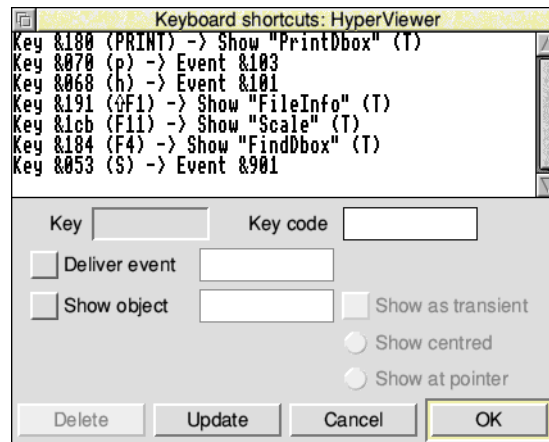
### Showing and hiding views

As we want a history of all views, we build a 'Views' submenu which will be off the icon bar menu. In common with other applications we want the ability to show a view and remove one from memory. In both cases the list of views is the same. This allows us to take advantage of shared objects again. We just need one menu that we build up entry by entry and make this a submenu of the 'Remove View' and 'Show View' entries that are added to the iconbar menu. When an event happens on this menu, we just need to find out the parent component (from the `IdBlock`) to determine whether we are removing or showing a view. We can also use another useful toolbox feature, in that it is the client that chooses the component ids. This means we can choose the address of the structure that defines a view as its component id – allowing very easy association between the menu entry and the view it refers to. Note that by having an `about to be shown` event enabled for the iconbar menu, it was possible to fade or unfade the 'Show view' and 'Remove view' entries as required (simply by checking whether our linked list was `NULL`).



## Adding keyboard short-cuts

With the interface beginning to stabilise, it was possible to start adding some of the keyboard short-cuts. These were generally decided by the Style Guide (e.g. F11 for scale), though some aspects of the interface required keys specific to Hyper (e.g. previous and home) to generate events. All this was handled through !ResEd (using the keyboard short-cuts option from the window object template menu) without any additional code requirement.

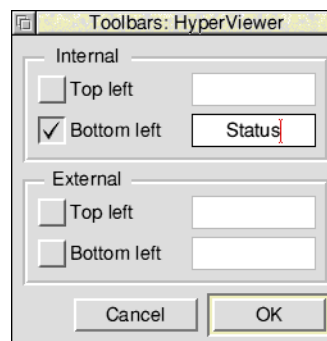


## Adding a status bar

A status bar was also provided by creating a Toolbar containing a button gadget:



This Toolbar object template was then dragged to the Toolbars dialogue box from the HyperViewer window:



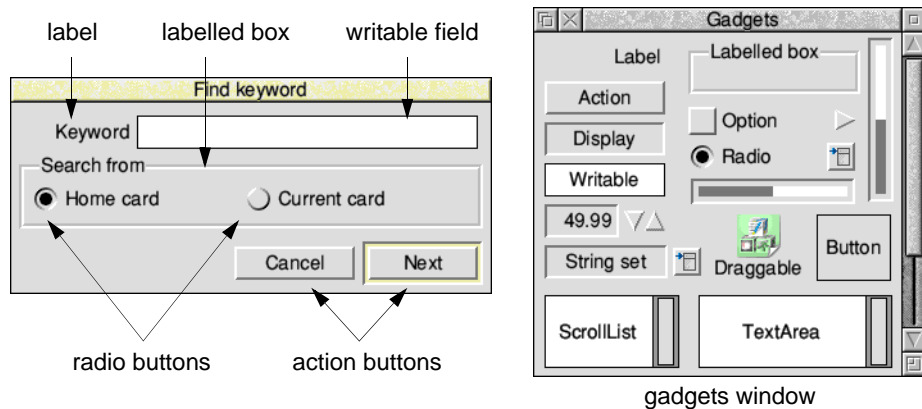
By using an internal bottom left toolbar, the parent window could be resized whilst still allowing the status to be visible. Previous and home action buttons were added (generating the same event codes as the keyboard short-cuts, so no additional code was required) as well.



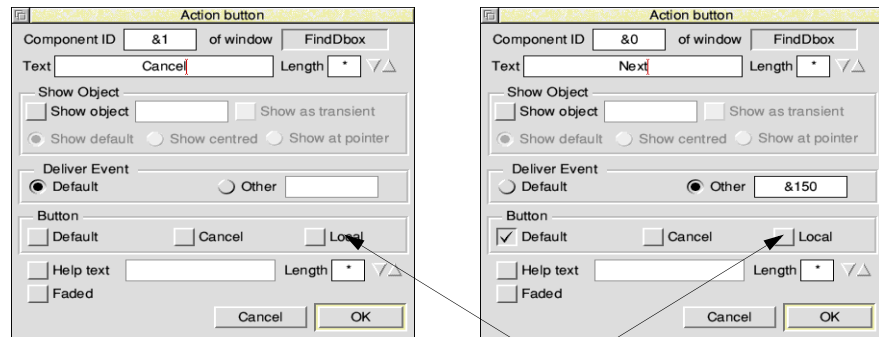
To control the visibility of the status bar, a menu entry (and appropriate keyboard short-cut) was added that would tick according to whether the status was showing. The handler for this is in handler.c. Note that since the status is on a per-viewer basis, we need to know when the viewer menu is opened (and over what viewer) to determine whether the option should be ticked or not.

### Adding a find capability

Finally, to provide a find capability, a custom dialogue was designed using !ResEd starting from a basic Window and adding gadgets from the gadgets window:



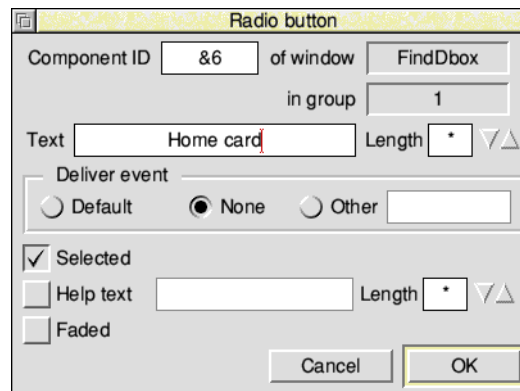
The properties dialogues for the two action buttons were:



leaving the **Local** options switched off results in the Toolbox automatically closing the dialogue box when clicked on

The **Next** action button was made the default and assigned a specific event code.

The **Home Card** radio button properties dialogue was filled in as follows (this radio button was specified as the selected radio button):



The **Current Card** radio button properties dialogue was edited to be similar to the Home Card radio button, except that it was not specified as the selected radio button.

The **Keyword** writable field properties dialogue was filled in as follows:

Writable field

Component ID  of window

Text  Length  ▾ ▴

Justify

☒ Left ☐ Centre ☐ Right

☐ Specify allowed characters Length  ▾ ▴

Allowed characters

☐ a-z ☐ A-Z ☐ 0-9 ☐ Other

☐ Password behaviour

Link to gadgets

☐ Before  ☐ After

☐ Deliver events when value changes

☐ Help text  Length  ▾ ▴

☐ Faded

After choosing suitable components and event codes, the handler code can be written in a self contained unit.

## Modifying the interface

One of the original requirements was that it should be easy to modify the interface to !Hyper. By taking an event driven approach, it is possible to make significant changes to the User Interface, without altering the code. Alternatively, when adding new functionality, this can be done in a modular fashion by adding the required handlers and registering them when required.

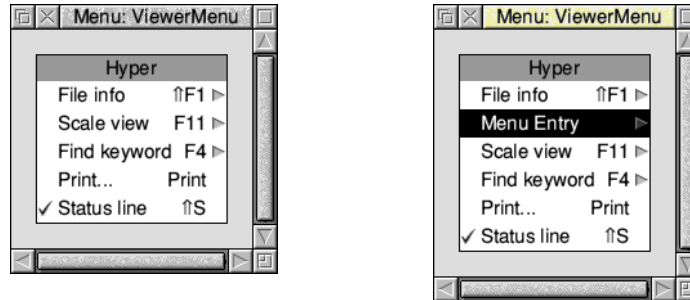
### Adding an export DrawFile facility

As an example, consider adding an export DrawFile facility. This would allow saving away the Draw files that make up the card on show in the viewer. The best way to implement this would be:

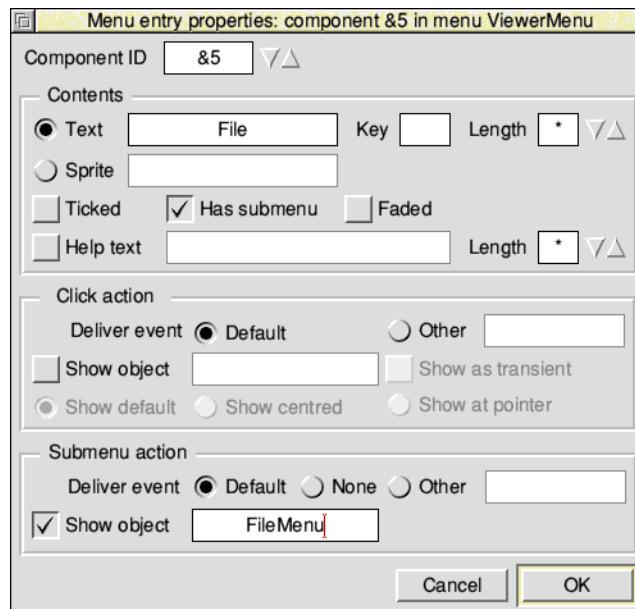
- add a new submenu to the main menu, and call this new submenu `File`
- create two menu entries in this submenu; the first entry will replace the `FileInfo` menu entry currently on the main menu; the second entry would provide an export facility (implemented using a simple `SaveAs` dialogue).

This can be achieved easily by some very simple editing of the resource file:

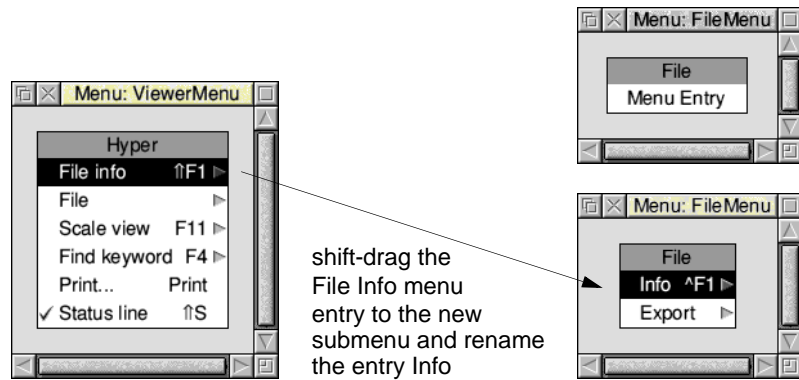
- 1 Drag a Menu object template from the Object prototype window to the resource file, and rename the object template to FileMenu.
- 2 Edit ViewerMenu and add a new menu entry to it:



Now edit the new menu entry and rename it to File. Then drag the new menu object template FileMenu to the **Show object** option:

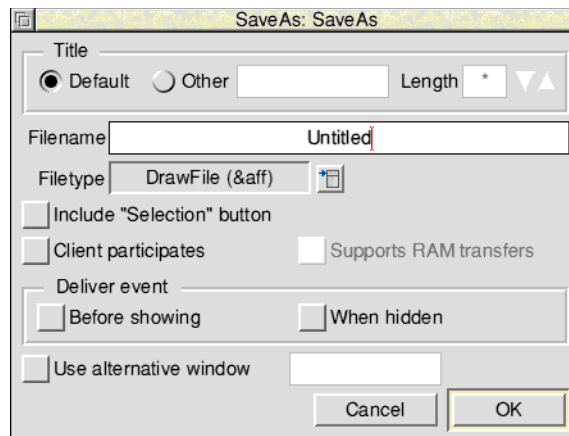


- 3 Next double-click on the FileMenu object template. Rename the title File, and then Shift-drag the **File Info** menu entry from ViewerMenu to it. To make the copied menu entry Style Guide compliant rename it to **Info**:

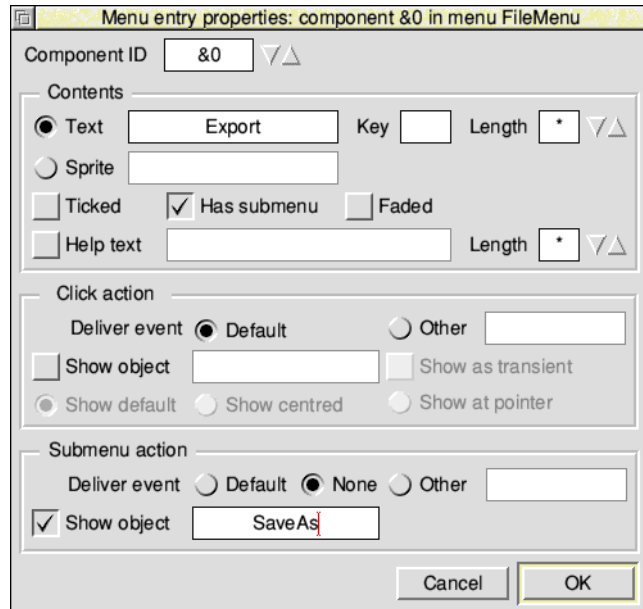


Moving the **File Info** menu entry from ViewerMenu to the new File submenu is a very simple way of relocating this menu option from one menu to another. As we rely on the FileInfo\_AboutToBeShown event, it doesn't matter where it is in the interface; it will still work.

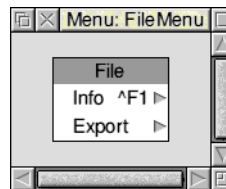
- 4 Now drag a SaveAs object template from the Object prototype window to the resource file. Edit this object template to specify that the filetype should be DrawFile:



- Finally return to the File menu and create an Export menu entry (by renaming the default entry title Menu Entry to Export). Edit this entry and drag the SaveAs object template to the **Show object** option:

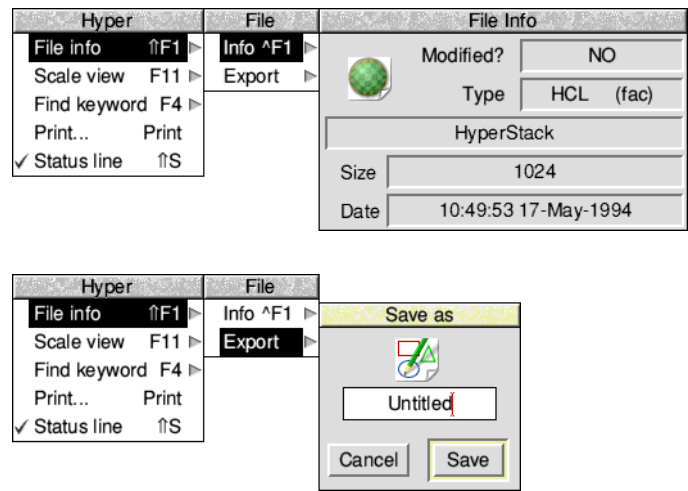


The final submenu should now appear as follows:



The code for the export facility would consist of registering for the various toolbox events and then handling them in a separate area of the code.

If you now dragged the resource file to ResTest, you would see:



Other possible modifications

By this time the viewer menu could begin to get cluttered. It would then be very easy to drag off some of the entries to a separate 'Utilities' submenu. Again, being event driven and remembering that the handlers operate on the Ancestor of the menu tree, they will continue to work without code alteration.

Making a demo version of Hyper could be achieved by removing or fading parts of the interface with !ResEd.

Client Events

A number of events were used in Hyper that were 'Client specified'. These are listed here to help understand properties and output in !ResEd and !ResTest.

Event number	Usage
&101	Go to Home card
&103	Go to previous card
&150	Start find operation
&151	Iconbar menu is about to be shown
&900	Viewer menu is about to be shown
&901	Toggle status bar

Other standard events were enabled for dialogues being shown, Print etc.



## Summary

This chapter has demonstrated the following features of the toolbox:

<b>Toolbox feature</b>	<b>see section/file</b>
shared objects and client handles	<i>Shared objects and client handles</i> on page 42
About to be shown events	<i>AboutToBeShown events</i> on page 42
adding and removing gadgets at run-time	<i>button.c</i> (see <i>Implementing hotspots</i> on page 56)
creating objects from a template	<i>view.c</i> (see page 55)
auto creation	<i>AboutToBeShown events</i> on page 42
the Draw file renderer	<i>draw.c</i> (see page 55)
event handling with eventlib	<i>Coding</i> on page 48
Menu handling	<i>Creating a basic resource file</i> on page 43
keyboard short-cuts	<i>Adding keyboard short-cuts</i> on page 57
client specified events and component ids	<i>Showing and hiding views</i> on page 56

## HyperCard Control Language

HyperCard Control Language (HCL) is used by !Hyper to control which draw files are displayed to the user and when jumps should be made to new cards. It is beyond the scope of this example to describe an editor, so the following section is provided to describe the commands that are used.

### HCL commands

All card definitions are enclosed within start and end directives:

```
!!start name
...
!!end
```

where *name* is cardXXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXX being an 8 digit hex number.

---

Other commands are as follows:

<b>Command</b>	<b>Action</b>
<code>button <i>bbox name</i></code>	sets up a hotspot at the given position and sets its behaviour to go to the named card when clicked on
<code>clear</code>	removes all buttons and Draw files from the viewer window
<code>colour <i>n</i></code>	sets the background colour to the given decimal value
<code>gosub <i>name</i></code>	allows 'inclusion' of common functionality
<code>goto <i>name</i></code>	allows common ending of cards
<code>keyword <i>string</i></code>	sets keyword(s) for this card – allows searching with the find dialogue box
<code>load <i>file</i></code>	loads a file into the bottom layer – overlay will do this if it follows a clear
<code>overlay <i>file</i></code>	loads a draw file into the next available layer
<code>stack <i>string</i></code>	sets the name of this stack to the given string. This will appear in the iconbar menu
<code>status <i>string</i></code>	changes the status line to the given string
<code>title <i>string</i></code>	sets the title bar to the given string

There are also a number of commands that are only used by an editor. These are not described here as they are not required by !Hyper.

---

## 3

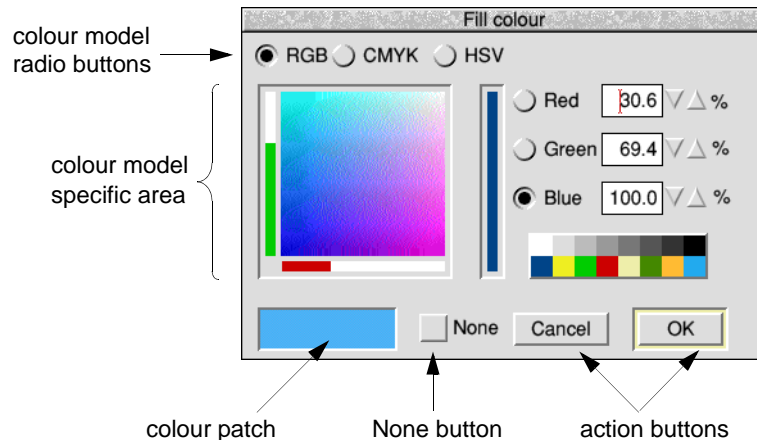
# Colour Dialogue box class

---

**A** Colour Dialogue box object allows the user to specify a colour using a variety of colour models.

### User interface

The colour selection window can be described as follows:



- At the top is a row of radio buttons – these select which colour model is being used.
- In the middle is an area defined by the current colour model – details of this are described overleaf.
- At the bottom of the window is the colour patch, an optional **None** button which controls transparency, and the window's action buttons.

# Application Program Interface

## Attributes

A Colour Dialogue object has the following attributes which are specified in its object template and can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attributes	Description	
flags	Bit	Meaning
	0	when set, this bit indicates that a ColourDbox_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.
	1	when set, this bit indicates that a ColourDbox_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the Colour Dialogue object has been removed from the screen.
	2	when set, include a <b>None</b> button in the dialogue box
	3	when set, select the <b>None</b> button when the dialogue box is created
title	this gives an alternative string to use instead of the string 'Colour Choice' in the title bar of the dialogue box (0 means use default)	
max title length	this gives the maximum length in bytes of title text which will be used for this object	
colour	an RGB value for the initial colour value	

Note that it is possible to set and read whether a Colour Dialogue has a **None** entry at run-time using the following methods (described on page 77):

ColourDbox\_SetNoneAvailable  
ColourDbox\_GetNoneAvailable

## Manipulating a Colour Dialogue object

### Creating and deleting a Colour Dialogue object

A Colour Dialogue object is created using SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject.

When this object is created it has no attached objects (see page 11).

A Colour Dialogue object is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject.

The setting of the non-recursive delete bit does not have a meaning for Colour Dialogue objects.

### Showing a Colour Dialogue object

When a Colour Dialogue object is displayed on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject it has the following behaviour:

Show type	Position
0 (default)	the underlying window is shown at the last place shown on the screen, or near the mouse pointer, if it has not already been shown
2 (topleft)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate

For most applications it will not be necessary to make these calls explicitly, but instead to mark the templates with their auto-create bit set, so that a Colour Dialogue object is created on start-up.

### Before the dialogue box is shown

When the client calls Toolbox\_ShowObject, a ColourDbox\_AboutToBeShown Toolbox event is raised (if the appropriate flags bit is set), allowing the client to take any last minute action. Typically, a client will indicate which of the colours should be shown as the currently selected one, when it receives this event.

### Setting and reading the colour used in a Colour Dialogue box

It is possible for the colour which is currently selected in the dialogue box to be set by the client application. This is independent of the colour model being used, since the colour is specified as an RGB colour value. The client passes a 'colour block' to the Colour Dialogue module which has a one-word RGB value as its first word; the remainder of the block is intended to support any future colour models other than RGB, CMYK and HSV. It has a size field followed by colour-model-specific data. For clients not requiring this extensibility, the size field should be set to 0. The method for setting the colour thus used in a Colour Dialogue is ColourDbox\_SetColour.

The current colour (and colour model data) can be read using the ColourDbox\_GetColour method (described on page 74).

### **Setting and reading the colour model used in a Colour Dialogue**

The colour model used in a Colour Dialogue is normally chosen by the user by clicking on the appropriate radio button. The client can however set this at run-time using the `ColourDbox_SetColourModel` method, passing a colour number (RGB=0, CMYK=1, HSV=2). If any other colour model is required, then further colour-model-specific data must also be passed to this method (none are currently supported).

The current colour model used can be read using the `ColourDbox_GetColourModel` method.

### **Reacting to colour selections**

When the user has found the correct colour he wants, he will click the **OK** button in the Colour Dialogue box. The Colour Dialogue module delivers a `ColourDbox_ColourSelected` Toolbox event to the client at this point giving the RGB value of the colour chosen.

### **Completion of a Colour Dialogue**

When the Colour Dialogue module has hidden its dialogue box at the end of a dialogue, it delivers a `ColourDbox_DialogueCompleted` Toolbox event to the client, with an indication of whether a colour selection occurred during the dialogue.

## Colour Dialogue methods

The following methods are all invoked by calling SWI Toolbox\_MiscOp with:

R0	holding a flags word
R1	being a Colour Dialogue id
R2	being the method code which distinguishes this method
R3-R9	potentially holding method-specific data

### ColourDbox\_GetWimpHandle 0

#### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Colour Dbox object id

R2 = 0

#### On exit

R0 = Wimp window handle of underlying window

#### Use

This method returns the Wimp window handle of the window used by the underlying Colour Picker module to implement the Colour dialogue. The value returned is only valid when the Colour dialogue box is showing.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colourdbbox_get_wimp_handle ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId colourdbbox,
                                                    int *wimp_handle
                                                    );
```

## ColourDbox\_GetDialogueHandle 1

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Colour Dbox object id

R2 = 1

### On exit

R0 = ColourPicker dialogue handle of underlying dialogue box

### Usage

This method returns the handle of the dialogue box used by the underlying Colour Picker module to reference the Colour dialogue. The value returned is only valid when the Colour dialogue box is showing.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colourdbbox_get_dialogue_handle ( unsigned int flags,
                                                         ObjectId colourdbbox,
                                                         int *dialogue_handle
                                                         );
```



## ColourDbox\_SetColour 2

### On entry

R0 = flags  
     bit 0 set  $\Rightarrow$  select the **None** option  
     bit 1 set  $\Rightarrow$  deselect the **None** option  
 R1 = Colour Dbox object id  
 R2 = 2  
 R3 = pointer to colour block

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the colour currently displayed in the Colour Dialogue (adjusting the colour slice shown, the sliders, and the writable fields appropriately).

The colour block is defined as follows:

+0	0
+1	blue value (0, ..., &FF)
+2	green value
+3	red value
+4	size of the remainder of this block (which may be 0)
+8	colour model number
+12...	other model-dependent data

Currently there are no extra colour models supported, so the size field at byte offset 4 should be set to 0.

If bit 0 of the flags word is set (select the **None** option) then R3 may be 0.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colouredbox_set_colour ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId colouredbox,
                                                const int *colour_block
                                                );
```

## ColourDbox\_GetColour 3

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Colour Dbox object id  
R2 = 3  
R3 = pointer to buffer for colour block  
R4 = size of buffer

### On exit

if bit 0 of R0 is set  $\Rightarrow$  **None** is selected  
R4 = size of buffer required (if R3 was 0)  
    (currently fixed because no extra colour models are supported)  
    else buffer pointed at by R3 contains colour information  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer.

### Use

This method returns the colour currently displayed in the Colour Dialogue.

The colour block is defined as follows:

+0	0
+1	blue value (0, ..., &FF)
+2	green value
+3	red value
+4	size of the remainder of this block (which may be 0)
+8	colour model number
+12...	other model-dependent data

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colouredbox_get_colour ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectID colouredbox,
                                                  int *buffer,
                                                  int buff_size,
                                                  int *outflags,
                                                  int *nbytes
                                                  );
```

## ColourDbox\_SetColourModel 4

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Colour Dbox object id  
R2 = 4  
R3 = pointer to colour model block

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the colour model currently used in the Colour Dialogue. The colour which is being displayed will now be shown using the new colour model, and the layout of the dialogue box will change accordingly.

The colour model block is defined as follows:

+0      size of the remainder of this block (currently only 4)  
+4      colour model number  
+8...   other model-dependent data

The current valid colour model numbers are:

0    RGB  
1    CMYK  
2    HSV

Currently there are no extra colour models supported, so the size field at byte offset 0 should be set to 4 (i.e. just a colour model number).

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colouredbox_set_colour_model ( unsigned int flags,
                                                         ObjectID colouredbox,
                                                         const int *model_block
                                                         );
```

## ColourDbox\_GetColourModel 5

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Colour Dbox object id  
R2 = 5  
R3 = pointer to buffer for colour block  
R4 = size of buffer

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required (if R3 was 0)  
    (currently fixed because no extra colour models are supported)  
    else buffer pointed at by R3 contains colour information  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the number of the colour model currently used in the Colour Dialogue.

The colour model block is defined as follows:

+0      size of the remainder of this block  
+4      colour model number (currently: 0 = RGB, 1 = CMYK and 2 = HSV)  
+8...   other model-dependent data

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colourdbbox_get_colour_model ( unsigned int flags,
                                                         ObjectId colourdbbox,
                                                         int *buffer,
                                                         int buff_size,
                                                         int *nbytes
                                                         );
```

## ColourDbox\_SetNoneAvailable 6

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Colour Dbox object id  
R2 = 6  
R3 = non-zero means **None** is available

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets whether a **None** option appears in the Colour Dialogue.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colouredbox_set_none_available ( unsigned int flags,
                                                         ObjectId colouredbox,
                                                         int none
                                                         );
```

## ColourDbox\_GetNoneAvailable 7

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Colour Dbox object id  
R2 = 7

### On exit

if bit 0 of R0 is set, then **None** is available

### Use

This method returns whether the **None** option appears in a Colour Dialogue.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colouredbox_get_none_available ( unsigned int flags,
                                                         ObjectId colouredbox,
                                                         int *out_flags
                                                         );
```

## ColourDbox\_SetHelpMessage 8

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Colour Dbox object id  
R2 = 8  
R3 = pointer to message text

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to set the help message which will be returned when a Help Request message is received for this Colour Dialogue object. The Toolbox handles the reply message for you.

If R3 is 0, then the Help Message for this Colour Dialogue object is detached.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colouredbox_set_help_message ( unsigned int flags,
                                                         ObjectId colouredbox,
                                                         const char *message_text
                                                         );
```

## ColourDbox\_GetHelpMessage 9

### On entry

R0 = flags  
 R1 = Colour Dbox object id  
 R2 = 9  
 R3 = pointer to buffer (or 0)  
 R4 = size of buffer to hold message text

### On exit

R4 = holds size of buffer required for message text (if R3 was 0)  
       else Buffer pointed at by R3 holds message text  
 R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method is used to read the help message which will be returned when a Help Request message is received for this Colour Dialogue object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colouredbox_get_help_message ( unsigned int flags,
                                                       ObjectId colouredbox,
                                                       char *buffer,
                                                       int buff_size,
                                                       int *nbytes
                                                       );
```

## Colour Dialogue events

There are a number of Toolbox events which are generated by the Colour Dialogue module:

### ColourDbox\_AboutToBeShown (0x829c0)

#### Block

+ 8     0x829c0  
 + 12    flags (as passed in to Toolbox\_ShowObject)  
 + 16    value which will be passed in R2 to ToolBox\_ShowObject  
 + 20... block which will be passed in R3 to ToolBox\_ShowObject for the  
           underlying dialogue box.

## **Use**

This Toolbox event is raised when SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject has been called for a Colour Dialogue object. It gives the application the opportunity to set fields in the dialogue box before it actually appears on the screen.

## **C data type**

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader  hdr;
    int                 show_type;
    union
    {
        TopLeft          pos;
        WindowShowObjectBlock full;
    } info;
} ColourDboxAboutToBeShownEvent;
```



## ColourDbox\_DialogueCompleted (0x829c1)

### Block

+ 8      0x829c1  
+ 12     flags

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised after the Colour Dialogue object has been hidden, either by a **Cancel** click, or after an **OK** click, or by the user pressing Escape. It allows the client to tidy up its own state associated with this dialogue.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
} ColourDboxDialogueCompletedEvent;
```

## ColourDbox\_ColourSelected (0x829c2)

### Block

+ 8      0x829c2  
+ 12     flags bit 0 set means **None** was chosen  
+ 16     colour block chosen

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user clicks **OK** in the dialogue box. The colour block has the same format shown in the ColourDbox\_SetColour method.

Note that event if the **None** button is set, a colour value is still returned, reflecting the current state of the dialogue box.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    unsigned int        colour_block[(212/4)];
} ColourDboxColourSelectedEvent;
```

## Colour Dialogue templates

The layout of a Colour Dialogue template is shown below. Fields which have types `MsgReference` and `StringReference` are those which will require relocation when they are loaded from a resource file. If the template is being constructed in memory, then these fields should be real pointers (i.e. they do not require relocation).

For more details on relocation, see appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
title	4	MsgReference
max_title	4	word
colour	4	word

---

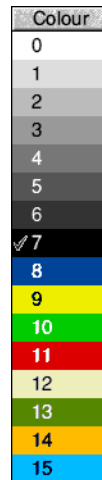
## 4 Colour Menu class

---

**A** Colour Menu object is used to show a menu giving the 16 desktop colours (and an optional **None** entry), and to allow the user to select one of these colours by clicking on its menu entry.

### User interface

The Colour Menu allows the user to select from the set of available desktop colours (and an optional **None** entry which appears at the bottom). The menu is displayed showing the 16 desktop colours. Optionally any one of the colours can be shown as selected (with a tick against it).



When a hit is received for the Colour Menu, a Toolbox event is returned to the client. This contains the colour number of the selected colour. The selected colour is shown as ticked in the Colour Menu, when the menu is next shown (or immediately if Adjust is held down).

# Application Program Interface

## Attributes

A Colour Menu object has the following attributes which are specified in its object template and can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attribute	Description
flags word	<b>Bit Meaning</b> 0    when set, this bit indicates that a ColourMenu_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this Colour Menu 1    when set, this bit indicates that a ColourMenu_HasBeenHidden event should be raised when the Menu has been removed from the screen 2    when set, include a <b>None</b> entry in the menu (will appear with <b>None</b> as its last entry)
menu title	this gives an alternative string to use instead of the string 'Colour' in the title bar of the menu
max title length	this gives the maximum length in bytes of title text which will be used for this Colour Menu.
colour	this is an indication of which colour is selected when the Colour Menu is first created. Possible values are: 0-15    for the desktop colours 16    for 'None' -1    to indicate that no colour should be selected

## Manipulating a Colour Menu object

### Creating and deleting a Colour Menu

A Colour Menu object is created using SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject.

When this object is created it has no attached objects (see page 11).

A Colour Menu object is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject.

The setting of the non-recursive delete bit does not have a meaning for Colour menus.

## Showing a Colour Menu

When a Colour menu is displayed on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject it has the following behaviour:

Show type	Position
0 (default)	64 OS units to the left of the mouse pointer
1 (full spec)	R3 + 0 gives x coordinate of top-left corner of Menu R3 + 4 gives y coordinate of top-left corner of Menu
2 (topleft)	R3 + 0 gives x coordinate of top-left corner of Menu R3 + 4 gives y coordinate of top-left corner of Menu

## Before the menu is shown

When the client calls Toolbox\_ShowObject, a ColourMenu\_AboutToBeShown Toolbox event is raised (if the appropriate flags bit is set), allowing the client to take any last minute action. Typically, a client will indicate which of the colours should be shown as the currently selected one, when it receives this event.

## Setting and getting the selected colour

For a Colour Menu, one of the colour entries can be designated the selected colour (indicated by a tick against it in the menu). Colours within the menu are numbered like the Wimp colours from 0-15 (with 16 meaning 'None', and -1 meaning 'nothing selected').

The currently selected colour entry can be set and read dynamically using the ColourMenu\_SetColour/ColourMenu\_GetColour methods.

Note that when the user clicks on a colour entry, that will become the selected colour automatically without calling ColourMenu\_SetColour. As will be seen later, a user click results in a Toolbox event being delivered to the client, indicating which colour was selected.

The client can dynamically set whether a **None** entry is given, by using the ColourMenu\_SetNoneAvailable method (and read whether it is available using the ColourMenu\_GetNoneAvailable method).

## Processing a colour selection

Whenever the user clicks on a colour entry a ColourMenu\_Selection Toolbox event is raised to indicate which colour was chosen (one of 0-15, or 16 to indicate 'None').

## Colour Menu methods

The following methods are all invoked by calling SWI Toolbox\_MiscOp with:

R0	holding a flags word
R1	being a Colour Menu id
R2	being the method code which distinguishes this method
R3-R9	potentially holding method-specific data.

### ColourMenu\_SetColour 0

#### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Colour Menu object id

R2 = 0

R3 = Wimp colour (0-15, or 16 for 'None', or -1 for 'nothing selected')

#### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method selects a colour as being the currently selected one for this Colour Menu, and places a tick next to it. Note that this change will only be visible when the Colour Menu is next shown.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colourmenu_set_colour ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId colourmenu,
                                                int wimp_colour
                                                );
```

## ColourMenu\_GetColour 1

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Colour Menu object id  
R2 = 1

### Exit

R0 = Wimp colour selected (0-15, or 16 for 'None', or -1 for 'nothing selected')

### Use

This method returns the Wimp colour which is currently selected for this Colour Menu.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colourmenu_get_colour ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId colourmenu,
                                                int *wimp_colour
                                              );
```

## ColourMenu\_SetNoneAvailable 2

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Colour Menu object id  
R2 = 2  
R3 = non-zero means allow a 'None' entry

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets whether there is a 'None' entry for this Colour Menu.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colourmenu_set_none_available ( unsigned int flags,
                                                         ObjectId colourmenu,
                                                         int none
                                                       );
```

### ColourMenu\_GetNoneAvailable 3

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Colour Menu object id  
R2 = 3

#### On exit

R0 = non-zero means there is a 'None' entry

#### Use

This method returns whether this Colour Menu has a 'None' entry.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colourmenu_get_none_available ( unsigned int flags,
                                                         ObjectId colourmenu,
                                                         int *none
                                                         );
```

### ColourMenu\_SetTitle 4

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Colour Menu object id  
R2 = 4  
R3 = pointer to text string to use

#### Exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method sets the text which is to be used in the title bar of the given Colour Menu.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colourmenu_set_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId colourmenu,
                                                const char *title
                                                );
```



## ColourMenu\_GetTitle 5

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Colour Menu object id

R2 = 5

R3 = pointer to buffer to return the text in (or 0)

R4 = size of buffer

### Exit

R4 = size of buffer required to hold the text (if R3 was 0)

else Buffer pointed to by R3 contains title text

R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the text string used in a Colour Menu's title bar.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *colourmenu_get_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId colourmenu,
                                              char *buffer,
                                              int buff_size,
                                              int *nbytes
                                              );
```

## Colour Menu events

There are a number of Toolbox Events which are generated by the Colour Menu module:

### ColourMenu\_AboutToBeShown (0x82980)

#### Block

- + 8      0x82980
- + 12     flags (as passed in to Toolbox\_ShowObject)
- + 16     value which will be passed in R2 to ToolBox\_ShowObject
- + 20...  block which will be passed in R3 to ToolBox\_ShowObject for the  
         underlying Menu object

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject has been called for a Colour Menu object. It gives the application the opportunity to set the selected colour before the menu actually appears on the screen.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                show_type;
    TopLeft            pos;
} ColourMenuAboutToBeShownEvent;
```

### ColourMenu\_HasBeenHidden (0x82981)

#### Block

- + 8      0x82981

#### Use

This Toolbox Event is raised by the Toolbox when Toolbox\_HideObject is called on a Colour Menu which has the appropriate bit set in its template flags word. It enables a client application to clear up after a menu has been closed. It is also raised when clicking outside a menu or hitting Escape.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
} ColourMenuHasBeenHiddenEvent;
```

## ColourMenu\_Selection (0x82982)

### Block

+ 8      0x82982  
 + 16     Wimp colour selected (0-15, or 16 for 'None')

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user has clicked on one of the Colour entries in the Colour Menu. The colour value returned is in the range 0-15 for the desktop colours, or 16 for 'None'.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                colour;
} ColourMenuSelectionEvent;
```

## Colour Menu templates

The layout of a Colour Menu template is shown below. Fields which have types `MsgReference` and `StringReference` are those which will require relocation when they are loaded from a resource file. If the template is being constructed in memory, then these fields should be real pointers (i.e. they do not require relocation).

For more details on relocation, see appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
title	4	MsgReference
max-title	4	word
colour	4	word

## Colour Menu Wimp event handling

The Colour Menu class responds to certain Wimp events and takes the actions as described below:

Wimp event	Action
Menu Selection	The colour number corresponding to the menu selection is sent back to the client via a ColourMenu_Selection event. If Adjust is held down, then the currently open menu is re-opened in the same place.
User Msg	Message_HelpRequest (while the pointer is over a Colour Menu object) If a help message is attached to this Colour Menu, then a reply is sent on the application's behalf.

---

## 5 Discard/Cancel/Save Dialogue box class

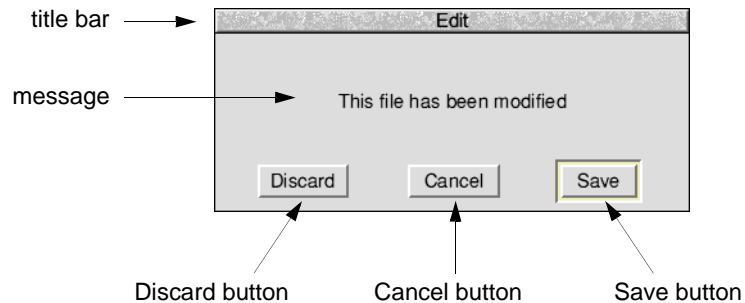
---

**A** Discard/Cancel/Save (DCS) Dialogue box is used by the client application when the user attempts to close a window containing modified and unsaved data.

### User interface

A DCS dialogue object is used to allow the user to save data which has been modified, usually before a document window is closed.

The dialogue box which appears on the screen has a number of components:



- a title bar (by default containing the name of the application, i.e. the message whose tag is '`_TaskName`')
- a message stating (by default) that there is unsaved data
- three Action Buttons: **Discard**, **Cancel** and **Save** (default action button).

The user sees the following behaviour (note that a click with the adjust button is treated in the same way as a select click):

- if they click on **Discard**, the box is closed, the parent window is closed, and its (new) contents discarded
- if they click outside the dialogue box (and it was opened transiently, i.e. with Menu semantics), or click on **Cancel**, the box is closed, and the close on the parent window is cancelled

- if they click on **Save** or press Return, the box is closed, and either the data is saved without further interaction (if a suitable full pathname is available), or a SaveAs dialogue appears allowing an icon to be dragged to where the data should be saved. When the save is complete, the parent window is closed.

## Application Program Interface

When a DCS object is created, it has a number of optional components:

- an alternative title bar string instead of the client's name
- an alternative message to use in the dialogue box
- the name of an alternative template to use for the underlying Window object.

Just before the DCS dialogue box is shown on the screen, the client is delivered a DCS\_AboutToBeShown Toolbox event if enabled by the flags word.

Once the dialogue box is displayed on the screen, the DCS module handles events for it, and raises a number of Toolbox Events to indicate what choice the user has made. These are DCS\_Discard, DCS\_Cancel and DCS\_Save respectively. If the dialogue is closed, then the client receives a DCS\_DialogueCompleted event if enabled by the appropriate bit in the flags word (see below).

### Attributes

A DCS object has the following attributes which are specified in its object template and can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attributes	Description	
flags	Bit	Meaning
	0	when set, this bit indicates that a DCS_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.
	1	when set, this bit indicates that a DCS_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the DCS object has been removed from the screen.
DCS title	an alternative string for the title bar other than the client's name (0 means use application name)	
max title length	this gives the maximum length in bytes of title text which will be used for this object	
message	an alternative message to use in the DCS dialogue box (other than 'This file has been modified')	

Attributes	Description
max message length	this gives the maximum length in bytes of the message which will be used for this object
window	an alternative window template to use instead of the default one (o means use default)

## Manipulating a DCS object

### Creating and deleting a DCS object

A DCS object is created using SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject.

When this object is created it has no attached objects (see page 11).

A DCS object is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject.

The setting of the non-recursive delete bit does not have a meaning for DCS objects.

### Showing a DCS object

When a DCS object is displayed on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject it has the following behaviour:

Show type	Position
0 (default)	close to the pointer
1 (full spec)	<div>R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate</div> <div>R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate</div> <div>R3 + 8    visible area maximum x coordinate</div> <div>R3 + 12   visible area maximum y coordinate</div> <div>R3 + 16   scroll x offset relative to work area</div> <div>R3 + 20   scroll y offset relative to work area</div> <div>R3 + 24   Wimp window handle of window to open behind</div> <div> <div>-1   means top of stack</div> <div>-2   means bottom of stack</div> <div>-3   means the window behind the Wimp's backwindow</div> </div>
2 (topleft)	<div>R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate</div> <div>R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate</div>

**Changing the DCS dialogue's message**

When a DCS dialogue object is created it has a default message warning the user that he has unsaved data which will be lost if he closes the window.

This can be set and read dynamically using the DCS\_SetMessage and DCS\_GetMessage methods (described on page 97).

**Getting the id of the underlying window for a DCS object**

The window object id of the Window object used to implement the DCS Dialogue can be obtained by using the DCS\_GetWindowID method.

**DCS methods**

The following methods are all invoked by calling SWI Toolbox\_ObjectMiscOp with:

- R0      holding a flags word (which is zero unless otherwise stated)
- R1      being a DCS Dialogue object id
- R2      being the method code which distinguishes this method
- R3-R9   potentially holding method-specific data

**DCS\_GetWindowID 0****On entry**

R0 = flags  
R1 = DCS object id  
R2 = 0

**On exit**

R0 = Window object id for this DCS object

**Use**

This method returns the id of the underlying Window object used to implement this DCS object.

**C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *dcs_get_window_id ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId dcs,
                                           ObjectId *window
                                           );
```



## **DCS\_SetMessage 1**

### **On entry**

R0 = flags

R1 = DCS object id

R2 = 1

R3 = pointer to buffer holding new message (Ctrl-terminated)

### **On exit**

R1-R9 preserved

### **Use**

This method sets the message used in the DCS dialogue's window.

### **C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *dcs_set_message ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId dcs,
                                           const char *message
                                           );
```

## DCS\_GetMessage 2

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = DCS object id  
R2 = 2  
R3 = pointer to buffer to hold message  
R4 = size of buffer to hold message

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required to hold message (if R3 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R3 holds message  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the current message used in a DCS object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *dcs_get_message ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId dcs,
                                         char *buffer,
                                         int buff_size,
                                         int *nbytes
                                         );
```

## **DCS\_SetTitle 3**

### **On entry**

R0 = flags  
R1 = DCS object id  
R2 = 3  
R3 = pointer to text string to use

### **On exit**

R1-R9 preserved

### **Use**

This method sets the text which is to be used in the title bar of the given DCS dialogue.

### **C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *dcs_set_title ( unsigned int flags,  
                                       ObjectId dcs,  
                                       const char *title  
                                       );
```

## DCS\_GetTitle 4

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = DCS object id

R2 = 4

R3 = pointer to buffer to return the text in (or 0)

R4 = size of buffer

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required to hold the text (if R3 was 0)

else Buffer pointed to by R3 contains title text

R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the text string used in a DCS dialogue's title bar.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *dcs_get_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId dcs,
                                         char *buffer,
                                         int buff_size,
                                         int *nbytes
                                         );
```

## DCS events

The DCS module generates the following Toolbox events:

### DCS\_AboutToBeShown (0x82a80)

#### Block

- + 8      0x82a80
- +12     value which will be passed in R0 to Toolbox\_ShowObject  
(i.e. show flags, such as 'Show as menu')
- + 16     value which will be passed in R2 to ToolBox\_ShowObject
- + 20... block which will be passed in R3 to ToolBox\_ShowObject for the  
underlying dialogue box.

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised just before the DCS module is going to show its underlying Window object.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                show_type;
    union
    {
        TopLeft pos;
        WindowShowObjectBlock full;
    } info;
} DCSAboutToBeShownEvent;
```

## DCS\_Discard (0x82a81)

### Block

+ 8      0x82a81

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user clicks on the **Discard** button.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;

} DCSDiscardEvent;
```

## DCS\_Save (0x82a82)

### Block

+ 8      0x82a82

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user clicks on the **Save** Button or presses Return. It is then the client's responsibility to either save the data directly to file, or to display a SaveAs Dialogue object.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;

} DCSSaveEvent;
```

## DCS\_DialogueCompleted (0x82a83)

### Block

+ 8      0x82a83

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised after the DCS object has been hidden, either by a Cancel click, a Save click or a Discard click, or by the user clicking outside the dialogue box (if opened transiently) or pressing Escape. It allows the client to tidy up its own state associated with this dialogue.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;

} DCSDialogueCompletedEvent;
```

## DCS\_Cancel (0x82a84)

### Block

+ 8      0x82a84

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user clicks on the Cancel button or presses the Escape key.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;

} DCSCancelEvent;
```

## DCS templates

The layout of a DCS template is shown below. Fields which have types `MsgReference` and `StringReference` are those which will require relocation when they are loaded from a resource file. If the template is being constructed in memory, then these fields should be real pointers (i.e. they do not require relocation).

For more details on relocation, see appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
title	4	MsgReference
max_title	4	word
message	4	MsgReference
max_message	4	word
window	4	StringReference

### Underlying window template

The window object used to implement a DCS dialogue, has the following characteristics. These must be reproduced if the Window is replaced by a client-specified alternative Window template:

Title bar must be indirected.

#### Gadgets

Component ids are derived by adding to 0x82a800

Component id	Details
0	button gadget
1	action button ( <b>Discard</b> )
2	action button ( <b>Cancel</b> ) must be marked as a 'Cancel' action button
3	action button ( <b>Save</b> ) must be marked as a 'Default' action button



## DCS Wimp event handling

Wimp event	Action
Mouse Click	on <b>Discard</b> button raise DCS_Discard Toolbox event, then a DCS_DialogueCompleted Toolbox event* on <b>Cancel</b> button raise DCS_Cancel Toolbox event, then a DCS_DialogueCompleted Toolbox event* on <b>Save</b> button raise DCS_Save Toolbox event, then a DCS_DialogueCompleted Toolbox event*
Key Pressed	on Return raise DCS_Save Toolbox event, then a DCS_DialogueCompleted Toolbox event* on Escape then act as if Cancel had been clicked.

\* if enabled

Note that if opened transiently, DCS\_DialogueCompleted may be raised without any of DCS\_Cancel, DCS\_Discard or DCS\_Save being raised. This could arise from the user clicking on the backdrop or opening a menu.



---

## 6

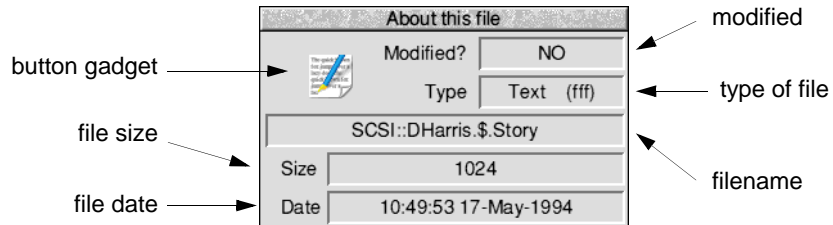
# File Info Dialogue box class

---

**A** File Info dialogue object is used to display information about a file (or a directory or application) in a dialogue box.

### User interface

A File Info dialogue has the following information held in its dialogue box:



- an indication of whether the file is modified (a textual display field with the text 'YES' or 'NO')
- a sprite representing the file type (i.e. a sprite named file\_XXX where XXX is the hex representation of the file type). If the filetype is 0x1000 a directory sprite is used, and if 0x2000 an application sprite is used.
- the type of the file (a textual display field with the textual filetype followed by its hex value in brackets)
- the full pathname of the file or '<untitled>' (a display field)
- the size of the file in bytes (a display field giving the size of the file)
- the date the file was last written to (a textual display field showing the date in '\*time' format).

# Application Program Interface

## Attributes

A File Info object has the following attributes which are specified in its object template and can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attributes	Description	
flags	Bit	Meaning
	0	when set, this bit indicates that a FileInfo_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.
	1	when set, this bit indicates that a FileInfo_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the File Info object has been removed from the screen.
File Info title	alternative title to use instead of 'About this file' (0 means use default title)	
max title length	this gives the maximum length in bytes of title text which will be used for this object	
modified	an indication as to whether the file is to be marked as modified from creation	
filetype	a word giving the RISC OS filetype	
filename	the initial filename to use in the dialogue box (if this field is 0, then the string '<untitled>' is used	
filesize	size of the file in bytes	
date	a 5-byte UTC time	
window	the name of an alternative window template to use instead of the default one (0 means use default)	

## Manipulating a File Info object

### Creating and deleting a File Info object

A File Info object is created using SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject.

When this object is created it has no attached objects (see page 11).

A File Info object is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject.

The setting of the non-recursive delete bit does not have a meaning for File Info objects.

### Showing a File Info object

When a File Info object is displayed on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject it has the following behaviour:

Show type	Position
0 (default)	the underlying window is shown at the last place shown on the screen, or the coordinates given in its template, if it has not already been shown
1 (full spec)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate R3 + 8    visible area maximum x coordinate R3 + 12   visible area maximum y coordinate R3 + 16   scroll x offset relative to work area R3 + 20   scroll y offset relative to work area R3 + 24   Wimp window handle of window to open behind -1    means top of stack -2    means bottom of stack -3    means the window behind the Wimp's backwindow
2 (topleft)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate

### Before the File Info dialogue box is shown

When SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject is called, a FileInfo\_AboutToBeShown Toolbox event is raised, if the appropriate bit is set in the File Info dialogue object's flags word. This enables the client to set any of the dialogue box's fields before it is displayed.

### Setting and reading the fields of the File Info dialogue

All of the display fields in a File Info dialogue can be set and read dynamically at run-time. The sprite displayed in the dialogue box depends on the value of the filetype field.

The methods used to do this are:

```
FileInfo_SetModifiedFileInfo_GetModified
FileInfo_SetFileTypeFileInfo_GetFileType
FileInfo_SetFileNameFileInfo_GetFileName
FileInfo_SetFileSizeFileInfo_GetFileSize
FileInfo_SetDateFileInfo_GetDate
```

## File Info methods

The following methods are all invoked by calling SWI Toolbox\_ObjectMiscOp with:

R0	holding a flags word
R1	being a File Info Dialogue object id
R2	being the method code which distinguishes this method
R3-R9	potentially holding method-specific data

### FileInfo\_GetWindowID 0

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = File Info object id  
R2 = 0

#### On exit

R0 = window object id for this File Info object

#### Use

This method returns the id of the underlying window object used to implement this File Info object.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fileinfo_get_window_id ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId fileinfo,
                                                ObjectId *window
                                                );
```

## FileInfo\_SetModified 1

### On entry

R0 = flags  
 R1 = File Info object id  
 R2 = 1  
 R3 = value

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets whether the file is to be indicated as modified or not. If the value passed in R3 is 0, this indicates that the file is not modified; any other value in R3 means the file is modified.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fileinfo_set_modified ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId fileinfo,
                                              int modified
                                              );
```

## FileInfo\_GetModified 2

### On entry

R0 = flags  
 R1 = File Info object id  
 R2 = 2

### On exit

R0 = modified state (0 ⇒ unmodified, non-0 ⇒ modified)

### Use

This method returns whether the file is indicated as modified or not.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fileinfo_get_modified ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId fileinfo,
                                              int *modified
                                              );
```

### FileInfo\_SetFileType 3

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = File Info object id  
R2 = 3  
R3 = file type

#### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method sets the file type to be indicated in the dialogue box.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fileinfo_set_file_type ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId fileinfo,
                                                int file_type
                                                );
```

### FileInfo\_GetFileType 4

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = File Info object id  
R2 = 4

#### On exit

R0 = file type

#### Use

This method returns the file type shown in the dialogue box.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fileinfo_get_file_type ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId fileinfo,
                                                int *file_type
                                                );
```



## **FileInfo\_SetFileName 5**

### **On entry**

R0 = flags

R1 = File Info object id

R2 = 5

R3 = pointer to buffer holding filename

### **On exit**

R1-R9 preserved

### **Use**

This method sets the filename used in the File Info dialogue's Window. There is a limit of 256 characters on the filename length.

### **C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fileinfo_set_file_name ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId fileinfo,
                                                const char *file_name
                                                );
```

## FileInfo\_GetFileName 6

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = File Info object id  
R2 = 6  
R3 = pointer to buffer to hold filename  
R4 = size of buffer to hold filename

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required to hold filename (if R3 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R3 holds filename  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the current filename used in a File Info object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fileinfo_get_file_name ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId fileinfo,
                                                char *buffer,
                                                int buff_size,
                                                int *nbytes
                                                );
```

## FileInfo\_SetFileSize 7

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = File Info object id  
R2 = 7  
R3 = file size

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the file size to be indicated in the dialogue box.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fileinfo_set_file_size ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId fileinfo,
                                                int file_size
                                                );
```

## FileInfo\_GetFileSize 8

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = File Info object id  
R2 = 8

### On exit

R0 = file size

### Use

This method returns the file size shown in the dialogue box.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fileinfo_get_file_size ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId fileinfo,
                                                int *file_size
                                                );
```

## FileInfo\_SetDate 9

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = File Info object id  
R2 = 9  
R3 = pointer to 5-byte UTC time

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the date string used in the File Info dialogue's window. The Territory Manager is used to convert the UTC time into a time string.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fileinfo_set_date ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId fileinfo,
                                           const int *UTC
                                           );
```

## FileInfo\_GetDate 10

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = File Info object id  
R2 = 10  
R3 = pointer to buffer to hold 5-byte UTC time

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method returns the current UTC time used in a File Info object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fileinfo_get_date ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId fileinfo,
                                           const int *UTC
                                           );
```

**FileInfo\_SetTitle 11****On entry**

R0 = flags  
R1 = File Info object id  
R2 = 11  
R3 = pointer to text string to use

**On exit**

R1-R9 preserved

**Use**

This method sets the text which is to be used in the title bar of the given File Info dialogue.

**C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fileinfo_set_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId fileinfo,
                                             char *title
                                             );
```

## FileInfo\_GetTitle 12

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = File Info object id  
R2 = 12  
R3 = pointer to buffer to return the text in (or 0)  
R4 = size of buffer

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required to hold the text (if R3 was 0)  
else Buffer pointed to by R3 contains title text  
R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the text string used in a File Info dialogue's title bar.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fileinfo_get_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId fileinfo,
                                             char *buffer,
                                             int buff_size,
                                             int *nbytes
                                             );
```

## File Info events

The File Info module generates the following Toolbox events:

### **FileInfo\_AboutToBeShown (0x82ac0)**

#### **Block**

- + 8      0x82ac0
- + 12     flags (as passed in to Toolbox\_ShowObject
- + 16     value which will be passed in R2 to ToolBox\_ShowObject
- + 20...  block which will be passed in R3 to ToolBox\_ShowObject for the  
         underlying dialogue box

#### **Use**

This Toolbox event is raised just before the File Info module is going to show its underlying Window object.

#### **C data type**

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                show_type;
    union
    {
        TopLeft          pos;
        WindowShowObjectBlock full;
    } info;
} FileInfoAboutToBeShownEvent;
```

## FileInfo\_DialogueCompleted (0x82ac1)

### Block

+ 8      0x82ac1  
+ 12      flags  
          (none yet defined)

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised after the File Info object has been hidden, either by the user clicking outside the dialogue box or pressing Escape. It allows the client to tidy up its own state associated with this dialogue.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
} FileInfoDialogueCompletedEvent;
```

## File Info templates

The layout of a File Info template is shown below. Fields which have types `MsgReference` and `StringReference` are those which will require relocation when they are loaded from a resource file. If the template is being constructed in memory, then these fields should be real pointers (i.e. they do not require relocation).

For more details on relocation, see appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
title	4	MsgReference
modified	4	word
filetype	4	word
filename	4	MsgReference
filesize	4	word
date	8	2 words
window	4	StringReference



### Underlying window template

The window object used to implement a File Info dialogue has the following characteristics. These must be reproduced if the Window is replaced by a client-specified alternative Window template:

Title bar must be indirected.

### Gadgets

Component ids are derived by adding to 0x82ac00.

Component id	Details
0	Display Field (date)
1	Display Field (size in bytes)
2	Display Field (filename)
3	Display Field (filetype)
4	Display Field (modified field)
5	Button gadget (indirected sprite used to display icon for file type)
6	Label (date)
7	Label (size)
8	Label (modified)
9	Label (type)

### File Info Wimp event handling

Wimp event	Action
Open Window	Request show the dialogue box
Key Click	if Escape, then cancel this dialogue.
User Message	Window_HasBeenHidden hide the dialogue box



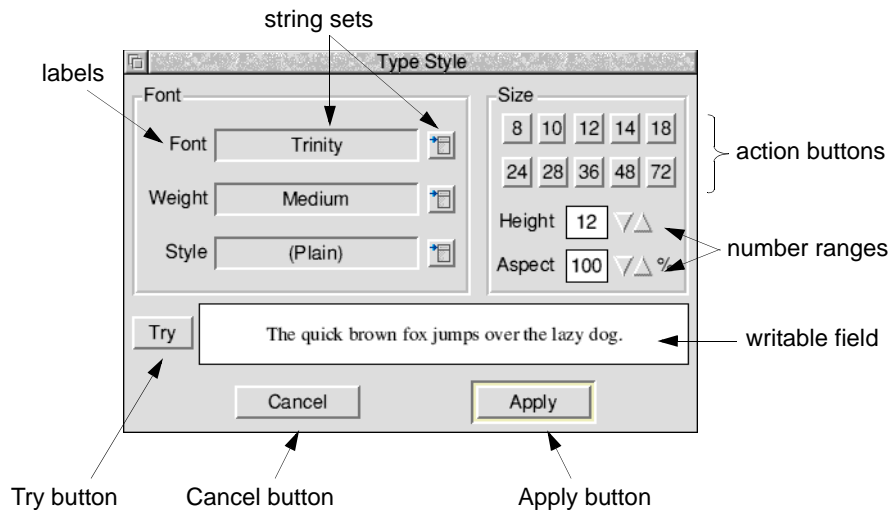
# 7

## Font Dialogue box class

**A** Font Dialogue box shows font, weight and style of the currently selected font, together with a chosen height and aspect ratio. The dialogue box also has a writable field in which a test string in the chosen font is displayed.

### User interface

The Font Dialogue box can be broken down into the following components:



- A boxed area for setting the font, which contains three labels giving the font's name, weight and style; with three accompanying string sets (each string set contains a display field and a pop-up menu, which gives viable values for these fields, based on the list of currently available fonts). The pop-up menus are built and processed by the Toolbox, and do not require (or allow) any client intervention. The Toolbox deals with ensuring that only valid font id's are available to be chosen.
- Another boxed area, in which the user can set the height and aspect ratio used to plot the selected font. There are a number of standard sizes which can be chosen by clicking action buttons, and a number range into which a non-standard size can be entered. The aspect ratio used is specified by the contents of another number range.

- At the bottom of the dialogue box, there is a writable field which by default contains the string, 'The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog'. When the user clicks on the **Try** button, this string is rendered in the selected font (and height and aspect ratio). The try string is limited to 64 characters long.
- The user can cancel the dialogue by clicking on the **Cancel** action button, or can apply the font selection by clicking on **Apply**.

Note that the strings which appear in the font, weight and style display fields may be localised for the current territory, but the strings used to communicate font selections between the client and the Toolbox are always the 'real' font id of the font (e.g. Corpus.Bold.Oblique).

## Application Program Interface

### Attributes

A Font Dialogue object has the following attributes which are specified in its object template and can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attributes	Description	
	Bit	Meaning
flags word	0	when set, this bit indicates that a FontDbox_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.
	1	when set, this bit indicates that a FontDbox_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the Font Dialogue object has been removed from the screen.
	2	when set, include a <b>System font</b> entry in the list of fonts.
title	an alternative title for the dialogue box instead of 'Type style' (0 means use default title)	
max title length	the maximum length in bytes of title text which will be used for this object	
initial font	the font id to be displayed in the dialogue box as the selected font, on creation. If 0, the default is to display the first font in the list of currently available fonts.	
initial height	the initial height value when the dialogue box is created	
initial aspect	the initial aspect ratio value when the dialogue box is created	

Attributes	Description
try string	an alternative string to use in the <b>Try</b> writable field, instead of 'The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog'
window	an alternative window template to use instead of the default one.

## Manipulating a Font Dialogue object

### Creating and deleting a Font Dialogue object

A Font Dialogue object is created using SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject.

When this object is created it has no attached objects (see page 11).

A Font Dialogue object is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject.

The setting of the non-recursive delete bit does not have a meaning for Font Dialogue objects.

### Showing a Font Dialogue object

When a Font Dialogue object is displayed on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject it has the following behaviour:

Show type	Position
0 (default)	the underlying window is shown at the last place shown on the screen, or the coordinates given in its template, if it has not already been shown
1 (full spec)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate R3 + 8    visible area maximum x coordinate R3 + 12   visible area maximum y coordinate R3 + 16   scroll x offset relative to work area R3 + 20   scroll y offset relative to work area R3 + 24   Wimp window handle of window to open behind -1    means top of stack -2    means bottom of stack -3    means the window behind the Wimp's backwindow
2 (topleft)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate

### Before the Font Dialogue box is shown

When the client calls `Toolbox_ShowObject`, a `FontDbox_AboutToBeShown` Toolbox event is raised (if the appropriate flags bit is set), allowing the client to take any last minute action. Typically, a client will indicate which of the fonts should be shown as the currently selected one, when it receives this event.

### Setting and getting the current selection

The currently selected font id can be set and read at run-time using the `FontDbox_SetFont` and `FontDbox_GetFont` methods. These use a font id which assumes a `<name>.<weight>.<style>` structure (i.e. the first component appears in the **Font** field, the second in the **Weight** field, and the third in the **Style** field).

The size (both height and aspect ratio components) are set and read using the `FontDbox_SetSize`/`FontDbox_GetSize` methods respectively.

The **Try** string can be set and read using the `FontDbox_SetTryString` and `FontDbox_GetTryString` methods.

### Receiving a font selection

When the user clicks the **Apply** button (or presses the Return key when the Font Dialogue box has the input focus), the client application is sent a `FontDbox_ApplyFont` Toolbox event. This event gives the font id of the currently selected font.

### Completing a Font Dialogue

When the dialogue box is closed, either because **Apply** or **Cancel** has been clicked, or Escape has been pressed, a `FontDbox_DialogueCompleted` Toolbox event is raised for the client, with an indication of whether a font was selected during the dialogue.

## Font Dialogue methods

The following methods are all invoked by calling SWI Toolbox\_MiscOp with:

- R0      holding a flags word
- R1      being a Font Dialogue Box id
- R2      being the method code which distinguishes this method
- R3-R9   potentially holding method-specific data

### FontDbox\_GetWindowID 0

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = FontDbox object id  
R2 = 0

#### On exit

R0 = Window object id for this FontDbox object

#### Use

This method returns the id of the underlying Window object used to implement this FontDbox object.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fontdbox_get_window_id( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId fontdbox,
                                                ObjectId *window
                                                );
```

## FontDbox\_SetFont 1

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Font Dbox object id

R2 = 1

R3 = pointer to font id of font to select (0 means none)

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method selects a font as being the currently selected one for this Font Dialogue box, and displays its name appropriately in the **Font/Weight/Style** display fields.

The special font id 'SystemFont' is used to indicate that the **System** entry should be selected.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fontdbox_set_font ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId fontdbox,
                                           const char *font_id
                                           );
```



## FontDbox\_GetFont 2

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Font Dbox object id  
R2 = 2  
R3 = pointer to buffer to hold font id  
R4 = buffer size for font id

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required (if R3 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R3 holds font id  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the font id for the font which was last specified in a FontDbox\_SetFont call, or was last chosen by a user choice from a pop-up menu.

The special font id 'SystemFont' is used to indicate that the **System** entry is selected.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fontdbox_get_font ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId fontdbox,
                                           char *buffer,
                                           int buff_size,
                                           int *nbytes
                                           );
```

## FontDbox\_SetSize 3

### On entry

R0 = flags  
    bit 0 set means change the height value  
    bit 1 set means change the aspect ratio  
R1 = Font Dbox object id  
R2 = 3  
R3 = height value  
R4 = aspect ratio value

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the height value and/or the aspect ratio displayed in the Font Dialogue box.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fontdbox_set_size ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId fontdbox,
                                             int height,
                                             int aspect_ratio
                                             );
```

## FontDbox\_GetSize 4

### On entry

R0 = flags  
 R1 = Font Dbox object id  
 R2 = 4

### On exit

R0 = height value  
 R1 = aspect ratio

### Use

This method returns the height value and/or aspect ratio currently displayed in the Font Dialogue box.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fontdbox_get_size ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId fontdbox,
                                           int *height,
                                           int *aspect_ratio
                                           );
```

## FontDbox\_SetTryString 5

### On entry

R0 = flags  
 R1 = Font Dbox object id  
 R2 = 5  
 R3 = pointer to 'try' string to use

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the string used in the **Try** writable field of a Font Dialogue box. If the string is longer than 64 characters, an error is returned.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fontdbox_set_try_string ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectId fontdbox,
                                                  const char *try_string
                                                  );
```

## FontDbox\_GetTryString 6

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Font Dbox object id  
R2 = 6  
R3 = pointer to buffer to hold try string  
R4 = buffer size for try string

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required (if R3 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R3 holds try string  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the string currently displayed in the **Try** writable field of the Font Dialogue box.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fontdbox_get_try_string ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectId fontdbox,
                                                  char *buffer,
                                                  int buff_size,
                                                  int *nbytes
                                                  );
```

## FontDbox\_SetTitle 7

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Font Dbox object id  
R2 = 7  
R3 = pointer to text string to use

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the text which is to be used in the title bar of the given Font dialogue box.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fontdbox_set_title ( unsigned int flags,  
                                             ObjectId fontdbox,  
                                             const char *title  
                                             );
```

## FontDbox\_GetTitle 8

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Font Dbox object id  
R2 = 8  
R3 = pointer to buffer to return the text in (or 0)  
R4 = size of buffer

### On exit

R4 = the size of buffer required to hold the text (if R3 was 0)  
    else Buffer pointed to by R3 contains title text  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the text string used in a Font dialogue's title bar.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fontdbx_get_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId fontdbx,
                                           char *buffer,
                                           int buff_size,
                                           int *nbytes
                                           );
```

## Font Dialogue events

There are a number of Toolbox events which are generated by the Font Dialogue box module.

### FontDbox\_AboutToBeShown (0x82a00)

#### Block

- + 8      0x82a00
- + 12     flags (as passed in to Toolbox\_ShowObject)
- + 16     value which will be passed in R2 to ToolBox\_ShowObject
- + 20...  block which will be passed in R3 to ToolBox\_ShowObject for the  
         underlying dialogue box

#### Use

This Toolbox Event is raised when SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject has been called for a Font Dialogue Box object. It gives the application the opportunity to set the selected font before the dialogue box actually appears on the screen.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                show_type;
    union
    {
        TopLeft          pos;
        WindowShowObjectBlock full;
    } info;
} FontDboxAboutToBeShownEvent;
```

## FontDbox\_DialogueCompleted (0x82a01)

### Block

+ 8      0x82a01  
+ 12     flags

### Use

This Toolbox Event is raised after the Font Dialogue object has been hidden, either by a Cancel click, or by a click on **Apply**. It allows the client to tidy up its own state associated with this dialogue.

Note that if the dialogue was cancelled, a font selection may still have been made, for example if the user clicked Adjust on **Apply**, and then cancelled the dialogue.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
} FontDboxDialogueCompletedEvent;
```

## FontDbox\_ApplyFont (0x82a02)

### Block

+ 8      0x82a02  
+ 16     font height  
+ 20     aspect ratio  
+ 24...  font id

### Use

This Toolbox Event informs the client that a Font Dialogue box selection has been made.

The special font id SystemFont is used to indicate that the **System** entry is selected.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    unsigned int        height;
    unsigned int        aspect;
    char                font[208];
} FontDboxApplyFontEvent;
```



## Font Dialogue Templates

The layout of a Font Dialogue box template is shown below. Fields which have types `MsgReference` and `StringReference` are those which will require relocation when they are loaded from a resource file. If the template is being constructed in memory, then these fields should be real pointers (i.e. they do not require relocation).

For more details on relocation, see appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
title	4	MsgReference
max_title	4	word
initial_font	4	StringReference
initial_height	4	word
initial_aspect	4	word
try_string	4	MsgReference
window	4	StringReference

## Underlying Window template

The Window object used to implement a Font Dialogue has the following characteristics. These must be reproduced if the Window is replaced by a client-specified alternative Window template:

Title bar must be indirected.

### Gadgets

Component ids are derived by adding to 0x82a000

Component id	Details	
0	action button ( <b>Apply</b> )	must be marked as the 'default' action button
1	action button ( <b>Cancel</b> )	must be marked as the 'cancel' action button
2	action button ( <b>Try</b> )	must be marked as a 'local' action button
3	writable field ( <b>Try</b> string)	buffer must be 64 bytes
4	number range ( <b>Aspect</b> ratio)	

Component id	Details	
5	number range	
6-15	action buttons (Standard sizes)	these should all be local action buttons containing the text 8, 10 12, 14, 18, 24, 28, 36, 48 72 respectively.
16	string set ( <b>Style</b> )	non-writable, with pop-up menu
17	string set ( <b>Weight</b> )	non-writable, with pop-up menu
18	string set ( <b>Font</b> )	non-writable, with pop-up menu
19	label box ( <b>Font</b> )	
20	label box ( <b>Style</b> )	
21	label ( <b>Height</b> )	
22	label ( <b>Aspect</b> )	
23	label (%)	
24	label ( <b>Font</b> )	
25	label ( <b>Weight</b> )	
26	label ( <b>Style</b> )	

## Font Dialogue Wimp event handling

The Font Dialogue box class responds to certain Wimp events and takes the actions as described below:

<b>Wimp event</b>	<b>Action</b>
Mouse Click	on <b>Apply</b> , deliver a FontDbox_ApplyFont event on <b>Cancel</b> , deliver a FontDbox_DialogueCompleted event on one of the pop-up menu buttons, a menu is displayed on one of the 'standard sizes', this size is entered into the <b>Height</b> writable field on one of the arrow keys, increment/decrement the value of its associated writable field (either height or aspect ratio)
Key Pressed	if Return then act as if <b>Apply</b> button had been clicked if Escape, then act as if <b>Cancel</b> button had been clicked



---

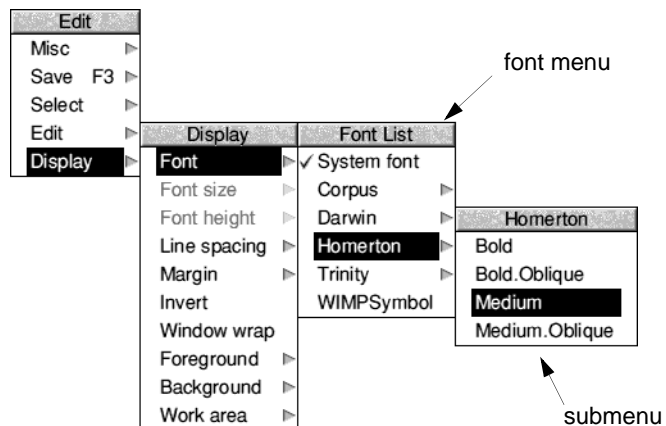
## 8 Font Menu class

---

**A** Font Menu is a menu which shows the currently selected font, and allows the user to set this from a list of font names, and submenus which give styles and weights.

### User interface

A typical Font Menu might look as follows:



When a hit is received for the Font Menu, it is decoded by the Font Menu module, and a Toolbox event is returned to the client. This contains the font id of the selected font (see SWI Font\_DecodeMenu). The chosen font is shown as ticked in the font menu when the menu is next shown (or immediately if Adjust is held down).

# Application Program Interface

The RISC OS Font manager provides a facility of building a font menu from the current fontlist.

A Font Menu object is an abstraction on this facility. A Font Menu is built for the client using the Font manager.

## Attributes

A Font Menu object has the following attributes which are specified in its object template and can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attributes	Description	
	Bit	Meaning
flags word	0	when set, this bit indicates that a FontMenu_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object
	1	when set, this bit indicates that a FontMenu_HasBeenHidden event should be raised when the Font Menu object has been removed from the screen
	2	when set, include a <b>System font</b> entry at head of menu
ticked_font		font id of the font to tick in the Font Menu when it is first created  The special font id 'SystemFont' is used to indicate that the <b>System</b> entry should be ticked.

## Manipulating a Font Menu object

### Creating and deleting a Font Menu object

A Font Menu object is created using SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject.

When this object is created it has no attached objects (see page 11).

A Font Menu object is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject.

The setting of the non-recursive delete bit does not have a meaning for Font Menu objects.

### Showing a Font Menu object

When a Font Menu object is displayed on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject it has the following behaviour:

Show type	Position
0 (default)	64 OS units to the left of the mouse pointer
1 (full spec)	R3 + 0 gives x coordinate of top-left corner of Menu R3 + 4 gives y coordinate of top-left corner of Menu
2 (topleft)	R3 + 0 gives x coordinate of top-left corner of Menu R3 + 4 gives y coordinate of top-left corner of Menu

### Before the Font Menu is shown

When the client calls Toolbox\_ShowObject, a FontMenu\_AboutToBeShown Toolbox event is raised (if the appropriate flags bit is set), allowing the client to take any last minute action. Typically, a client will indicate which of the fonts should be shown as the currently selected one, when it receives this event.

### Selecting a font

The currently selected font is shown ticked in the Font Menu. The selected font can be set using FontMenu\_SetFont, and can be read using FontMenu\_GetFont. Note that the string passed to these methods is the font id, not the translated string.

### Receiving a font selection

When the user makes a Font selection from the Font Menu, a FontMenu\_FontSelection Toolbox event is raised. This gives the font id of the font which has been chosen from the Font Menu.

## Font Menu methods

The following methods are all invoked by calling SWI Toolbox\_MiscOp with:

R0	holding a flags word
R1	being a Font Menu id
R2	being the method code which distinguishes this method
R3-R9	potentially holding method-specific data

### FontMenu\_SetFont 0

#### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Font Menu object id

R2 = 0

R3 = pointer to font id of font to select (0 means none)

#### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method selects a font as being the currently selected one for this Font Menu, and places a tick next to it. The special font id 'SystemFont' is used to indicate that the **System** entry should be ticked.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fontmenu_set_font ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId fontmenu,
                                             const char *font_id
                                             );
```



## FontMenu\_GetFont 1

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Font Menu object id  
R2 = 1  
R3 = pointer to buffer to hold font id  
R4 = buffer size for font id

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required (if R3 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R3 holds font id  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the font id for the font which was last specified in a FontMenu\_SetFont call, or was last chosen by a user mouse click (i.e. the one which is ticked). The special font id 'SystemFont' is used to indicate that the **System** entry was last chosen.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *fontmenu_get_font ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId fontmenu,
                                             char *buffer,
                                             int buff_size,
                                             int *nbytes
                                             );
```

## Font Menu events

There are a number of Toolbox events which are generated by the Font Menu module:

### FontMenu\_AboutToBeShown (0x82a40)

#### Block

+ 8      0x82a40  
+ 12    flags (as passed in to Toolbox\_ShowObject)  
+ 16    value which will be passed in R2 to ToolBox\_ShowObject  
+ 20... block which will be passed in R3 to ToolBox\_ShowObject for the  
         underlying Menu Object

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject has been called for a Font Menu object. It gives the application the opportunity to set the selected font before the Menu actually appears on the screen.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                show_type;
    TopLeft            pos;
} FontMenuAboutToBeShownEvent;
```

### FontMenu\_HasBeenHidden (0x82a41)

#### Block

+ 8      0x82a41

#### Use

This Toolbox Event is raised by the Toolbox when Toolbox\_HideObject is called on a Font Menu which has the appropriate bit set in its template flags word. It enables a client application to clear up after a menu has been closed. It is also raised when clicking outside a menu or hitting Escape.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
} FontMenuHasBeenHiddenEvent;
```

## FontMenu\_FontSelection (0x82a42)

### Block

+ 8      0x82a42  
+ 16... font id

### Use

This Toolbox Event informs the client that a Font Menu selection has been made.

The special font id 'SystemFont' is used to indicate that the **System** entry was last chosen.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    char                font_id[216];
} FontMenuSelectionEvent;
```

## Font Menu templates

The layout of a Font Menu template is shown below. Fields which have types `MsgReference` and `StringReference` are those which will require relocation when they are loaded from a resource file. If the template is being constructed in memory, then these fields should be real pointers (i.e. they do not require relocation).

For more details on relocation, see appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
ticked_font	4	StringReference

## Font Menu Wimp event handling

The Font Menu class responds to certain Wimp events and takes the actions as described below:

Wimp event	Action
Menu Selection	The font id corresponding to the menu selection is sent back to the client via a FontMenu_FontSelection event. If Adjust is held down, then the currently open Menu is re-opened in the same place.
User Msg	Message_HelpRequest (while the pointer is over a Font Menu object) A reply is sent on the application's behalf.

---

## 9

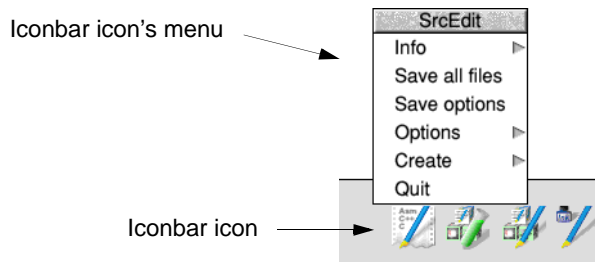
# Iconbar icon class

---

Objects of the Iconbar icon class are used to display an application icon on the Iconbar.

### User interface

An Iconbar object is normally used to show that an application is running, by placing an icon on the RISC OS Iconbar.



An Iconbar object can either be a sprite icon or a text&sprite icon. It does not appear on the Iconbar until the application has called `Toolbox_ShowObject` or if the auto-show bit has been set in its flags word. When the Toolbox places the icon on the Iconbar, it positions the icon in a Style Guide compliant manner, including placement of the text in a text&sprite icon. The bounding box used for the icon is taken from the sprite used for that icon, also taking into consideration the text used, if the iconbar object is text&sprite. If the application supports many icons on the Iconbar this can be achieved by creating many Iconbar objects.

The Toolbox supports handling of a Menu click over the icon, Select and Adjust clicks.

# Application Program Interface

## Attributes

An Iconbar icon object has the following attributes which are specified in its object template and can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attributes	Description	
flags	Bit	Meaning
	0	when set, generate an Iconbar_SelectAboutToBeShown event before the object which has been associated with a Select click is shown
	1	when set, generate an Iconbar_AdjustAboutToBeShown event before the object which has been associated with an Adjust click is shown
	2	when set, show the select_show object as a transient (i.e. with the semantics of Wimp_CreateMenu)
	3	when set, show the adjust_show object as a transient (i.e. with the semantics of Wimp_CreateMenu)
	4	reserved
	5	when set, generate an Iconbar_Clicked (or client-specified) event when Select is clicked
	6	when set, generate an Iconbar_Clicked (or client-specified) event when Adjust is clicked
	7	when set, show the select_show object centred on screen when Select is clicked
	8	when set, show the select_show object centred on screen when Adjust is clicked
	9	when set, show the select_show object at the pointer when Select is clicked
	10	when set, show the select_show object at the pointer when Adjust is clicked
position	a negative integer giving the position of the icon on the Iconbar (as specified in SWI Wimp_CreateIcon)	
priority	gives priority of this icon on the Iconbar (as specified in SWI Wimp_CreateIcon)	
sprite name	the name of the sprite to use for this Iconbar icon	

Attributes	Description
max sprite name	the maximum length of sprite name to be used
text	an optional string which will be used for a Text&Sprite Iconbar icon (i.e. the text that will appear underneath the icon on the Iconbar)
max text length	if the Iconbar icon has text, then this is a Text&Sprite Iconbar icon, and this field gives the maximum length of a text string which will be used for it
menu	the name of the template to use to create a Menu object for this Iconbar icon
select event	the Toolbox Event code to be raised when the user clicks Select on the Iconbar icon (if 0 then Iconbar_Clicked is raised)
adjust event	the Toolbox event code to be raised when the user clicks Adjust on the Iconbar icon (if 0 then Iconbar_Clicked is raised)
select show	the name of a template to use to show an object when the user clicks Select on the Iconbar icon
adjust show	the name of a template to use to show an object when the user clicks Adjust on the Iconbar icon
help message	the message to respond to a help request with, instead of the default
max help	the maximum length of help message to be used

## Manipulating an Iconbar icon object

### Creating and deleting an Iconbar icon object

An Iconbar icon object is created using SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject.

When an Iconbar Icon Object is created, the following attached objects (see page 11) will be created (if specified):

- menu
- select show
- adjust show.

See the attributes table above for an explanation of what these objects are.

An Iconbar object is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject. If it has any attached objects (see above), these are also deleted, unless the non-recursive bit is set for this SWI.

### Showing an Iconbar icon object

When a Iconbar icon object is displayed on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject it has the following behaviour:

Show type	Position
0 (default)	display on the Iconbar in a place specified by the object's template's position and priority fields.
1 (full spec)	R3 + 0 icon handle of icon to show icon to the left (-3) or right (-4) of its position.

If the Iconbar icon's position is any other value than -3 or -4, then R3 should just be 0.

An Iconbar icon is hidden by using SWI Toolbox\_HideObject.

### The Iconbar icon's position and priority

An Iconbar icon is created with a position and a priority. These are integer values as specified in SWI Wimp\_Createlcon. Note that these values are fixed at create-time, but are only used when the Iconbar icon is 'shown', either by explicitly calling Toolbox\_ShowObject, or by setting the auto-show bit in the object template's flags.

The semantics of position and priority are as documented in Wimp\_Createlcon. Applications will mostly just use a position of -1 for the right of the iconbar.

Note that positions of -3 and -4 cannot be used in conjunction with the auto-show bit. Such an Iconbar icon must be explicitly shown using Toolbox\_ShowObject to allow the client to pass the Wimp handle of the icon to whose left/right this icon should be placed.

An Iconbar icon's position and priority cannot be changed at run-time.

### The Iconbar icon's menu

Each Iconbar object can optionally have attached to it a Menu object. The Iconbar object holds the object id of this Menu object.

Whenever the user of the application presses the Menu mouse button over an Iconbar icon, the Iconbar class module opens its attached Menu object, by making a SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject passing the attached Menu's id.

If the application wishes to perform some operations on the Menu before it is opened (ticking some entries for example), then by setting the appropriate bit in the Menu's flags word, the application can request that a special Toolbox event (Menu\_AboutToBeShown) is delivered to it before the Menu is actually shown. The



precise details of this Toolbox event are described on page 201. On receipt of such a Toolbox event, the client application is expected to make any changes it wants to the Menu object, and then return to its SWI Wimp\_Poll loop.

When an Iconbar icon is created, if the client has specified the name of a Menu template for that Iconbar icon, then a Menu object is created from that template, and the id of that Menu is held in the Iconbar object. This id will be used to show the Menu when the user presses the Menu button over the Iconbar icon.

In most cases a Menu is attached to the Iconbar icon at resource editing time by entering the name of the template to use for this Iconbar icon's Menu. If the application wishes to dynamically attach and detach the Menu for a given Iconbar icon, then this can be done using the Iconbar\_SetMenu method described on page 155.

The id of the Menu attached to an Iconbar icon can be read by using the Iconbar\_GetMenu method.

### **Select and Adjust click events**

The client application can specify a Toolbox event to be raised when the user clicks Select and/or one to be raised when the user clicks Adjust on the Iconbar icon.

This event will only be raised if the appropriate flags bits have been set for Select and Adjust clicks.

Normally this is specified in the application's resource file, but it can be set and read using the Iconbar\_SetEvent/Iconbar\_GetEvent methods.

### **Help messages**

Each Iconbar object can optionally have attached to it a Help Message.

Whenever the Wimp delivers a HelpRequest message to the client application for this Iconbar icon, the attached Help Message is sent back automatically by the Toolbox.

In most cases a help message is attached to the Iconbar object at resource editing time. An Iconbar icon's Help Message can be set dynamically using the Iconbar\_SetHelpMessage method described on page 160.

The text of the Help Message can be read using the Iconbar\_GetHelpMessage method.

## Iconbar icon methods

The following methods are all invoked by calling SWI Toolbox\_ObjectMiscOp with:

R0	holding a flags word
R1	being an Iconbar object id
R2	being the method code which distinguishes this method
R3-R9	potentially holding method-specific data

### Iconbar\_GetIconHandle 0

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Iconbar object id  
R2 = 0

#### On exit

R0 = Wimp icon handle for this Iconbar object

#### Use

This method returns the handle of the underlying Wimp icon used to implement this Iconbar object.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *iconbar_get_icon_handle ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectId iconbar,
                                                  int *icon_handle
                                                  );
```

## Iconbar\_SetMenu 1

### On entry

R0 = flags  
 R1 = Iconbar object id  
 R2 = 1  
 R3 = menu id

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to set the menu which will be displayed when the Menu button is pressed over this Iconbar object. The Toolbox handles opening the menu for you.

If R3 is 0, then the menu for this Iconbar object is detached.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *iconbar_set_menu ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId iconbar,
                                           ObjectId menu_id
                                           );
```

## Iconbar\_GetMenu 2

### On entry

R0 = flags  
 R1 = Iconbar object id  
 R2 = 2

### On exit

R0 = Menu id

### Use

This method is used to get the id of the menu which will be displayed when the Menu button is pressed over this Iconbar object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *iconbar_get_menu ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId iconbar,
                                           ObjectId *menu_id
                                           );
```

### Iconbar\_SetEvent 3

#### On entry

R0 = flags

bit 0 set means raise the event code specified in R3 when Select is clicked

bit 1 set means raise the event code specified in R4 when Adjust is clicked

R1 = Iconbar object id

R2 = 3

R3 = Toolbox Event code to raise for Select

R4 = Toolbox Event code to raise for Adjust

#### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method specifies a Toolbox event to be raised when the user clicks Select and/or Adjust on the Iconbar icon.

If R3 or R4 is 0, then an IconBar\_Clicked Toolbox event will be raised instead.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *iconbar_set_event ( unsigned int flags,
                                           Objectid iconbar,
                                           int select_event,
                                           int adjust_event
                                           );
```

## Iconbar\_GetEvent 4

### On entry

R0 = flags

bit 0 set means return the event code which will be raised  
when Select is clicked

bit 1 set means return the event code which will be raised  
when Adjust is clicked

R1 = Iconbar object id

R2 = 4

### On exit

R0 = Toolbox event code raised when Select is clicked on the Iconbar icon

R1 = Toolbox event code raised when Adjust is clicked on the Iconbar icon

### Use

This method reads the Toolbox Event to be raised when the user clicks Select or Adjust on the Iconbar icon.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *iconbar_get_event ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId iconbar,
                                           int *select_event,
                                           int *adjust_event
                                           );
```

## Iconbar\_SetShow 5

### On entry

R0 = flags

bit 0 set means show the object whose id is given in R3  
when Select is clicked

bit 1 set means show the object whose id is given in R4  
when Adjust is clicked

R1 = Iconbar object id

R2 = 5

R3 = id of object to show for Select

R4 = id of object to show for Adjust

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method specifies an object to be shown when the user clicks Select and/or Adjust on the Iconbar icon.

If R3 or R4 is 0, then no object will be shown.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *iconbar_set_show ( unsigned int flags,
                                           Objectid iconbar,
                                           Objectid select,
                                           Objectid adjust
                                           );
```

## Iconbar\_GetShow 6

### On entry

R0 = flags

bit 0 set means return the id of the object which will be shown when Select is clicked

bit 1 set means return the id of the object which will be shown when Adjust is clicked

R1 = Iconbar object id

R2 = 6

### On exit

R0 = id of object which will be shown when Select is clicked on the Iconbar icon.

R1 = id of object which will be shown when Adjust is clicked on the Iconbar icon

### Use

This method reads the ids of the objects to be shown when the user clicks Select or Adjust on the Iconbar icon.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *iconbar_get_show ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId iconbar,
                                           ObjectId *select,
                                           ObjectId *adjust
                                           );
```

## Iconbar\_SetHelpMessage 7

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Iconbar object id  
R2 = 7  
R3 = pointer to message text

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to set the help message which will be returned when a Help Request message is received for this Iconbar object. The Toolbox handles the reply message for you.

If R3 is 0, then the Help Message for this Iconbar object is detached.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *iconbar_set_help_message ( unsigned int flags,  
                                                  ObjectId iconbar,  
                                                  const char *message_text  
                                                  );
```



## Iconbar\_GetHelpMessage 8

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Iconbar object id  
R2 = 8  
R3 = pointer to buffer (or 0)  
R4 = size of buffer to hold message text

### On exit

R4 = holds size of buffer required for message text (if R3 was 0)  
    else Buffer pointed at by R3 holds message text  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method is used to read the help message which will be returned when a Help Request message is received for this Iconbar object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *iconbar_get_help_message ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectId iconbar,
                                                  char *buffer,
                                                  int buff_size,
                                                  int *nbytes
                                                  );
```

## Iconbar\_SetText 9

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Iconbar object id  
R2 = 9  
R3 = pointer to text string to use

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the text which is to be used in a text&sprite Iconbar object. If the text is longer than the maximum size specified when the Iconbar icon was created, then an error is returned.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *iconbar_set_text ( unsigned int flags,  
                                           ObjectId iconbar,  
                                           const char *text  
                                           );
```

## Iconbar\_GetText 10

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Iconbar object id  
R2 = 10  
R3 = pointer to buffer to return the text in (or 0)  
R4 = size of buffer

### On exit

R4 = the size of buffer required to hold the text (if R3 was 0)  
    else Buffer pointed to by R3 contains icon's text  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method is used for a text&sprite Iconbar object. It returns the text string displayed for that object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *iconbar_get_text ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId iconbar,
                                           char *buffer,
                                           int buff_size,
                                           int *nbytes
                                           );
```

## Iconbar\_SetSprite 11

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Iconbar object id  
R2 = 11  
R3 = pointer to name of sprite to use

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the sprite which is to be used in the Iconbar object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *iconbar_set_sprite ( unsigned int flags,  
                                             ObjectId iconbar,  
                                             const char *sprite_name  
                                             );
```

## Iconbar\_GetSprite 12

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Iconbar object id

R2 = 12

R3 = pointer to buffer to return the sprite name in (or 0)

R4 = size of buffer

### On exit

R4 = holds size of buffer required for sprite name (if R3 was 0)  
else Buffer pointed at by R3 holds sprite name

R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the name of the sprite used for the Iconbar object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *iconbar_get_sprite ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId iconbar,
                                             char *buffer,
                                             int buff_len,
                                             int *nbytes
                                           );
```

## Iconbar icon events

### Iconbar\_Clicked (0x82900)

#### Block

+ 8      0x82900  
+ 12     flags  
         bits 0, 1 and 2 show how the activation was done:  
         bit 0 set means Adjust was clicked  
         bit 1 reserved  
         bit 2 set means Select was clicked

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user clicks Select or Adjust on an Iconbar object, and the client application has not associated any other Toolbox event with this event.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
} IconbarClickedEvent;
```

### Iconbar\_SelectAboutToBeShown (0x82901)

#### Block

+ 8      0x82901  
+ 16     object id of the object which will be shown  
         (note that the 'self' field in the id block will be for the Iconbar object).

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised just before Toolbox\_ShowObject is called for the object to be shown on a Select click. Note that on receipt of this event, the client could call Iconbar\_SetShow to give the object id of a different object to be shown.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    ObjectId           id;
} IconbarAboutToBeShownEvent;
```

## Iconbar\_AdjustAboutToBeShown (0x82902)

### Block

+ 8      0x82902  
 + 16     object id of the object which will be shown  
 (note that the 'self' field in the id block will be for the Iconbar object).

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised just before Toolbox\_ShowObject is called for the object to be shown on a Adjust click. Note that on receipt of this event, the client could call Iconbar\_SetShow to give the object id of a different object to be shown.

Note: This event and the Iconbar\_SelectAboutToBeShown event both share the same typedef.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    ObjectId            id;
} IconbarAboutToBeShownEvent;
```

## Iconbar icon templates

The layout of an Iconbar icon template is shown below. Fields which have types MsgReference and StringReference are those which will require relocation when they are loaded from a resource file. If the template is being constructed in memory, then these fields should be real pointers (i.e. they do not require relocation).

For more details on relocation, see appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
position	4	word
priority	4	word
sprite_name	4	StringReference
max_sprite_name	4	word
text	4	MsgReference
max_text_len	4	word
menu	4	StringReference
select_event	4	word

Field	Size in bytes	Type
adjust_event	4	word
select_show	4	StringReference
adjust_show	4	StringReference
help_message	4	MsgReference
max_help	4	word

### Iconbar icon Wimp event handling

Certain Wimp events for an Iconbar icon are fielded by the Iconbar class, and either acted upon for the client, or result in a Toolbox event being raised. Such events are listed below:

Wimp event	Action
Mouse Click	<p>If the Menu button has been pressed, and there is a Menu object attached to this Iconbar icon, then the Menu is shown using Toolbox_ShowObject.</p> <p>If the Select or Adjust buttons have been pressed and this Iconbar icon has a Toolbox event associated with this, then that Toolbox event is raised, and any attached object is also shown using Toolbox_ShowObject.</p>
User Msg	<p>Message_HelpRequest (for this Iconbar icon)</p> <p>If a help message is attached to this Iconbar icon, then a reply is sent on the application's behalf.</p>



---

# 10 Menu class

---

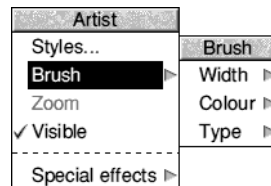
**A** menu allows the user to select an item from a list of choices using the mouse pointer.

## User interface

A menu should appear on the screen either when the user clicks the Menu mouse button, or clicks on a Pop-up menu button. The menu will disappear again when the user clicks outside the menu or presses Escape (or the client application hides it or the user opens another menu).

When the user clicks on a menu entry the client application will typically perform some task. The menu will then disappear, unless the selection was made using the Adjust button in which case it will persist on the screen.

- A menu has a title bar with black (Wimp colour 7) text on a grey (Wimp colour 2) background.
- Menu entries which contain text are black (7) on a white (0) background; a menu entry may alternatively contain a sprite.
- Menu entries may optionally be separated by a dotted line, to group related items.
- A menu entry may lead to further menus, or a dialogue box, in which case a submenu arrow is displayed at the righthand edge of the entry. When a menu entry is unavailable it is displayed as 'shaded' (i.e. its text is displayed in light grey).



## Application Program Interface

When a Menu object is created, the Toolbox deals with ensuring that the colours used for the Menu are Style Guide compliant. Each menu entry is set with a height of 44 OS units (or 68 if it has a dotted line separator), and the width of the menu is calculated from details of its entries on the application's behalf.

The Menu module deals with keeping the menu tree displayed when a selection is made with Adjust.

### Attributes

#### Menu attributes

A Menu object has the following attributes which are specified in its object template and can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attribute	Description	
flags word	Bit	Meaning
	0	when set, this bit indicates that an event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this Menu.
	1	when set, this bit indicates that an event should be raised when the Menu has been removed from the screen.
menu title	gives a text string which will appear in the menu's title bar (0 means no title, an empty string means no titlebar)	
max title length	gives the maximum length in bytes of title text which will be used for this Menu.	
help message	when a HelpRequest message is received on this menu, then this text message is sent in a HelpReply message. Note that this help message is only sent if the menu entry for which the request was received has not got a help message of its own.	
max help length	gives the maximum length in bytes of help text which will be used for this Menu.	
show event	this is a Toolbox event code which will be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this menu. If its value is -1, then the default Menu_AboutToBeShown event is raised. An event is only raised if the appropriate bit is set in the menu's flags word.	

Attribute	Description
hide event	<p>this is a Toolbox event code which will be raised when this menu has been removed from the screen (either as a result of an explicit call to SWI Toolbox_HideObject or because the Wimp has removed the menu).</p> <p>If its value is -1, then the default Menu_HasBeenHidden event is raised. An event is only raised if the appropriate bit is set in the menu's flags word.</p>

### Menu entry attributes

A Menu also has a list of 'entries'. Each entry has its own component id which uniquely identifies it within this menu. An entry has the following attributes:

Attribute	Description																						
flags	<table> <tr> <th>Bit</th><th>Meaning</th></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>when set, this entry is ticked.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>when set, this entry has a dotted line immediately after it.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2-7</td><td>must be 0.</td></tr> <tr> <td>8</td><td>when set, this entry is faded.</td></tr> <tr> <td>9</td><td>when set, this entry is a sprite (default is a text menu entry).</td></tr> <tr> <td>10</td><td>when set, this entry has a submenu (ie a submenu arrow appears next to the entry).</td></tr> <tr> <td>11</td><td>when set, an event (either Menu_SubMenu or client-specified) is raised when the user traverses this entry's submenu arrow with the mouse pointer (if bit 10 is set).</td></tr> <tr> <td>12</td><td>when set, if there is an object to be shown when this entry is selected, then it will be shown with Wimp_CreateMenu semantics. The default is to show persistently.</td></tr> <tr> <td>13</td><td>when set, if there is an object to be shown when this entry is selected, then it will be shown centred on the screen.</td></tr> <tr> <td>14</td><td>when set, if there is an object to be shown when this entry is selected, then it will be shown at the current pointer position on the screen.</td></tr> </table>	Bit	Meaning	0	when set, this entry is ticked.	1	when set, this entry has a dotted line immediately after it.	2-7	must be 0.	8	when set, this entry is faded.	9	when set, this entry is a sprite (default is a text menu entry).	10	when set, this entry has a submenu (ie a submenu arrow appears next to the entry).	11	when set, an event (either Menu_SubMenu or client-specified) is raised when the user traverses this entry's submenu arrow with the mouse pointer (if bit 10 is set).	12	when set, if there is an object to be shown when this entry is selected, then it will be shown with Wimp_CreateMenu semantics. The default is to show persistently.	13	when set, if there is an object to be shown when this entry is selected, then it will be shown centred on the screen.	14	when set, if there is an object to be shown when this entry is selected, then it will be shown at the current pointer position on the screen.
Bit	Meaning																						
0	when set, this entry is ticked.																						
1	when set, this entry has a dotted line immediately after it.																						
2-7	must be 0.																						
8	when set, this entry is faded.																						
9	when set, this entry is a sprite (default is a text menu entry).																						
10	when set, this entry has a submenu (ie a submenu arrow appears next to the entry).																						
11	when set, an event (either Menu_SubMenu or client-specified) is raised when the user traverses this entry's submenu arrow with the mouse pointer (if bit 10 is set).																						
12	when set, if there is an object to be shown when this entry is selected, then it will be shown with Wimp_CreateMenu semantics. The default is to show persistently.																						
13	when set, if there is an object to be shown when this entry is selected, then it will be shown centred on the screen.																						
14	when set, if there is an object to be shown when this entry is selected, then it will be shown at the current pointer position on the screen.																						

Attribute	Description
component id	identifies this entry uniquely within this menu. -1 and -2 are invalid component ids
text	depending on whether this is a text or sprite entry (as indicated by bit 9 of the flags word), this is either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● a text string which will appear in the menu entry</li> <li>● the name of the sprite which will appear in the Menu entry</li> </ul>
max length	gives the maximum length in bytes of entry text or sprite name
click show	the name of the template for an object to show, when the user clicks on this entry. 0 means there is no object to be shown
submenu show	the name of the template for an object to show, when the user moves the pointer over the submenu arrow (if the entry has a submenu). 0 means there is no object to be shown
submenu event	a Toolbox event code which will be raised when the user moves the pointer over the submenu arrow (if the entry has a submenu and bit 11 of the flags word is set) if its value is 0 then the default Menu_Submenu event is raised
click event	a Toolbox event code which will be raised when the user clicks on this entry if its value is 0 then the default Menu_Selection event is raised
help message	when a HelpRequest message is received on this entry of this menu then this text string is sent in a HelpReply message 0 means that the help message for the menu will be sent (if such exists)
max help length	gives the maximum length in bytes of the entry's help message

## Manipulating a Menu object

Since there can only be one Menu visible on the screen at any one time, it is usual for the client application to mark Menu templates as 'shared' so that only one copy will exist in memory. The application receives a `Menu_AboutToBeShown` Toolbox event just before the Menu is shown, to allow it to set any attributes like ticks and fades, which may differ depending on where the Menu is being shown; for example, in a multi-document editor a single menu can be maintained for all document Windows; when the Toolbox receives a Menu button click event from the Wimp, it will show the Menu associated with the Window over which the mouse click occurred; when the application receives the `Menu_AboutToBeShown` Toolbox event, it can tick and fade entries in the Menu depending on the state of the document Window.

Another alternative for supporting multi-document editors is to create a Menu object for each Window object. In this case it will not be necessary to use the `Menu_AboutToBeShown` Toolbox event to make last minute changes to the menu, since these can be made on a per-window basis as the changes occur. Whether this method is used, or the above 'shared' scheme is really one of personal taste, and memory usage.

It is possible to associate a client handle with a Menu using the `Toolbox_SetClientHandle` method, but normally an application will simply wish to use the client handle of the object to which a Menu is attached (via the `parent_id` or the `ancestor_id` in the `id` block).

### Creating and deleting a menu

A Menu object is created using `SWI Toolbox_CreateObject`.

When a Menu object is created, the following attached objects (see page 11) are also created for each menu entry for which they are defined:

- submenu show
- click show.

The *Menu entry attributes* table on page 171 describes these objects.

Attached objects are also created when a menu entry is added to the Menu, if they are referenced by the menu entry (and deleted when the menu entry is removed).

A Menu object is deleted using `SWI Toolbox_DeleteObject`. If it has any attached objects these are also deleted, unless the non-recursive bit is set for this SWI.

Note: Menus must not be mutually recursive (i.e. in a menu hierarchy, a menu entry may not have, as a submenu, a menu further up the hierarchy). The menu module does not check for such a case, so it is the client application's responsibility to check for correctness.

### Showing a menu

When a menu is displayed on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject it has the following behaviour:

Show type	Position
0 (default)	64 OS units to the left of the mouse pointer
1 (full spec)	R3 + 0 gives x coordinate of top-left corner of Menu R3 + 4 gives y coordinate of top-left corner of Menu
2 (topleft)	R3 + 0 gives x coordinate of top-left corner of Menu R3 + 4 gives y coordinate of top-left corner of Menu

The client application should not need to make this call, since it is made automatically by the Window and Iconbar modules for objects which have a Menu attached to them. The Window module will display the menu in its default place when the Menu button is clicked, or in the case of a pop-up menu directly to the right of the pop-up icon; the Iconbar module displays the menu with its base 96 OS units from the bottom of the screen, and 64 OS units to the right of the mouse pointer.

### Adding and removing menu entries

Normally the set of entries in a Menu will be specified in the application's resource file. If, however, the application wishes to add and remove Menu entries dynamically at run-time, this is done using the Menu\_AddEntry and Menu\_RemoveEntry methods.

### Changing a Menu entry

A given Menu entry can either contain text or a sprite. Normally these will be fixed when the menu is created, but they can be set and read dynamically using the Menu\_SetEntryText, Menu\_GetEntryText, Menu\_SetEntrySprite, and Menu\_GetEntrySprite methods.

### Ticking or fading a Menu entry

Each Menu entry can be optionally 'ticked' (i.e. have a tick displayed to the left of it), and/or 'faded' (i.e. displayed in light grey, and unselectable).

A given Menu entry can be ticked/unticked, faded/unfaded using the Menu\_SetTick/Menu\_SetFade methods.

The client can determine the state of a particular entry using the `Menu_GetTick/Menu_GetFade` methods.

### **Attaching a submenu dynamically**

Normally an application's Menu structure is fully specified statically in its resource file, but occasionally an application may wish to build a submenu at run-time, and attach it at a particular point in the Menu tree.

This is achieved by creating the submenu object, and using the `Menu_SetSubMenuShow` method already mentioned (and detailed on page 185).

### **Dealing with Menu hits**

Each Menu entry can have a specified Toolbox event which will be raised when a menu selection is made on that entry (i.e. the Wimp has returned a Menu Selection event to the application).

Normally this Toolbox event is specified in the client application's resource file, but it can be read and set dynamically using the `Menu_SetClickEvent` and `Menu_GetClickEvent` methods.

The client can also specify the name of a template of an object which should be shown when the menu hit happens. The main use for this is to supply the name of the template of a persistent dialogue box, on a Menu entry with an ellipsis (...). The object is only shown after the 'Menu hit event' has been delivered to the client. The **show type** value passed in R2 to `Toolbox_ShowObject` will be 0 (default place).

It is possible to specify at run-time the object id of an object which should be shown when a Menu hit happens, using the `Menu_SetClickShow` method (and the object id can be read using the `Menu_GetClickShow` method).

If neither of the above is specified, then the Toolbox raises the `Menu_Selection` Toolbox event, as described on page 202. This Toolbox event reports which entry was selected.

### **Dealing with Adjust clicks on a Menu**

When the user of the client application clicks Adjust on a Menu entry or on a Gadget in a dialogue box which has been opened from a Menu, it is conventional for the Menu tree to remain on the screen.

The Toolbox handles this automatically on behalf of the application, so the client does not have to look for Adjust clicks; the client's code just responds to the Toolbox events raised by the user's interaction with the Menu.

Note that the Toolbox 're-shows' the Menu when the application next calls SWI Wimp\_Poll, after the Menu selection, so any ticking/fading etc of Menu entries, must be done in response to the Toolbox event which was raised when a menu selection was made.

### **Dealing with traversal of a submenu arrow**

Each Menu entry can have a specified Toolbox event which will be raised when the user moves the mouse pointer over the submenu arrow, which is displayed on all Menu entries which have a submenu.

Normally this Toolbox event is specified in the client application's resource file, but it can be read and set dynamically using the Menu\_SetSubMenuEvent and Menu\_GetSubMenuEvent methods.

The client can also specify the name of a template of an object which should be shown when the user moves the mouse pointer over the submenu arrow. The main use for this is to supply the name of the template of a transient dialogue box or a submenu. The object is only shown after the Menu\_SubMenu event has been delivered to the client.

It is possible to specify at run-time the object id of an object which should be shown when the user moves the pointer over the submenu arrow, using the Menu\_SetSubMenuShow method (and the object id can be read using the Menu\_GetSubMenuShow method).

If neither of the above is specified, then the Toolbox raises the Menu\_SubMenu Toolbox event. This Toolbox event reports the entry over which the mouse pointer has moved.

### **Interactive help on Menus**

Each Menu has an optional Help Message associated with it. When the client application receives a HelpRequest for the Menu, the Toolbox replies automatically with this Help Message.

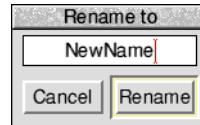
Normally the Menu's Help Message will be specified in the application's resource file, however the client can set and read the message dynamically using the Menu\_SetHelpMessage/Menu\_GetHelpMessage methods.

Each Menu entry can also have a Help Message. If no such message is specified, then the Toolbox will return the Menu's Help Message instead. Normally, again, an entry's Help Message will have been specified in the resource file, but it can be read and set using the Menu\_SetEntryHelpMessage and Menu\_GetEntryHelpMessage methods (described on page 195).



### Writable menu entries

Writable menu entries as seen in older applications are not supported by the Toolbox as these are not Style Guide compliant. Instead you should use small dialogues. For example:



## Menu methods

The following methods are all invoked by calling SWI Toolbox\_MiscOp with:

- R0 holding a flags word
- R1 being a Menu id
- R2 being the method code which distinguishes this method
- R3-R9 potentially holding method-specific data

### Menu\_SetTick 0

#### On entry

- R0 = flags
- R1 = Menu object id
- R2 = 0
- R3 = component id of entry

R4 = value  
0 means 'untick'  
non-zero means 'tick'

**On exit**

R1-R9 preserved

**Use**

This method affects the tick state of a Menu entry.

**C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_set_tick ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId menu,
                                         ComponentId entry,
                                         int tick
                                         );
```

## Menu\_GetTick 1

**On entry**

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 0  
R3 = component id of entry

**On exit**

R0 = tick state  
non-zero means ticked  
0 means unticked

**Use**

This method returns the tick state of a Menu entry.

**C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_get_tick ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId menu,
                                         ComponentId entry,
                                         int *ticked
                                         );
```

## Menu\_SetFade 2

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 2  
R3 = component id of entry  
R4 = value  
    0 means unfade  
    non-zero means fade

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method affects the fade state of a Menu entry.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_set_fade ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId menu,
                                         ComponentId entry,
                                         int fade
                                         );
```

## Menu\_GetFade 3

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 3  
R3 = component id of entry

### On exit

R0 = fade state  
    0 means unfaded  
    non-zero means faded

### Use

This method returns the fade state of a Menu entry.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_get_fade ( unsigned int flags,  
                                         ObjectId menu,  
                                         ComponentId entry,  
                                         int *faded  
                                         );
```

## Menu\_SetEntryText 4

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 4  
R3 = component id of entry  
R4 = pointer to text string to use

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the text which is to be used in the named text Menu entry.

An error is returned if the entry's text buffer is not large enough to hold the supplied text.

An error is returned if this SWI is called on an entry which is a sprite.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_set_entry_text ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId menu,
                                              ComponentId entry,
                                              const char *text
                                              );
```

## Menu\_GetEntryText 5

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 5  
R3 = component id of entry  
R4 = pointer to buffer to return the text in (or 0)  
R5 = size of buffer

### On exit

R5 = the size of buffer required to hold the text (if R4 was 0)  
    else Buffer pointed to by R4 contains entry text  
    R5 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method is used for a text Menu entry. It returns the text string displayed for that entry.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_get_entry_text ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId menu,
                                              ComponentId entry,
                                              char *buffer,
                                              int buff_size,
                                              int *nbytes
                                              );
```

## Menu\_SetEntrySprite 6

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 6  
R3 = component id of entry  
R4 = pointer to name of sprite to use

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the sprite which is to be used in the named sprite Menu entry.

An error is returned if the entry's sprite name buffer is not large enough to hold the supplied sprite name.

An error is returned if this SWI is called on a text entry.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_set_entry_sprite ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId menu,
                                                ComponentId entry,
                                                const char *sprite_name
                                                );
```

## Menu\_GetEntrySprite 7

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Menu object id

R2 = 7

R3 = component id of entry

R4 = pointer to buffer to return the sprite name in (or 0)

R5 = size of buffer

### On exit

R5 = the size of buffer required to hold the sprite name (if R4 was 0)

else Buffer pointed to by R4 contains sprite name

R5 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method is used for a sprite Menu entry. It returns the name of the sprite displayed for that entry.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_get_entry_sprite ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId menu,
                                                ComponentId entry,
                                                char *buffer,
                                                int buff_size,
                                                int *nbytes
                                              );
```



## Menu\_SetSubMenuShow 8

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Menu object id

R2 = 8

R3 = component id of entry where submenu should be attached

R4 = object id of the submenu (or 0)

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method allows the client to specify the object id of an object to show when the user moves the pointer over the submenu arrow.

If R4 is 0, then no object should be shown.

Calling this SWI also causes the submenu arrow to be shown or hidden as appropriate.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_set_sub_menu_show ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId menu,
                                                ComponentId entry,
                                                ObjectId sub_menu
                                                );
```

## Menu\_GetSubMenuShow 9

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 9  
R3 = component id

### On exit

R0 = id of object to be shown

### Use

This method returns the object id of the object which will be shown when the user moves the pointer over the submenu arrow.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_get_sub_menu_show ( unsigned int flags,  
                                                ObjectId menu,  
                                                ComponentId entry,  
                                                ObjectId *sub_menu  
                                                );
```

---

## Menu\_SetSubMenuEvent 10

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 10  
R3 = component id of entry  
R4 = Toolbox event code to raise

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method specifies a Toolbox event to be raised when the user moves the mouse over this entry's submenu arrow.

If R4 is 0, then a Menu\_SubMenu Toolbox event will be raised instead.

Calling this SWI also causes the submenu arrow to be shown or hidden as appropriate.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_set_sub_menu_event ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId menu,
                                                ComponentId entry,
                                                int toolbox_event
                                                );
```

## Menu\_GetSubMenuEvent 11

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 11  
R3 = component id of entry

### On exit

R4 = Toolbox event code

### Use

This method reads the Toolbox event to be raised when the user moves the mouse over this entry's submenu arrow.

If no event has been specified, then 0 is returned.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_get_sub_menu_event ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectId menu,
                                                  ComponentId entry,
                                                  int *toolbox_event
                                                  );
```

## Menu\_SetClickShow 12

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 12  
R3 = component id of entry  
R4 = object id to show  
R5 = show flags: bit 0  
    if clear show persistently  
    if set show transiently

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method allows the client to specify the object id of an object to show when the user selects this Menu entry. By setting bit 0 of R5 it is possible to control whether the show is persistent or not.

If R4 is 0, then no object should be shown.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_set_click_show ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId menu,
                                              ComponentId entry,
                                              ObjectId object,
                                              int show_flags
                                              );
```

## Menu\_GetClickShow 13

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 13  
R3 = component id

### On exit

R0 = id of object to be shown  
R1 = show flags

### Use

This method returns the object id of the object which will be shown when the user selects this Menu entry. If bit 0 of R1 is set on exit, it means that the object will be shown transiently.

If no object has been specified, then 0 is returned in R0.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_get_click_show ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId menu,
                                              ComponentId entry,
                                              ObjectId *object,
                                              int *show_flags
                                              );
```

## Menu\_SetClickEvent 14

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 14  
R3 = component id of entry  
R4 = Toolbox event code to raise

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method specifies a Toolbox event to be raised when the user selects the given Menu entry.

If R4 is 0, then a Menu\_Selection Toolbox event will be raised instead.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_set_click_event ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId menu,
                                              ComponentId entry,
                                              int toolbox_event
                                              );
```

## Menu\_GetClickEvent 15

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 15  
R3 = component id of entry

### On exit

R4 = Toolbox event code

### Use

This method reads the Toolbox event to be raised when the user selects the given Menu entry.

If no event has been specified, then 0 is returned.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_get_click_event ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId menu,
                                              ComponentId entry,
                                              int *toolbox_event
                                              );
```



## Menu\_SetHelpMessage 16

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Menu object id

R2 = 16

R3 = pointer to message text

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to set the help message which will be returned when a Help Request message is received for this Menu object. The Toolbox handles the reply message for you.

If R3 is 0, then the Help Message for this Menu is detached.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_set_help_message ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId menu,
                                                const char *help_message
                                              );
```

## Menu\_GetHelpMessage 17

### On entry

R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 17  
R3 = pointer to buffer  
R4 = size of buffer to hold message text

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required for message text (if R3 was 0)  
    else Buffer pointed at by R3 holds message text  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method is used to read the help message which will be returned when a Help Request message is received for this Menu object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_get_help_message ( unsigned int flags,  
                                                ObjectId menu,  
                                                char *buffer,  
                                                int buff_size,  
                                                int *nbytes  
                                                );
```

## Menu\_SetEntryHelpMessage 18

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Menu object id

R2 = 18

R3 = component id of entry

R4 = pointer to message text

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to set the help message which will be returned when a Help Request message is received for this Menu entry. The Toolbox handles the reply message for you.

If R4 is 0, then the Help Message for this Menu entry is detached.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_set_entry_help_message ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId menu,
                                                    ComponentId entry,
                                                    const char *help_message
                                                    );
```

## Menu\_GetEntryHelpMessage 19

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 19  
R3 = component id of entry  
R4 = pointer to buffer  
R5 = size of buffer to hold message text

### On exit

R5 = size of buffer required for message text (if R4 was 0)  
    else Buffer pointed at by R4 holds message text  
    R5 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method is used to read the help message which will be returned when a Help Request message is received for this Menu object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_get_entry_help_message ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId menu,
                                                    ComponentId entry,
                                                    char *buffer,
                                                    int buff_size,
                                                    int *nbytes
                                                    );
```

## Menu\_AddEntry 20

### On entry

R0 = flags (bit 0 set means add the entry before the specified entry)

R1 = Menu object id

R2 = 20

R3 = component id of entry after/before which to add this entry  
(or -1 to mean at the beginning, -2 to mean at the end)

R4 = pointer to buffer containing a description of the new entry

### On exit

R0 = component id of added entry

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method adds a new Menu entry at the specified place in the Menu. The description of the Menu entry should have a format as specified under the Menu Templates section.

By default the entry is added after the specified entry whose id is passed in R3, but the client can specify that it is added before that entry, by setting bit 0 of the flags word.

If the component id in the template of the Menu entry was specified as -1, then the Toolbox uses the lowest numbered component id available for this Menu.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_add_entry ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId menu,
                                         ComponentId at_entry,
                                         const char *entry_description,
                                         ComponentId *new_entry
                                         );
```

## Menu\_RemoveEntry 21

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 21  
R3 = component id of the entry

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method removes a Menu entry

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_remove_entry ( unsigned int flags,  
                                             ObjectId menu,  
                                             ComponentId entry  
                                             );
```

## Menu\_GetHeight 22

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 22

### On exit

R0 = height of menu work area in OS Units  
R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method returns the height of the work area of the given Menu (in OS Units). It takes into account whether items in the Menu have dashed line separators. This can be used to accurately position the Menu in a call to Toolbox\_ShowObject.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_get_height ( unsigned int flags,  
                                           ObjectId menu,  
                                           int *height  
                                           );
```

## Menu\_GetWidth 23

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 23

### On exit

R0 = width of menu work area in OS Units  
R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method returns the width of the work area of the given Menu (in OS Units).

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_get_width ( unsigned int flags,
                                         Objectid menu,
                                         int *width
                                         );
```

## Menu\_SetTitle 24

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Menu object id  
R2 = 24  
R3 = pointer to text string to use

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the text which is to be used in the title bar of the given Menu. Note that this has no immediate effect if the Menu is currently being displayed.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_set_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                         Objectid menu,
                                         const char *title
                                         );
```

## Menu\_GetTitle 25

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Menu object id

R2 = 25

R3 = pointer to buffer to return the text in (or 0)

R4 = size of buffer

### On exit

R4 = the size of buffer required to hold the text (if R3 was 0)

else Buffer pointed to by R3 contains title text

R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the text string used in a Menu's title bar.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *menu_get_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId menu,
                                         char *buffer,
                                         int buff_size,
                                         int *nbytes
                                         );
```



## Menu events

### Menu\_AboutToBeShown (0x828c0)

#### Block

- + 8      0x828c0 (or client specified event – see *Menu Templates* on page 203)
- + 12     flags (as passed in to Toolbox\_ShowObject)
- + 16     value as passed in R2 to Toolbox\_ShowObject
- + 20...   block as passed in R3 to Toolbox\_ShowObject

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised due to a call to SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject on a Menu object which has bit 0 of its flags word set. It gives the application the opportunity to tick, fade or change the text/sprite of any Menu entries before the Menu actually appears on the screen.

This is useful where a shared Menu is being used by many Window objects, each of which has a state which is reflected in the Menu state.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                show_type;
    TopLeft            pos;
} MenuAboutToBeShownEvent;
```

### Menu\_HasBeenHidden (0x828c1)

#### Block

- + 8      0x828c1 (or client specified event – see *Menu Templates* on page 203)

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised by the Toolbox when Toolbox\_HideObject is called on a Menu which has the appropriate bit set in its template flags word. It enables a client application to clear up after a menu has been closed. It is also raised when clicking outside a menu or hitting Escape.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
} MenuHasBeenHiddenEvent;
```

## Menu\_SubMenu (0x828c2)

### Block

+ 8      0x828c2  
+ 16     x coordinate where the submenu will be shown  
+ 20     y coordinate where the submenu will be shown

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user moves the mouse over a Menu entry's submenu arrow, and the client application has not associated any other Toolbox event with this event. The event is only delivered if the appropriate bit is set in the menu entry's flags word.

This Toolbox event is raised by the Menu class.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    TopLeft           pos;
} MenuSubMenuEvent;
```

## Menu\_Selection (0x828c3)

### Block:

+ 8      0x828c3

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user makes a selection on a Menu object, and the client application has not associated any other Toolbox event with this event.

This Toolbox event is raised by the Menu class.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
} MenuSelectionEvent;
```

## Menu Templates

The layout of a Menu template is shown below. Fields which have types `MsgReference` and `StringReference` are those which will require relocation when they are loaded from a resource file. If the template is being constructed in memory, then these fields should be real pointers (i.e. they do not require relocation).

The current version for Menu templates is 102.

For more details on relocation, see appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
title	4	MsgReference
max_title	4	word
help_message	4	MsgReference
max_help	4	word
show_event	4	word
hide_event	4	word
num_entries	4	word

Followed by a list of menu entries, where each entry is:

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
component_id	4	word
text	4	MsgReference or StringReference
max_text	4	word
click_show	4	StringReference
submenu_show	4	StringReference
submenu_event	4	word
click_event	4	word
help_message	4	MsgReference
max_entry_help	4	word

## Menu Wimp event handling

The Menu class responds to certain Wimp events and takes the actions as described below:

Wimp event	Action
Menu Selection	<p>If there is a click event associated with the given Menu entry, then that Toolbox event is raised;</p> <p>if there is an object to be shown for this entry then show it;</p> <p>if neither of the above then the Menu_Selection Toolbox event is raised.</p> <p>If Adjust is held down, then the currently open Menu is re-opened in the same place.</p>
Mouse Click	<p>(on a dialogue box attached to the Menu)</p> <p>If Adjust is held down, then the currently open Menu is re-opened in the same place.</p>
User Msg	<p>Message_HelpRequest (while the pointer is over a Menu object) If a help message is attached to this Menu or Menu entry, then a reply is sent on the application's behalf.</p> <p>Message_MenuWarning If a submenu event is associated with the given Menu entry, then this Toolbox event is raised;</p> <p>if a submenu object has been specified for this Menu entry, then it is shown by the Toolbox.</p> <p>if neither of the above, then a Menu_SubMenu Toolbox event is raised.</p> <p>Message_MenusDeleted The Menu which was being shown is marked as hidden (as if Toolbox_HideObject had been called).</p>

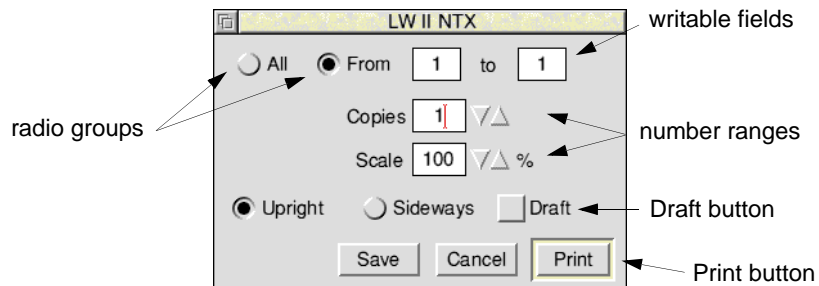
# 11

## Print Dialogue box class

**A** Print dialogue object is used to allow the user to set a number of print options (e.g. number of pages, number of copies etc), and then to request that a document be printed given these options.

### User interface

When a Print dialogue is created, it has the following components:



- a set of buttons and writable fields giving a page range to print (optional)
- a number range giving the number of copies to print (optional)
- a radio group consisting of two buttons, indicating whether the printing is to be done **Upright** or **Sideways** (optional).
- an action button **Save** which saves the current print options (optional)
- an action button **Set Up...** which brings up a dialogue box allowing further print options to be set (optional)
- an action button **Cancel** which closes the dialogue box without printing
- a default action button **Print** which causes a print operation to take place using these print options
- an option button **Draft** indicating that draft standard printing is to be used
- a number range giving a percentage scale factor to apply during printing (optional).

Pressing Escape cancels the dialogue (as well as clicking on the **Cancel** button).

The title bar of the dialogue box displays the name of the currently selected printer or 'Unknown printer' if there is no such printer.

## **Application Program Interface**

All processing of the dialogue box is handled by the Print module, and the client is informed of any user actions via Toolbox events (PrintDbox\_Print, PrintDbox\_SetUp, PrintDbox\_DialogueCompleted and PrintDbox\_Save).

## Attributes

A Print Dialogue object has the following attributes which are specified in its object template and can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attributes	Description																												
flags word	<table> <tr> <th>Bit</th><th>Meaning</th></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>when set, this bit indicates that a PrintDbox_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>when set, this bit indicates that a PrintDbox_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the Print Dialogue object has been removed from the screen.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>when set, this bit indicates generate PrintDbox_SetUpAboutToBeShown event before the underlying SetUp object is shown</td></tr> <tr> <td>3</td><td>when set, dialogue box has the <b>All/From/To Page Range</b> options</td></tr> <tr> <td>4</td><td>when set, dialogue box has the <b>Copies</b> writable field</td></tr> <tr> <td>5</td><td>when set, dialogue box has the <b>Scale</b> writable field</td></tr> <tr> <td>6</td><td>when set, dialogue box has the Orientation options (i.e. <b>Upright</b> and <b>Sideways</b>)</td></tr> <tr> <td>7</td><td>when set, dialogue box has <b>Save</b> action button</td></tr> <tr> <td>8</td><td>when set, dialogue box has <b>Set Up ...</b> action button</td></tr> <tr> <td>9</td><td>when set, dialogue box has <b>Draft</b> option button</td></tr> <tr> <td>10</td><td>when set, dialogue box has <b>From/to</b> set from <b>All/From/to</b></td></tr> <tr> <td>11</td><td>when set, dialogue box has <b>Sideways</b> (and not <b>Upright</b>) selected</td></tr> <tr> <td>12</td><td>when set, dialogue box has <b>Draft</b> selected</td></tr> </table>	Bit	Meaning	0	when set, this bit indicates that a PrintDbox_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.	1	when set, this bit indicates that a PrintDbox_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the Print Dialogue object has been removed from the screen.	2	when set, this bit indicates generate PrintDbox_SetUpAboutToBeShown event before the underlying SetUp object is shown	3	when set, dialogue box has the <b>All/From/To Page Range</b> options	4	when set, dialogue box has the <b>Copies</b> writable field	5	when set, dialogue box has the <b>Scale</b> writable field	6	when set, dialogue box has the Orientation options (i.e. <b>Upright</b> and <b>Sideways</b> )	7	when set, dialogue box has <b>Save</b> action button	8	when set, dialogue box has <b>Set Up ...</b> action button	9	when set, dialogue box has <b>Draft</b> option button	10	when set, dialogue box has <b>From/to</b> set from <b>All/From/to</b>	11	when set, dialogue box has <b>Sideways</b> (and not <b>Upright</b> ) selected	12	when set, dialogue box has <b>Draft</b> selected
Bit	Meaning																												
0	when set, this bit indicates that a PrintDbox_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.																												
1	when set, this bit indicates that a PrintDbox_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the Print Dialogue object has been removed from the screen.																												
2	when set, this bit indicates generate PrintDbox_SetUpAboutToBeShown event before the underlying SetUp object is shown																												
3	when set, dialogue box has the <b>All/From/To Page Range</b> options																												
4	when set, dialogue box has the <b>Copies</b> writable field																												
5	when set, dialogue box has the <b>Scale</b> writable field																												
6	when set, dialogue box has the Orientation options (i.e. <b>Upright</b> and <b>Sideways</b> )																												
7	when set, dialogue box has <b>Save</b> action button																												
8	when set, dialogue box has <b>Set Up ...</b> action button																												
9	when set, dialogue box has <b>Draft</b> option button																												
10	when set, dialogue box has <b>From/to</b> set from <b>All/From/to</b>																												
11	when set, dialogue box has <b>Sideways</b> (and not <b>Upright</b> ) selected																												
12	when set, dialogue box has <b>Draft</b> selected																												
from	initial value to put in the <b>From</b> writable field																												
to	initial value to put in the <b>to</b> writable field																												
copies	initial value to put in the <b>Copies</b> number range																												
scale	initial value to put in the <b>Scale</b> number range																												
further options	name of the template for a Window object to be displayed when <b>Setup...</b> is clicked																												

Attributes	Description
window	name of the template for an alternative window to use instead of the default one (0 means use default)

## Manipulating a Print Dialogue object

### Creating and deleting a Print Dialogue object

A Print Dialogue object is created using SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject.

When a Print Dialogue object is created, the following attached object (see page 11) will be created (if specified):

- further options.

A Print Dialogue object is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject. If it has any attached objects (see above), these are also deleted, unless the non-recursive bit is set for this SWI.

The setting of the non-recursive delete bit means that the SetUp dialogue box will not be deleted.

### Showing a Print Dialogue object

When a Print Dialogue object is displayed on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject it has the following behaviour:

Show type	Position
0 (default)	the underlying window is shown at the last place shown on the screen, or the coordinates given in its template, if it has not already been shown
1 (full spec)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate R3 + 8    visible area maximum x coordinate R3 + 12   visible area maximum y coordinate R3 + 16   scroll x offset relative to work area R3 + 20   scroll y offset relative to work area R3 + 24   Wimp window handle of window to open behind -1    means top of stack -2    means bottom of stack -3    means the window behind the Wimp's backwindow
2 (topleft)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate



Show type	Position
3 (centred)	the screen dimensions are read and the underlying window offset so that it appears centred on screen
4 (at pointer)	the pointer position is read and the underlying window offset such that the top left corner is at the pointer

### Before the Print Dialogue box is shown

When the client (or the Toolbox) calls `Toolbox_ShowObject` on a Print Dialogue object, a `PrintDbox_AboutToBeShown` Toolbox event is raised before the dialogue box becomes visible on the screen (if the appropriate flags bit is set).

This allows the client to set up the contents of the dialogue box appropriately.

### Getting and setting printing options

A Print dialogue box contains many fields which are either options or writable fields. These are:

- page range
- number of copies
- scale factor
- orientation
- draft.

Each of these components can be read and set dynamically using the following methods:

```
PrintDbox_SetPageRangePrintDbox_GetPageRange
PrintDbox_SetCopiesPrintDbox_GetCopies
PrintDbox_SetScalePrintDbox_GetScale
PrintDbox_SetOrientationPrintDbox_GetOrientation
PrintDbox_SetDraftPrintDbox_GetDraft
```

### Responding to action button clicks

When the user clicks a particular action button (or presses Return or Escape), the client receives one of the following Toolbox events:

- `PrintDbox_Save` if **Save** has been clicked.
- `PrintDbox_Print` if **Print** has been clicked or Return has been pressed.
- `PrintDbox_SetUp` if **Set Up...** has been clicked and there is no specified Window to be shown.

### Getting the Print Dialogue's title

The string appearing in the Print Dialogue's title bar is the currently selected printer (or 'unknown printer' if there is no such printer). This string can be read using the `PrintDbox_GetTitle` method.

If the Print Dialogue is persistent, and the currently selected Printer is changed, then the Title Bar will change to reflect this.

### Getting the id of the underlying Window object

The object id of the Window used to implement a Print Dialogue can be obtained using the `PrintDbox_GetWindowID` method.

### The SetUp Window

It is possible to specify the name of a template to be used for showing an object when the **SetUp...** button is pressed. This object is shown in its default place persistently.

## Print Dialogue methods

The following methods are all invoked by calling `SWI Toolbox_ObjectMiscOp` with:

R0	holding a flags word
R1	being a Print Dialogue object id
R2	being the method code which distinguishes this method
R3-R9	potentially holding method-specific data

### **PrintDbox\_GetWindowID 0**

#### **On entry**

R0 = flags  
R1 = Print Dbox object id  
R2 = 0

#### **On exit**

R0 = Window object id for this Print object

#### **Use**

This method returns the id of the underlying Window object used to implement this Print object.

**C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *printdbox_get_window_id ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId printdbox,
                                                ObjectId *window
                                                );
```

**PrintDbox\_SetPageRange 1****On entry**

R0 = flags  
 R1 = Print Dbox object id  
 R2 = 1  
 R3 = start of page range  
 R4 = end of page range

**On exit**

R1-R9 preserved

**Use**

This method is used to set the page range for a Print Dialogue.  
 A 'start' value of -1 means 'All'.

**C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *printdbox_set_page_range ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectId printdbox,
                                                  int start,
                                                  int end
                                                  );
```

**PrintDbox\_GetPageRange 2****On entry**

R0 = flags  
 R1 = Print Dbox object id  
 R2 = 2

**On exit**

R0 = start of page range (a 'start' value of -1 means 'All')  
 R1 = end of page range

**Use**

This method is used to return the page range for a Print Dialogue.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *printdbx_get_page_range ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectId printdbx,
                                                  int *start,
                                                  int *end
                                                  );
```

## PrintDbox\_SetCopies 3

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Print Dbox object id  
R2 = 3  
R3 = number of copies

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to set the number of copies field for a Print Dialogue.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *printdbx_set_copies ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId printdbx,
                                              int copies
                                              );
```

## PrintDbox\_GetCopies 4

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Print Dbox object id  
R2 = 4

### On exit

R0 = number of copies to be printed

### Use

This method returns the value of the **Copies** field for a Print Dialogue.

**C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *printdbox_get_copies ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId printdbox,
                                              int *copies
                                              );
```

**PrintDbox\_SetScale 5****On entry**

R0 = flags  
R1 = Print Dbox object id  
R2 = 5  
R3 = percentage value to scale by

**On exit**

R1-R9 preserved

**Use**

This method is used to set the scale factor for a Print Dialogue.

**C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *printdbox_set_scale ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId printdbox,
                                              int scale_factor
                                              );
```

**PrintDbox\_GetScale 6****On entry**

R0 = flags  
R1 = Print Dbox object id  
R2 = 6

**On exit**

R0 = percentage scale factor

**Use**

This method returns the value of the scale factor for a Print Dialogue.

### **C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *printdbox_get_scale ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId printdbox,
                                              int *scale_factor
                                              );
```

## **PrintDbox\_SetOrientation 7**

### **On entry**

R0 = flags

R1 = Print Dbox object id

R2 = 7

R3 = non-zero means Sideways, 0 means Upright

### **On exit**

R1-R9 preserved

### **Use**

This method is used to set the orientation for a Print Dialogue.

### **C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *printdbox_set_orientation ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId printdbox,
                                                    int orientation
                                                    );
```

## **PrintDbox\_GetOrientation 8**

### **On entry**

R0 = flags

R1 = Print Dbox object id

R2 = 8

### **On exit**

R0 = orientation non-zero means Sideways, 0 means Upright

### **Use**

This method returns the orientation for a Print Dialogue.

**C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *printdbox_get_orientation ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId printdbox,
                                                    int *orientation
                                                    );
```

**PrintDbox\_GetTitle 9****On entry**

R0 = flags  
R1 = Print Dbox object id  
R2 = 9  
R3 = pointer to buffer to hold title string  
R4 = size of buffer to hold title string

**On exit**

R4 = size of buffer required to hold title string (if R3 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R3 holds title string  
R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

**Use**

This method returns the current string used in a Print object's title bar.

**C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *printdbox_get_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId printdbox,
                                              char *buffer,
                                              int buff_size,
                                              int *nbytes
                                              );
```

## PrintDbox\_SetDraft 10

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Print Dbox object id  
R2 = 10  
R3 = non-zero means Draft, 0 means 'non-draft'

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to set whether draft printing is used for a Print Dialogue.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *printdbox_set_draft ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId printdbox,
                                              int draft
                                              );
```

## PrintDbox\_GetDraft 11

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Print Dbox object id  
R2 = 11

### On exit

R0 = draft non-zero means Draft, 0 means 'non-draft'

### Use

This method returns whether draft printing is used for a Print Dialogue.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *printdbox_get_draft ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId printdbox,
                                              int *draft
                                              );
```



## Print Dialogue events

The Print module generates the following Toolbox events:

### PrintDbox\_AboutToBeShown (0x82b00)

#### Block

- + 8     0x82b00
- + 12    flags (as passed in to Toolbox\_ShowObject)
- + 16    value which will be passed in R2 to ToolBox\_ShowObject
- + 20... block which will be passed in R3 to ToolBox\_ShowObject for the  
         underlying dialogue box

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised just before the Print module is going to show its underlying Window object.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                show_type;
    union
    {
        TopLeft                pos;
        WindowShowObjectBlock full;
    } info;
} PrintDboxAboutToBeShownEvent;
```

## PrintDbox\_DialogueCompleted (0x82b01)

### Block

+ 8      0x82b01  
+ 12     flags

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised after the Print object has been hidden, either by a Cancel click, or after a successful print, or by the user clicking outside the dialogue box (if it is transient) or pressing Escape. It allows the client to tidy up its own state associated with this dialogue.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
} PrintDboxDialogueCompletedEvent;
```

## PrintDbox\_SetUpAboutToBeShown (0x82b02)

### Block

- + 8     0x82b02
- + 16    object id of the object about to be shown  
(note that the 'self' id in the id block will be for the Print Dialogue object,  
not the object which will be shown)
- + 20    value which will be passed in R2 to ToolBox\_ShowObject
- + 24... block which will be passed in R3 to ToolBox\_ShowObject for the  
underlying dialogue box

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised just before the Print module is going to show its underlying Window object.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    ObjectId           object_id;
    int                show_type;
    union
    {
        TopLeft           pos;
        WindowShowObjectBlock full;
    } info;
} PrintDboxSetUpAboutToBeShownEvent;
```

## PrintDbox\_Save (0x82b03)

### Block

+ 8      0x82b03  
+ 12      flags  
         bit 0 set means print Sideways (default is Upright)  
         bit 1 set means print Draft (default is non-draft)  
+ 16      page range start (-1 means All)  
+ 20      page range end  
+ 24      number of copies  
+ 28      value to scale by (a percentage)

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user clicks on the **Save** button. The client should save any options associated with this Print Dialogue (usually in a document which is being edited).

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                start_page;
    int                finish_page;
    int                copies;
    int                scale_factor;
} PrintDboxSaveEvent;
```

## PrintDbox\_SetUp (0x82b04)

### Block

+ 8      0x82b04

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user clicks on the **Set Up...** button, if there is no dialogue box associated with this button.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
} PrintDboxSetUpEvent;
```

**PrintDbox\_Print (0x82b05)****Block**

- + 8     0x82b05
- + 12    flags
  - bit 0 set means print Sideways (default is Upright)
  - bit 1 set means print Draft (default is non-draft)
- + 16    page range start (-1 means All)
- + 20    page range end
- + 24    number of copies
- + 28    value to scale by (a percentage)

**Use**

This Toolbox event is raised when the user clicks on the Print button or presses Return.

**C data type**

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                start_page;
    int                finish_page;
    int                copies;
    int                scale_factor;
} PrintDboxPrintEvent;
```

## Print Dialogue templates

The layout of a Print template is shown below. Fields which have types `MsgReference` and `StringReference` are those which will require relocation when they are loaded from a resource file. If the template is being constructed in memory, then these fields should be real pointers (i.e. they do not require relocation).

For more details on relocation, see appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
from	4	word
to	4	word
copies	4	word
scale	4	word
further_options	4	StringReference
window	4	StringReference

## Underlying window template

The Window object used to implement a Print dialogue, has the following characteristics. These must be reproduced if the Window is replaced by a client-specified alternative Window template:

Title bar must be indirected.

### Gadgets

Component ids are derived by adding to 0x82b000.

Component id	Details	
0	action button ( <b>Print</b> )	this should be marked as the 'default' action button
1	action button ( <b>Save</b> )	this should be marked as a 'local' action button
2	action button ( <b>Cancel</b> )	this should be marked as the 'cancel' action button
3	radio button ( <b>From/To</b> )	this is selected to allow page ranges to be printed
4	radio button ( <b>All</b> )	selected for all page print
5 & 6	writable field ( <b>From</b> ) writable field ( <b>To</b> )	these are used by the user to enter a page range

Component id	Details	
7	number range ( <b>Copies</b> )	these are used by the user to enter the number of copies
8	number range ( <b>Scale</b> )	these are used by the user to specify a scale
9	radio button ( <b>Upright</b> )	selected for portrait
10	radio button ( <b>Sideways</b> )	selected for landscape
11	option button ( <b>Draft</b> )	selected for draft
12	action button ( <b>SetUp...</b> )	this is used to bring up a Window of further options
13	label ( <b>To</b> )	
14	label ( <b>Copies</b> )	
15	label ( <b>Scale</b> )	
16	label (%)	

## Print Dialogue Wimp event handling

Wimp event	Action
Mouse Click	on <b>Print</b> button then raise PrintDbox_Print Toolbox event on <b>Cancel</b> button then raise PrintDbox_DialogueCompleted Toolbox event on <b>Save</b> button then raise PrintDbox_Save Toolbox event on <b>Setup...</b> then raise a PrintDbox_SetUpAboutToBeShown, then show the specified Window object, or raise a PrintDbox_SetUp Toolbox event if there is no such Window on <b>All</b> (pages) and All is off then set All on set From off and shade the writable fields on <b>From</b> and From is off then set From on set All to off and unshade the writable fields on <b>Copies</b> or <b>Scale</b> up/down arrows then increment/decrement values on <b>Upright</b> then set Upright on and Sideways off on <b>Sideways</b> then set Sideways on and Upright off on <b>Draft</b> then toggle state of option button
Key Pressed	if key is Return raise PrintDbox_Print Toolbox event if key is Escape act as if Cancel has been clicked
User Message	Window_HasBeenHidden Toolbox event hide the dialogue box, and raise a PrintDbox_DialogueCompleted Toolbox event Message_HelpRequest return help message to sender



---

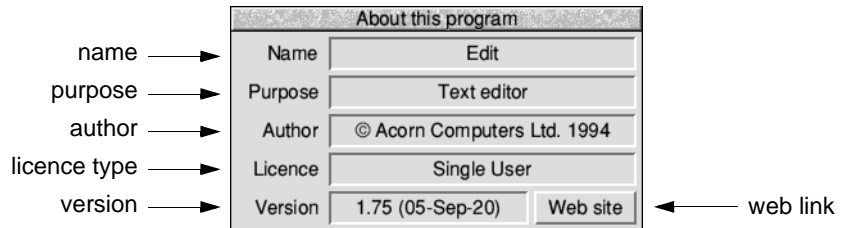
## 12 Prog Info Dialogue box class

---

**A** Prog Info dialogue object is used to display information about the client application in a dialogue box.

### User interface

A Prog Info Dialogue has the following information held in its dialogue box:



- the name of the application (taken from the message whose tag is '\_TaskName')
- the purpose of the application
- the author of the application
- the licence type of the application (optional)
- the version of the application
- a link to the author's web site (optional).

Except for the web site action button, all of the above are display field gadgets.

The last two of these fields can be set dynamically by the client at run-time.

This gives the simplest of Prog Info Dialogue boxes. If the client wishes to use further fields, or wishes to customise the dialogue box, then there is a facility for including the name of a different template to use rather than the standard Prog Info one.

# Application Program Interface

## Attributes

A Prog Info object has the following attributes which are specified in its object template and can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attributes	Description												
flags word	<table><tr><th>Bit</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>when set, this bit indicates that a ProgInfo_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>when set, this bit indicates that a ProgInfo_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the ProgInfo object has been removed from the screen.</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>when set, include a licence type field in the dialogue box</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>when set, include a web site action button in the dialogue box</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>when set, pressing the web site action button produces an event</td></tr></table>	Bit	Meaning	0	when set, this bit indicates that a ProgInfo_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.	1	when set, this bit indicates that a ProgInfo_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the ProgInfo object has been removed from the screen.	2	when set, include a licence type field in the dialogue box	3	when set, include a web site action button in the dialogue box	4	when set, pressing the web site action button produces an event
Bit	Meaning												
0	when set, this bit indicates that a ProgInfo_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.												
1	when set, this bit indicates that a ProgInfo_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the ProgInfo object has been removed from the screen.												
2	when set, include a licence type field in the dialogue box												
3	when set, include a web site action button in the dialogue box												
4	when set, pressing the web site action button produces an event												
title	alternative title bar string to 'About this program' (0 means use default title)												
max title length	this gives the maximum length in bytes of title text which will be used for this Prog Info dialogue's title bar												
purpose	a string giving the purpose of this application												
author	a string giving the author of this application												
licence type	an integer giving the licence type of the application												
version	a string giving version information for this application												
window	the name of an alternative window template to use instead of the default one (0 means use default)												
URI	a string specifying the universal resource identifier to open when the web site action button is pressed												
event	the Toolbox Event code to be raised when the user clicks Select on the web site action button												

## Manipulating a Prog Info object

### Creating and deleting a Prog Info object

A Prog Info object is created using SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject.

When this object is created it has no attached objects (see page 11).

A Prog Info object is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject.

The setting of the non-recursive delete bit does not have a meaning for Prog Info objects.

### Showing a Prog Info object

When a Prog Info object is displayed on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject it has the following behaviour:

Show type	Position
0 (default)	the underlying window is shown at the last place shown on the screen, or the coordinates given in its template, if it has not already been shown
1 (full spec)	<div>R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate</div> <div>R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate</div> <div>R3 + 8    visible area maximum x coordinate</div> <div>R3 + 12   visible area maximum y coordinate</div> <div>R3 + 16   scroll x offset relative to work area</div> <div>R3 + 20   scroll y offset relative to work area</div> <div>R3 + 24   Wimp window handle of window to open behind</div> <div> <div>-1   means top of stack</div> <div>-2   means bottom of stack</div> <div>-3   means the window behind the Wimp's backwindow</div> </div>
2 (topleft)	<div>R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate</div> <div>R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate</div>

### Changing the version string

Most of the fields in a Prog Info object will remain unchanged at run-time.

The client may wish to set and read the version string field at run-time. This is done using the ProgInfo\_SetVersion/ProgInfo\_GetVersion methods.

### Setting the licence type

If the client wishes to set and read the licence type displayed in the Prog Info dialogue box, then it can use the ProgInfo\_SetLicenceType and ProgInfo\_GetLicenceType methods (described on page 232).

Licence types are one of:

- public domain
- single user
- single machine
- site
- network
- authority.

### Behaviour of the web site action button

The *universal resource identifier* opened when the web site button is clicked can be modified using the ProgInfo\_SetUri method or read with ProgInfo\_GetUri (described on page 236). Clicking the button launches the URI with the SWI URI\_Despatch, then sends an event which other Toolbox applications may wish to monitor.

## Prog Info methods

The following methods are all invoked by calling SWI Toolbox\_ObjectMiscOp with:

- |       |   |
|-------|---|
| R0    | holding a flags word                                  |
| R1    | being a Prog Info Dialogue object id                  |
| R2    | being the method code which distinguishes this method |
| R3-R9 | potentially holding method-specific data              |

**ProgInfo\_GetWindowID 0****On entry**

R0 = flags

R1 = Prog Info object id

R2 = 0

**On exit**

R0 = Window object id for this Prog Info object

**Use**

This method returns the id of the underlying Window object used to implement this Prog Info object.

**C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *proginfo_get_window_id ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId proginfo,
                                                ObjectId *window
                                                );
```

## **ProgInfo\_SetVersion 1**

### **On entry**

R0 = flags

R1 = Prog Info object id

R2 = 1

R3 = pointer to buffer holding version string (Ctrl-terminated)

### **On exit**

R1-R9 preserved

### **Use**

This method sets the version string used in the Prog Info Dialogue's Window.

### **C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *proginfo_set_version ( unsigned int flags,  
                                              ObjectId proginfo,  
                                              const char *version_string  
                                              );
```

## ProgInfo\_GetVersion 2

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Prog Info object id

R2 = 2

R3 = pointer to buffer to hold version string

R4 = size of buffer to hold version string

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required to hold version string (if R3 was 0)  
else buffer pointed at by R3 holds version string

R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the current version string used in a Prog Info object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *proginfo_get_version ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId proginfo,
                                              char *buffer,
                                              int buff_size,
                                              int *nbytes
                                              );
```

## ProgInfo\_SetLicenceType 3

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Prog Info object id  
R2 = 3  
R3 = licence type  
    0 ⇒ public domain  
    1 ⇒ single user  
    2 ⇒ single machine  
    3 ⇒ site  
    4 ⇒ network  
    5 ⇒ authority

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the licence type used in the Prog Info Dialogue's Window.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *proginfo_set_licence_type ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId proginfo,
                                                    int licence_type
                                                    );
```



## ProgInfo\_GetLicenceType 4

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Prog Info object id

R2 = 4

### On exit

R0 = licence type of application

0 ⇒ public domain

1 ⇒ single user

2 ⇒ single machine

3 ⇒ site

4 ⇒ network

5 ⇒ authority

### Use

This method returns the current licence type used in a Prog Info object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *proginfo_get_licence_type ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId proginfo,
                                                    int *licence_type
                                                    );
```

## ProgInfo\_SetTitle 5

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Prog Info object id  
R2 = 5  
R3 = pointer to text string to use

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the text which is to be used in the title bar of the given Prog Info dialogue.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *proginfo_set_title ( unsigned int flags,  
                                             ObjectId proginfo,  
                                             const char *title  
                                             );
```

## ProgInfo\_GetTitle 6

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Prog Info object id

R2 = 6

R3 = pointer to buffer to return the text in (or 0)

R4 = size of buffer

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required to hold the text (if R3 was 0)

else Buffer pointed to by R3 contains title text

R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the text string used in a Prog Info dialogue's title bar.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *proginfo_get_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId proginfo,
                                             char *buffer,
                                             int buff_size,
                                             int *nbytes
                                             );
```

## ProgInfo\_SetUri 7

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Prog Info object id  
R2 = 7  
R3 = pointer to URI string to use

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the URI launched by Prog Info dialogue's web site action button.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *proginfo_set_uri ( unsigned int flags,  
                                           ObjectId proginfo,  
                                           const char *uri  
                                           );
```

## ProgInfo\_GetUri 8

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Prog Info object id

R2 = 8

R3 = pointer to buffer to return the URI in (or 0)

R4 = size of buffer

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required to hold the URI (if R3 was 0)

else Buffer pointed to by R3 contains title text

R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the URI string used in a Prog Info dialogue's web site action button.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *proginfo_get_uri ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId proginfo,
                                           char *buffer,
                                           int buff_size,
                                           int *nbytes
                                           );
```

## ProgInfo\_SetWebEvent 9

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Prog Info object id  
R2 = 9  
R3 = Toolbox event code to raise

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method specifies a Toolbox event to be raised when the user presses the web site action button.

If R3 is 0, then a ProgInfo\_LaunchWebPage Toolbox event will be raised instead.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *proginfo_set_web_event ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId proginfo,
                                                int toolbox_event
                                                );
```

**ProgInfo\_GetWebEvent 10****On entry**

R0 = flags  
 R1 = Prog Info object id  
 R2 = 10

**On exit**

R0 = Toolbox event code

**Use**

This method reads the Toolbox event to be raised when the user pressed the web site action button.

If no event has been specified, then 0 is returned.

**C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *proginfo_get_web_event ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId proginfo,
                                                int *toolbox_event
                                                );
```

**Prog Info events**

The Prog Info module generates the following Toolbox events:

**ProgInfo\_AboutToBeShown (0x82b40)****Block**

+ 8     0x82b40  
 + 12    flags (as passed in to Toolbox\_ShowObject)  
 + 16    value which will be passed in R2 to ToolBox\_ShowObject  
 + 20... block which will be passed in R3 to ToolBox\_ShowObject for the  
          underlying dialogue box

**Use**

This Toolbox event is raised just before the Prog Info module is going to show its underlying Window object.

### **C data type**

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                show_type;
    union
    {
        TopLeft      pos;
        WindowShowObjectBlock full;
    } info;
} ProgInfoAboutToBeShownEvent;
```



**ProgInfo\_DialogueCompleted (0x82b41)****Block**

+ 8      0x82b41  
+ 12    flags  
         (none yet defined)

**Use**

This Toolbox event is raised after the Prog Info object has been hidden, either by the user clicking outside the dialogue box or pressing Escape. It allows the client to tidy up its own state associated with this dialogue.

**C data type**

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
} ProgInfoDialogueCompletedEvent;
```

## ProgInfo\_LaunchWebPage (0x82b42)

### Block

+ 8      0x82b42  
+ 12      flags  
          (none yet defined)

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised after the web site action button on the Prog Info object has been pressed. It allows the client to launch a custom page or perform an alternative action.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
} ProgInfoLaunchWebPageEvent;
```

## Prog Info templates

The layout of a Prog Info template is shown below. Fields which have types `MsgReference` and `StringReference` are those which will require relocation when they are loaded from a resource file. If the template is being constructed in memory, then these fields should be real pointers (i.e. they do not require relocation).

The current version for Prog Info templates is 101.

For more details on relocation, see appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
title	4	MsgReference
max-title	4	word
purpose	4	MsgReference
author	4	MsgReference
licence_type	4	word
version	4	MsgReference
window	4	StringReference
uri	4	StringReference
event	4	word

## Underlying window template

The Window object used to implement a Prog Info dialogue, has the following characteristics. These must be reproduced if the Window is replaced by a client-specified alternative Window template.

Title bar must be indirected.

## Gadgets

Component ids are derived by adding to 0x82b400.

Component id	Details
0	display field (Name of Application)
1	display field (Purpose)
2	display field (Author)
3	display field (Licence Type)
4	display field (Version)
5	label (name)
6	label (purpose)
7	label (author)
8	label (licence)
9	label (version)
10	action button (web site)

## Prog Info Wimp event handling

Wimp event	Action
Mouse Click	trigger launch of the web site button's URI
Open Window	request show the dialogue box
Key Click	if Escape then cancel dialogue
User Message	Message_MenusDeleted hide the dialogue box



---

# 13      Quit Dialogue box class

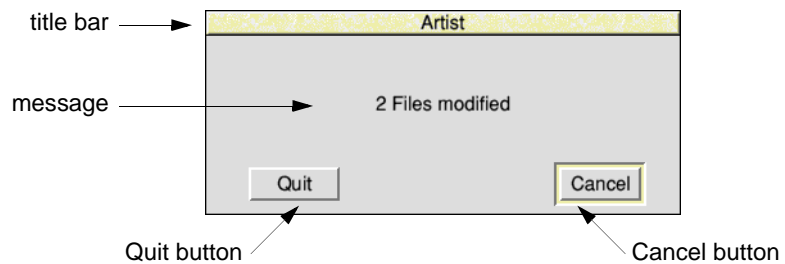
---

**A** Quit Dialogue box is used by the client application when the user attempts to quit the application or shut down the computer whilst there is still unsaved data.

## User interface

A Quit Dialogue object is used to warn the user of quitting without saving unsaved data.

The dialogue box which appears on the screen has a number of components:



- a title bar (by default containing the name of the application, i.e. the message whose tag is `'_TaskName'`)
- a message stating (by default) that there is unsaved data
- two action buttons:
  - a Cancel button (default action button)
  - a Quit button.

The user sees the following behaviour:

- if they click on Quit, the application quits
- if they click on Cancel (or press Return or Escape), the application returns to normal operation.

# Application Program Interface

When a Quit object is created, it has a number of optional components:

- an alternative title bar string instead of the client's name
- an alternative message to use in the dialogue box
- the name of an alternative template to use for the underlying Window object.

If the dialogue box is opened as a transient dialogue box, then it closes when the user clicks outside the box.

Just before the Quit dialogue box is shown on the screen, the client is delivered a Quit\_AboutToBeShown Toolbox event (if enabled by the appropriate bit in the flags).

Once the dialogue box is displayed on the screen, the Quit module handles events for it, and raises a number of Toolbox events to indicate what choice the user has made. These are Quit\_DialogueCompleted, Quit\_Cancel and Quit\_Quit (respectively).

## Attributes

A Quit object has the following attributes which are specified in its object template and can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attributes	Description						
flags word	<table><tr><th>Bit</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>when set, this bit indicates that a Quit_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>when set, this bit indicates that a Quit_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the Quit object has been removed from the screen.</td></tr></table>	Bit	Meaning	0	when set, this bit indicates that a Quit_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.	1	when set, this bit indicates that a Quit_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the Quit object has been removed from the screen.
Bit	Meaning						
0	when set, this bit indicates that a Quit_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.						
1	when set, this bit indicates that a Quit_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the Quit object has been removed from the screen.						
title	alternative title to use instead of client's name (0 means default title)						
max title length	this gives the maximum length in bytes of title text which will be used for this object						
message	the string to use as the message in the Quit dialogue box (0 means default message)						

Attributes	Description
max message	maximum length of string used in dialogue's message field
window	alternative window template to use instead of the default one

Manipulating a Quit object

Creating and deleting a Quit object

A Quit object is created using SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject.

When this object is created it has no attached objects (see page 11).

A Quit object is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject.

The setting of the non-recursive delete bit does not have a meaning for Quit objects.

Showing a Quit object

When a Quit object is displayed on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject it has the following behaviour:

Show type	Position
0 (default)	the underlying window is shown at the last place shown on the screen, or the coordinates given in its template, if it has not already been shown
1 (full spec)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate R3 + 8    visible area maximum x coordinate R3 + 12   visible area maximum y coordinate R3 + 16   scroll x offset relative to work area R3 + 20   scroll y offset relative to work area R3 + 24   Wimp window handle of window to open behind -1   means top of stack -2   means bottom of stack -3   means the window behind the Wimp's backwindow
2 (topleft)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate

**Changing the Quit Dialogue's message**

When a Quit Dialogue object is created it has a default message warning the user that he has unsaved data which will be lost if he quits the application.

This can be set and read dynamically using the `Quit_SetMessage` and `Quit_GetMessage` methods.

**Getting the id of the underlying window for a Quit Dialogue**

The Window object id of the Window object used to implement the Quit Dialogue can be obtained by using the `Quit_GetWindowID` method.

**Quit methods**

The following methods are all invoked by calling `SWI Toolbox_ObjectMiscOp` with:

- R0      holding a flags word (which is zero unless otherwise stated)
- R1      being a Quit Dialogue object id
- R2      being the method code which distinguishes this method
- R3-R9   potentially holding method-specific data

**Quit\_GetWindowID 0****On entry**

R0 = flags  
R1 = Quit object id  
R2 = 0

**On exit**

R0 = Window object id for this Quit object

**Use**

This method returns the id of the underlying Window object used to implement this Quit object.

**C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *quit_get_window_id ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId quit,
                                             ObjectId *window
                                             );
```



## Quit\_SetMessage 1

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Quit object id

R2 = 1

R3 = pointer to buffer holding new message (Ctrl-terminated)

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the message used in the Quit Dialogue's Window.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *quit_set_message ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId quit,
                                           const char *message
                                           );
```

## Quit\_GetMessage 2

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Quit object id  
R2 = 2  
R3 = pointer to buffer to hold message  
R4 = size of buffer to hold message

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required to hold message (if R3 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R3 holds message  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the current message used in a Quit object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *quit_get_message ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId quit,
                                           char *buffer,
                                           int buff_size,
                                           int *nbytes
                                           );
```

## Quit\_SetTitle 3

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Quit object id  
R2 = 3  
R3 = pointer to text string to use

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the text which is to be used in the title bar of the given Quit dialogue.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *quit_set_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId quit,
                                         const char *title
                                         );
```

## Quit\_GetTitle 4

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Quit object id  
R2 = 4  
R3 = pointer to buffer to return the text in (or 0)  
R4 = size of buffer

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required to hold the text (if R3 was 0)  
    else Buffer pointed to by R3 contains title text  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the text string used in a Quit dialogue's title bar.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *quit_get_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId quit,
                                         char *buffer,
                                         int buff_size,
                                         int *nbytes
                                         );
```

## Quit events

The Quit module generates the following Toolbox events:

### Quit\_AboutToBeShown (0x82a90)

#### Block

- + 8     0x82a90
- + 12    flags (as passed in to Toolbox\_ShowObject)
- + 16    value which will be passed in R2 to ToolBox\_ShowObject
- + 20... block which will be passed in R3 to ToolBox\_ShowObject for the  
         underlying dialogue box

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised just before the Quit module is going to show its underlying Window object.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                show_type;
    union
    {
        TopLeft          pos;
        WindowShowObjectBlock full;
    } info;
} QuitAboutToBeShownEvent;
```

**Quit\_Quit (0x82a91)****Block**

+ 8      0x82a91

**Use**

This Toolbox event is raised when the user clicks on the Quit Button.

**C data type**

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;

} QuitQuitEvent;
```

**Quit\_DialogueCompleted (0x82a92)****Block**

+ 8      0x82a92  
+ 12     flags  
         (none yet defined)

**Use**

This Toolbox event is raised after the Quit object has been hidden, either by a Cancel click, or a Quit click, or by the user clicking outside the dialogue box (if it was opened transiently) or pressing Escape. It allows the client to tidy up its own state associated with this dialogue.

**C data type**

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;

} QuitDialogueCompletedEvent;
```

## Quit\_Cancel (0x82a93)

### Block

+ 8      0x82a93

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user clicks on the Cancel button or presses Return or Escape.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;

} QuitCancelEvent;
```

## Quit templates

The layout of a Quit template is shown below. Fields which have types `MsgReference` and `StringReference` are those which will require relocation when they are loaded from a resource file. If the template is being constructed in memory, then these fields should be real pointers (i.e. they do not require relocation).

For more details on relocation, see appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
title	4	MsgReference
max_title	4	word
message	4	MsgReference
max_message	4	word
window	4	StringReference

**Underlying window template**

The Window object used to implement a Quit Dialogue, has the following characteristics. These must be reproduced if the Window is replaced by a client-specified alternative Window template.

Title bar must be indirected.

**Gadgets**

Component Ids are derived by adding 0x82a900:

Component id	Details	
0	button	
1	action button (Quit)	
2	action button (Cancel)	must be marked as default and Cancel action button

**Quit Wimp event handling**

Wimp event	Action
Mouse Click	on <b>Quit</b> button raise Quit_Quit and Quit_DialogueCompleted (if enabled) Toolbox event on <b>Cancel</b> button raise Quit_Cancel and Quit_DialogueCompleted (if enabled) Toolbox event
Key Pressed	if key is Return raise Quit_Cancel Toolbox event if key is Escape act as if Cancel had been pressed



---

# 14 SaveAs Dialogue box class

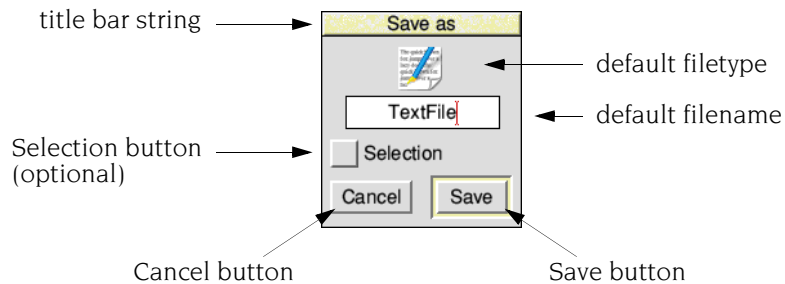
---

Objects of the Save As Dialogue class are used to display a standard (or customised) Save As dialogue box, and to handle the drag of the 'file icon' to its destination, and to request the client application to do the save operation. Most of the Wimp message protocol is hidden from the client.

## User interface

A Save As Dialogue object is used to allow the user to drag an icon representing a document from a dialogue box to another application or to a directory display.

When a Save As Dialogue object is created, it has a number of components:



It is possible to specify the following:

- a default filename to use in the Save As dialogue box
- a default filetype to use in the Save As dialogue box
- a string to use in the dialogue box's title bar, instead of 'Save as'.
- the name of a Window template to use instead of the Save As module's internal Window template.

The default Save As dialogue box, has a draggable sprite to represent the data to be saved, a writable field giving the name to save the data under, a **Save** (default) action button, a **Cancel** action button, and an option button saying whether the whole data or just a selection should be saved. If the client wishes to customise the dialogue box, then the above components must be present in that dialogue box, and must have the same component ids.

If the dialogue box is opened as a transient dialogue box, then it closes when the user clicks outside the box.

The user can interact with the Save As dialogue box in the following ways:

- clicking Cancel or pressing Escape will close the dialogue box, and cancel the Save.
- clicking Save (or pressing Return) will save the data in a file whose name is given by the contents of the Writable Field (if it is a full pathname).
- dragging the sprite to its destination will save the data to that destination, with the 'leaf' part of its name.

When the **Selection** option button is clicked on, then the filename will change to the string 'Selection'.

## **Application Program Interface**

Once the Save As dialogue box is on display, the Save As module handles much of the messaging protocols associated with saving to another application or to a directory display. The client no longer deals in the normal Wimp protocols for data transfer, but instead responds to Toolbox events raised by the Save As module. In fact in the very simplest of cases, the client does no more than just provide a pointer to the data to be saved, and leaves the rest up to the Save As module.

Attributes

A Save As object has the following attributes which are specified in its object template and can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attributes	Description	
flags	Bit	Meaning
	0	when set, this bit indicates that a SaveAs_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.
	1	when set, this bit indicates that a SaveAs_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the Save As object has been removed from the screen.
	2	when set, do not include the <b>Selection</b> option button in the dialogue box. This is used by clients where there is no concept of a current selection.
	3	when set, handle the SaveAs operation entirely in the SaveAs module, from the supplied buffer
	4	when set, client is willing to support RAM transfers
filename	a message string which gives the default filename to use in the writable field	
filetype	an integer giving the RISC OS type of the file being saved	
title	a string to use for the Save As dialogue box title bar, instead of 'Save as' (0 means use the default string)	
max title length	this gives the maximum length in bytes of title text which will be used for this object	
window	an alternative window template to use instead of the default one (null implies default)	

Manipulating a SaveAs object

Creating and deleting a SaveAs object

A SaveAs object is created using SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject.

When this object is created it has no attached objects (see page 11).

A SaveAs object is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject.

The setting of the non-recursive delete bit does not have a meaning for SaveAs objects.

**Showing a SaveAs object**

When a SaveAs object is displayed on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject it has the following behaviour:

Show type	Position
0 (default)	the underlying window is shown at the last place shown on the screen, or the coordinates given in its template, if it has not already been shown
1 (full spec)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate R3 + 8    visible area maximum x coordinate R3 + 12   visible area maximum y coordinate R3 + 16   scroll x offset relative to work area R3 + 20   scroll y offset relative to work area R3 + 24   Wimp window handle of window to open behind -1    means top of stack -2    means bottom of stack -3    means the window behind the Wimp's backwindow
2 (topleft)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate

**Setting the SaveAs Dialogue box's filename and filetype**

When a SaveAs Dialogue object is created, it is given the filename from its template to use in its writable field, and a filetype which will be used to look up and use a sprite (from the Wimp sprite pool) whose name is `file_HHH`, where `HHH` is a 3-digit hex representation of the filetype. If such a sprite does not exist then a sprite called `file_xxx` is used instead. For saving directories and applications the filetype values 0x1000 and 0x2000 should be used. In the latter case, the standard 'App' sprite is used.

Both of these attributes can be set and read dynamically using the `SaveAs_SetFileName/SaveAs_GetFileName` and `SaveAs_SetFileType/SaveAs_GetFileType` methods.

## Summary of how to save data from a Toolbox client

There are essentially three sorts of application:

- Type 1 – an application which will allow the Toolbox to do data saving entirely on its behalf.
- Type 2 – an application which needs to do the data saving itself, but is not willing to support RAM transfers.
- Type 3 – an application which needs to do the data saving itself, and is willing to support RAM transfers.

Let us look at how a client should react to each Toolbox event which it will receive. Notice that these are the only events which the client needs to watch for to achieve the SaveAs operation; there is no need to watch for user drags and window events, and no need to watch for Message\_RAMFetch events. The following is some pseudo-C showing how a client might process Toolbox events delivered to it:

### Type 1

```
switch(toolbox_event_code)
{
    case SaveAs_AboutToBeShown:
        /* call SaveAs_SetFileSize, SaveAs_SetFileName, SaveAs_SetFileType
           and SaveAs_SelectionAvailable if necessary.
           Also call SaveAs_SetDataAddress to tell the Toolbox
           the address and size of data to be saved.
        */
        break;

    case SaveAs_SaveCompleted:
        /* maybe mark a document as 'unmodified' */
        break;

    case SaveAs_DialogueCompleted:
        /* do any tidying up
           maybe delete the SaveAs object if desired
        */
        break;

    default:
        break;
}
```

### Type 2

```
switch(toolbox_event_code)
{
    case SaveAs_AboutToBeShown:
        /* call SaveAs_SetFileSize, SaveAs_SetFileName, SaveAs_SetFileType
           and SaveAs_SelectionAvailable if necessary
        */
        break;
```

```
case SaveAs_SaveToFile:
    /* save the data to the given filename
       and call SaveAs_FileSaveCompleted
    */
    break;

case SaveAs_SaveCompleted:
    /* maybe mark a document as 'unmodified' */
    break;

case SaveAs_DialogueCompleted:
    /* do any tidying up
       maybe delete the SaveAs object if desired
    */
    break;

default:
    break;
}
```

### Type 3

```
switch(toolbox_event_code)
{
    case SaveAs_AboutToBeShown:
        /* SaveAs_SetFileSize, call SaveAs_SetFileName, SaveAs_SetFileType
           and SaveAs_SelectionAvailable if necessary
        */
        break;

    case SaveAs_SaveToFile:
        /* save the data to the given filename
           and call SaveAs_FileSaveCompleted
        */
        break;

    case SaveAs_FillBuffer:
        /* if (address of buffer == 0)
           allocate a buffer for RAM transfer
           if (more data to go)
           {
               fill buffer with data
               call SaveAs_BufferFilled
           }
        */
        break;

    case SaveAs_SaveCompleted:
        /* maybe mark a document as 'unmodified' */
        break;

    case SaveAs_DialogueCompleted:
        /* do any tidying up
           maybe delete the SaveAs object if desired
        */
        break;
}
```

```

        default:
            break;
    }

```

### Setting the File Size for the SaveAs Dialogue

In the file transfer protocol under RISC OS, the sender of a file must specify an estimated size in bytes of the file being saved. This should be set using the `SaveAs_SetFileSize` method, and can be read using the `SaveAs_GetFileSize` method. This value will be used in the initial `Message_DataSave` message which will be sent by the `SaveAs` module when the file icon is dragged to its destination.

### Enabling/disabling the Selection option button

In the dialogue box used to implement the `SaveAs` Dialogue object, there is an option button which is used to show whether the Save operation is to be done on the whole file or just a selection. Handling this button is done entirely by the `SaveAs` module. It is, however, the responsibility of the client to either enable or disable this option button, depending on whether there is a selection currently in existence. This will cause the button to appear greyed out when no selection exists.

The `SaveAs` module provides the method `SaveAs_SelectionAvailable` for this use. The client should typically use this method in response to the `SaveAs_AboutToBeShown` Toolbox event.

### Before the SaveAs Dialogue box is shown

Once a `SaveAs` dialogue has been started by using `Toolbox_ShowObject` on a `SaveAs` Dialogue object, a **SaveAs** dialogue box will appear on the screen. By setting an appropriate bit in the `SaveAs` Dialogue object's flags word, the client will be sent a `SaveAs_AboutToBeShown` Toolbox event before the dialogue box appears. This allows the client to set any relevant state like a different filename, or filetype etc.

### Cancelling the dialogue

If the user clicks on the **Cancel** button or presses Escape (or clicks outside the `SaveAs` dialogue box if it was transient), then the `SaveAs` module delivers a `SaveAs_DialogueCompleted` Toolbox event to the client application (if enabled). This allows the client to update any of its data structures and to clean up any state associated with this dialogue.

### Saving handled entirely by the SaveAs module

If the client is able to supply the data to be saved in a contiguous block of memory (i.e. client type 1), then by setting bit 3 in the `SaveAs` object's flags word, the client can request that the `SaveAs` module handles the entire Save operation itself. To do

this, the client must supply the address of the data (and its size), using the `SaveAs_SetDataAddress` method. Typically the client will do this when it receives the `SaveAs_AboutToBeShown` Toolbox event.

The `SaveAs` module will then conduct the rest of the dialogue. If it receives a `Message_RAMFetch` message from the receiver, it will do a RAM transfer on behalf of the client; otherwise it will do a scrap transfer (or save directly to file if the destination is a filing system). All of this is transparent to the client if bit 3 is set in the `SaveAs` object's flags word.

### **Saving to a file**

If bit 3 of the `SaveAs` object's flags word is not set (thus indicating that the Toolbox cannot do a save operation on the client's behalf), then when the `SaveAs` module wants the application to save to a file, it will deliver a `SaveAs_SaveToFile` Toolbox event. On receipt of this event, the client (type 2 always and type 3 when necessary) should save its data into the file whose name is given in the event block. The client should then use the `SaveAs_FileSaveCompleted` method to inform the `SaveAs` module whether the Save was successful or not. This **must** be done before the next call to `SWI Wimp_Poll`, since the `SaveAs` module will assume this.

The `SaveAs_SaveToFile` event will be delivered if

- the user clicks on **Save**
- a `Wimp$Scrap` transfer is being used
- the user has dragged the file icon onto a directory display.

### **Saving via RAM transfer**

If bit 3 of the `SaveAs` object's flags word is not set (thus indicating that the Toolbox cannot do a save operation on the client's behalf), then the client (type 3 only) may wish to help support RAM transfers if they are requested by the receiving task. This is indicated by setting bit 4 of the `SaveAs` object's flags word.

The client must supply a buffer, into which it places data ready for transmission to the receiving task.

The `SaveAs` module will deal with all subsequent `RAMFetch` requests, and will call `SWI Wimp_TransferBlock` to do the data transfer, and will reply to the receiver using `Message_RAMTransmit`.

The client will receive `SaveAs_FillBuffer` Toolbox events when the buffer has been transmitted, and on receipt of such events should fill the buffer and call the `SaveAs_BufferFilled` method. If the field in the `SaveAs_FillBuffer` event giving the address of the buffer is 0, then the client has not yet supplied a buffer, and they should allocate one. Each `SaveAs_FillBuffer` Toolbox event contains an indication



of how many bytes have been transmitted so far during the transfer. As soon as the number of bytes which the client writes into the buffer is less than the size of the buffer, the SaveAs module assumes that the transfer is complete.

### **Successful completion of a Save operation**

When a Save operation has been successfully completed (i.e. the data has been saved), the SaveAs module will send a SaveAs\_SaveCompleted Toolbox event to the client, and will hide the SaveAs object, unless the user has clicked Adjust on the **Save** button.

One field in the event block passed back to the client is a one-word indication of whether the destination was a 'safe' place (like a filing system) or 'unsafe' (like another application). The client may choose to use this value to decide whether to mark the data as 'un-modified', if the client is an editor.

If the original save operation was started by the user dragging the file icon from the SaveAs dialogue box, then the SaveAs\_SaveCompleted event block also contains the Wimp message reference number of the Message\_DataSave sent by the SaveAs module, to allow the client to use in conjunction with any Message\_DataSaved replies.

### **Completion of the SaveAs dialogue**

When the SaveAs module has hidden its dialogue box at the end of a dialogue, it delivers a SaveAs\_DialogueCompleted Toolbox event to the client, with an indication of whether a successful save occurred during the dialogue.

### **Error handling**

Any errors referring to the SaveAs dialogue box itself will be reported to the user by the SaveAs module. For example, if there is only a leafname in the writable field, and the user clicks on **Save**, then the SaveAs module will display an error box saying 'To save, drag the icon to a directory display'.

The SaveAs module will also report any errors which occur while it is carrying out a Save operation.

The client should report (via SWI Wimp\_ReportError), any errors which occur if it is requested to save to a given filename.

## Save As methods

The following methods are all invoked by calling SWI Toolbox\_ObjectMiscOp with:

R0	holding a flags word
R1	being a Save As Dialogue object id
R2	being the method code which distinguishes this method
R3-R9	potentially holding method-specific data

### SaveAs\_GetWindowID 0

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Save As object id  
R2 = 0

#### On exit

R0 = Window object id for this Save As object

#### Use

This method returns the id of the underlying Window object used to implement this Save As object.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *saveas_get_window_id ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId saveas,
                                              ObjectId *window
                                              );
```

## SaveAs\_SetTitle 1

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Save As object id  
R2 = 1  
R3 = pointer to text string to use

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the text which is to be used in the title bar of the given Save As dialogue.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *saveas_set_title ( unsigned int flags,  
                                           ObjectId saveas,  
                                           const char *title  
                                           );
```

## SaveAs\_GetTitle 2

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Save As object id

R2 = 2

R3 = pointer to buffer to return the text in (or 0)

R4 = size of buffer

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required to hold the text (if R3 was 0)

else Buffer pointed to by R3 contains title text

R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the text string used in a Save As dialogue's title bar.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *saveas_get_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId saveas,
                                           char *buffer,
                                           int buff_size,
                                           int *nbytes
                                           );
```

## SaveAs\_SetFileName 3

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Save As object id

R2 = 3

R3 = pointer to filename to use in writable field

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the filename which is to be used in the Save As object's writable field.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *saveas_set_file_name ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId saveas,
                                              const char *file_name
                                              );
```

## SaveAs\_GetFileName 4

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Save As object id

R2 = 4

R3 = pointer to buffer to return the filename in (or 0) R4 =size of buffer

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required to hold the filename (if R3 was 0)

else Buffer pointed to by R3 contains filename

R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the filename displayed in this Save As object's writable field.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *saveas_get_file_name ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId saveas,
                                              char *buffer,
                                              int buff_size,
                                              int *nbytes
                                              );
```

## SaveAs\_SetFileType 5

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Save As object id  
R2 = 5  
R3 = filetype

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to set the filetype for this Save As object, and hence the sprite which will be displayed in the dialogue box.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *saveas_set_file_type ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId saveas,
                                              int file_type
                                              );
```

## SaveAs\_GetFileType 6

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Save As object id  
R2 = 6

### On exit

R0 = filetype

### Use

This method is used to get the filetype of this Save As object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *saveas_get_file_type ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId saveas,
                                              int *file_type
                                              );
```

## SaveAs\_SetFileSize 7

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Save As object id  
R2 = 7  
R3 = file size in bytes

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to set the estimated file size in bytes for this Save As Dialogue. This will be used in a Message\_DataSave message when the file icon is dragged to its destination.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *saveas_set_file_size ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId saveas,
                                              int file_size
                                              );
```

## SaveAs\_GetFileSize 8

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Save As object id  
R2 = 8

### On exit

R0 = file size

### Use

This method is used to get the file size of this Save As object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *saveas_get_file_size ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId saveas,
                                              int *file_size
                                              );
```



## SaveAs\_SelectionAvailable 9

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Save As object id

R2 = 9

R3 = non-zero means selection is available, otherwise it is not available

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to indicate to the Save As module whether there is a current selection in existence. If there is a selection, then the **Selection** option button will be enabled (i.e. the user can click on it), if not the **Selection** option button will be greyed out.

If the Save As object has no **Selection** option button then an error is returned.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *saveas_selection_available ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId saveas,
                                                    int selection
                                                    );
```

## SaveAs\_SetDataAddress 10

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Save As object id  
R2 = 10  
R3 = address of contiguous block of data which is to be saved  
R4 = size of data  
R5 = address of contiguous block of data, which is the current selection  
R6 = size of selection

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method indicates to the Save As module the address of a contiguous block of memory containing the data to be saved. It is used if the client wishes the entire Save operation to be carried out by the Save As module. It is typically called in response to a SaveAs\_SaveAboutToBeShown Toolbox event. If there is a current selection, then its address and size should also be passed to this method.

Note: This method is only suitable for Type 1 clients.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *saveas_set_data_address ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId saveas,
                                                void *data,
                                                int data_size,
                                                void *selection,
                                                int selection_size
                                                );
```

## SaveAs\_BufferFilled 11

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Save As object id  
R2 = 11  
R3 = address of buffer which has been filled  
R4 = number of bytes written into buffer

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to respond to a SaveAs\_FillBuffer Toolbox event; it confirms that the requested buffer fill has taken place, and states the number of bytes written to the buffer.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *saveas_buffer_filled ( unsigned int flags,  
                                              ObjectId saveas,  
                                              void *buffer,  
                                              int bytes_written  
                                              );
```

## SaveAs\_FileSaveCompleted 12

### On entry

R0 = flags bit 0 set means that the save was successful

R1 = Save As object id

R2 = 12

R3 = filename where the client tried to save the data

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used by the client to report whether an attempt to save the data to file as a result of a SaveAs\_SaveToFile Toolbox event was successful or not.

If this SWI is called with bit 0 of R0 clear, then it will return an error.

Note: This method is only suitable for Type 2 and Type 3 clients.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *saveas_file_save_completed ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId saveas,
                                                    const char *filename
                                                    );
```

## Save As events

The Save As module generates the following Toolbox events:

### SaveAs\_AboutToBeShown (0x82bc0)

#### Block

- + 8      0x82bc0
- + 12     flags (as passed in to Toolbox\_ShowObject)
- + 16     value which will be passed in R2 to ToolBox\_ShowObject
- + 20...  block which will be passed in R3 to ToolBox\_ShowObject for the  
         underlying dialogue box

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised just before the Save As module is going to show its underlying Window object, to enable the client to set its filename and filetype appropriately.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                show_type;
    union
    {
        TopLeft                pos;
        WindowShowObjectBlock full;
    } info;
} SaveAsAboutToBeShownEvent;
```

## SaveAs\_DialogueCompleted (0x82bc1)

### Block

+ 8      0x82bc1  
+ 12     flags  
         bit 0 set means that a successful save was done during this dialogue

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised after the Save As object has been hidden, either by a Cancel click, or after a successful save, or by the user clicking outside the dialogue box or pressing Escape. It allows the client to tidy up its own state associated with this dialogue.

Note that if the dialogue was cancelled, a successful save may still have been done, for example if the user clicked Adjust on Save, and then cancelled the dialogue.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader  hdr;
} SaveAsDialogueCompletedEvent;
```

## SaveAs\_SaveToFile (0x82bc2)

### Block

+ 8      0x82bc2  
+ 12     flags bit 0 set means save only the current selection  
+ 16...  nul-terminated filename to which the data should be saved

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised by the Save As module to request that the client should save its data to the given filename. If bit 0 of the flags word is set, then only the current selection should be saved.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader  hdr;
    char                filename [212];
} SaveAsSaveToFileEvent;
```

**SaveAs\_FillBuffer (0x82bc3)****Block**

+ 8	0x82bc3
+ 12	flags bit 0 set means a selection is being saved
+ 16	size of buffer being used
+ 20	address of buffer
+ 24	number of bytes already transmitted

**Use**

This Toolbox event is raised by the Save As module to request that the client should fill the given buffer (which is the one which the client will have allocated).

If the address returned by this event is 0, then the client application needs to do one of the following:

- reserve memory for buffering and return its address using SWI BufferFilled
- maintain a pointer to the current location in the data to be transferred.

**C data type**

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader  hdr;
    int                 size;
    char                *address;
    int                 no_bytes;
} SaveAsFillBufferEvent;
```

### SaveAs\_SaveCompleted (0x82bc4)

#### Block

- + 8      0x82bc4
- + 12    flags  
         bit 0 set means a selection was saved  
         bit 1 set means the destination was safe (e.g. a filing system)
- + 16    Wimp message number of original Message\_DataSave  
         (or 0 if the save operation was not started via a drag)
- + 20... if bit 1 is set in the flags word (i.e. safe save), then this field indicates the  
         full pathname of the place where the save was done.

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the Save is successfully completed. Bit 0 of the flags word indicates whether just a selection was saved; bit 1 means that the Save was to a place where the data is safe (e.g. it is in a real file, on a filing system).

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader  hdr;
    int                 wimp_message_no;
    char                filename [208];
} SaveAsSaveCompletedEvent;
```

### Save As templates

The layout of a Save As template is shown below. Fields which have types `MsgReference` and `StringReference` are those which will require relocation when they are loaded from a resource file. If the template is being constructed in memory, then these fields should be real pointers (i.e. they do not require relocation).

For more details on relocation, see appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
filename	4	MsgReference
filetype	4	word
title	4	MsgReference
max_title	4	word
window	4	StringReference



Underlying Window template

The Window object used to implement a Save As dialogue, has the following characteristics. These must be reproduced if the Window is replaced by a client-specified alternative Window template.

Title bar must be indirected.

Gadgets

Component ids are derived by adding to 0x82bc00.

Component id	Details	
0	draggable (file icon)	must be sprite only
1	writable field (filename)	
2	action button (Cancel)	must be marked as a Cancel action button
3	action button (Save)	must be marked as the Default action button
4 (if required)	option button (Selection)	

Save As Wimp event handling

Wimp event	Action
Mouse Click	if this is a drag event on the file icon, then set up an appropriate Wimp drag box
ActionButton_Selected	on the <b>Save</b> button then start save operation on the <b>Cancel</b> button then hide the dialogue box, and raise a SaveAs_DialogueCompleted Toolbox event
Draggable_DragEnded (Toolbox event)	start save operation to the destination of the drag (i.e. send a Message_DataSave to the destination window/icon pair.
Key Pressed	if dialogue box has the input focus, and the key pressed is Return, then the <b>Save</b> Button is activated, and a save operation is started if key is Escape act as if Cancel had been pressed.

**Wimp event**

User Message  
User Message  
Recorded

**Action**

Message\_DataSaveAck

```
if (a SaveAs dialogue is in progress)
{
    if (the save can be done entirely
        by the SaveAs module)
    {
        do the save
        send Message_DataLoad to destination
    }
    else
    {
        raise a SaveAs_SaveToFile Toolbox event
    }
}
```

Message\_DataLoadAck

```
if (a SaveAs dialogue is in progress)
{
    raise a SaveAs_SaveCompleted Toolbox event
    If (not an Adjust click on OK)
    (
        hide the dialogue box
        raise a SaveAs_DialogueCompleted
        Toolbox event
    )
}
```

Message\_RAMFetch

```
if (a SaveAs dialogue is in progress)
{
    transfer current buffer contents
    send Message_RAMTransmit to destination
    if (save cannot be done entirely by the Toolbox
        module)
        raise SaveAs_FillBuffer Toolbox event
}
```

Message\_MenusDeleted

```
If (a SaveAs dialogue is in progress)
{
    raise a SaveAs_DialogueCompleted Toolbox event
}
```

---

# 15

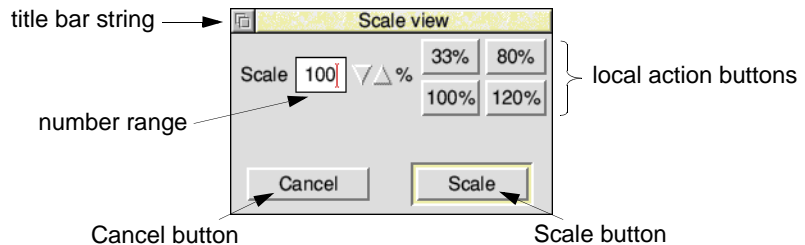
## Scale Dialogue box class

---

**A** Scale Dialogue object is used to present the user with a dialogue box from which he can set the scale factors for a view on a document. This scale is given as a percentage of the original size of the document.

### User interface

The Scale class provides a dialogue box from which a scale factor can be chosen:



The default Scale dialogue box has the following attributes:

- a title bar string
- a writable number range with up/down arrows and a percentage sign to the right of the up/down arrows
- four 'standard' size action buttons with the values: 33%, 80%, 100%, 120% as their text plus an optional **Scale to Fit** action button
- a Cancel action button
- a Scale action button.

The user can:

- type an integral value in the writable field between its lower and upper bounds or use the up/down arrows to adjust the value currently in the field
- use one of the standard size action buttons to set the scale factor. Clicking on these buttons only causes a value to be inserted in the writable field; it does not apply the scale factors
- click outside the dialogue box (if it is transient) or click on **Cancel**, to cancel the dialogue

- click on **Scale** or press Return to apply the scale factors
- if there is a **Scale to Fit** button, then clicking on it will have application-defined behaviour (e.g. Scale to Fit window).

## Application Program Interface

When a Scale object is created it has the following components:

- an optional **Scale To Fit** button.
- an alternative title to use instead of the default.
- alternative bounds and step size for the writable field.
- an optional list of different standard size action buttons where each gives a percentage value to insert into the Writable Field. These will be positioned appropriately by the Scale module in place of the default standard size buttons. When a Scale object is shown, the client will be delivered a `Scale_DialogueAboutToBeShown` Toolbox event (if enabled), just before the dialogue box becomes visible on the screen.

When the Scale dialogue is showing, the Scale module deals with all relevant Wimp events and reports user actions back to the client via Toolbox events. If there are any standard size action buttons in the dialogue box, then the Scale module deals with clicks on them, and inserts the correct percentage value into the writable field.

The client is guaranteed to receive a `Scale_DialogueCompleted` Toolbox event when the dialogue is over (i.e. the user has clicked on Cancel, or clicked outside the dialogue box (if it were transient), or clicked on Scale, or on Scale To Fit).

## Attributes

A Scale object has the following attributes which are specified in its object template and can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attributes	Description	
	Bit	Meaning
flags	0	when set, this bit indicates that a Scale_AboutToBeShown event should be raised when SWI Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this object.
	1	when set, this bit indicates that a Scale_DialogueCompleted event should be raised when the Scale object has been removed from the screen.
	2	when set, dialogue box has a <b>Scale To Fit</b> button
min val		alternative minimum value for the writable field
max val		alternative maximum value for the writable field
step size		alternative step size for up/down arrows
Scale title		alternative title for the dialogue rather than 'Scale View' (0 means use default)
max title length		this gives the maximum length in bytes of title text which will be used for this object
window		the name of an alternative window template to use instead of the default one (0 means use default)
std1 value		value of first std scale button
std2 value		value of second std scale button
std3 value		value of third std scale button
std4 value		value of fourth std scale button

## Manipulating a Scale object

### Creating and deleting a Scale object

A Scale object is created using SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject.

When this object is created it has no attached objects (see page 11).

A Scale object is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject.

The setting of the non-recursive delete bit does not have a meaning for Scale objects.

### Showing a Scale object

When a Scale object is displayed on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject it has the following behaviour:

Show type	Position
0 (default)	the underlying window is shown at the last place shown on the screen, or the coordinates given in its template, if it has not already been shown
1 (full spec)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate R3 + 8    visible area maximum x coordinate R3 + 12   visible area maximum y coordinate R3 + 16   scroll x offset relative to work area R3 + 20   scroll y offset relative to work area R3 + 24   Wimp window handle of window to open behind -1    means top of stack -2    means bottom of stack -3    means the window behind the Wimp's backwindow
2 (topleft)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate

### Before the Scale Dialogue box is shown

When SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject is called on a Scale object, the Scale Class raises a Scale\_AboutToBeShown Toolbox event (if enabled), just before it shows the underlying Window object which implements this dialogue. This will allow the client to set an initial suitable value in the Scale dialogue's Writable Field.

### Applying a Scale factor

When the user clicks on the **Scale** button, or on the **Scale To Fit** button if it is present, the Scale module delivers a Scale\_ApplyFactor to the client, giving the percentage factor to apply. A special value of 0xffffffff is delivered if the **Scale To Fit** button is clicked.

### Cancelling a Scale dialogue

If the user clicks on the **Cancel** Button (or clicks outside the Scale dialogue box), then the Scale module delivers a Scale\_DialogueCompleted Toolbox event to the client application. This allows the client to update any of its data structures and to clean up any state associated with this dialogue.

**Completion of a Scale dialogue**

When the Scale module has hidden its dialogue box at the end of a dialogue, it delivers a `Scale_DialogueCompleted` Toolbox event to the client (if enabled), with an indication of whether a scale factor was reported to the client during the dialogue.

**Reading and setting the writable field**

Normally a client will only need to respond to the `Scale_ApplyFactor` Toolbox event in order to allow the user to set scale factors. If, however, the client wishes to read the current value in the writable field, or to set it explicitly (to a suitable start value when the dialogue box is first shown), then it can use the `Scale_SetValue/Scale_GetValue` methods.

**Reading and setting the bounds of the writable field and step size**

Normally a client will specify the bounds and step size of the writable field in the template description for the Scale object.

These can however be read and set dynamically using the `Scale_SetBounds/Scale_getBounds` and `Scale_GetStepSize/Scale_SetStepSize` methods.

## Scale methods

The following methods are all invoked by calling SWI Toolbox\_ObjectMiscOp with:

R0	holding a flags word
R1	being a Scale Dialogue object id
R2	being the method code which distinguishes this method
R3-R9	potentially holding method-specific data

### Scale\_GetWindowID 0

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Scale object id  
R2 = 0

#### On exit

R0 = Window object id for this Scale object

#### Use

This method returns the id of the underlying Window object used to implement this Scale object.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *scale_get_window_id ( unsigned int flags,  
                                              ObjectId scale,  
                                              ObjectId *window  
                                              );
```



## Scale\_SetValue 1

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Scale object id  
R2 = 1  
R3 = value

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to set the value displayed in the writable field for this Scale object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *scale_set_value ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId scale,
                                         int value
                                         );
```

## Scale\_GetValue 2

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Scale object id  
R2 = 2

### On exit

R0 = value

### Use

This method returns the value in the writable field of this Scale object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *scale_get_value ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId scale,
                                         int *value
                                         );
```

## Scale\_SetBounds 3

### On entry

R0 = flags  
    bit 0 set means set the lower bound to the given value  
    bit 1 set means set the upper bound to the given value  
    bit 2 set means set step size  
R1 = Scale object id  
R2 = 3  
R3 = value of the lower bound  
R4 = value of the upper bound  
R5 = step size

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the lower and upper bounds and step size of the writable field in the Scale object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *scale_set_bounds ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId scale,
                                           int lower_bound,
                                           int upper_bound,
                                           int step_size
                                           );
```

## Scale\_GetBounds 4

### On entry

R0 = flags  
    bit 0 set means return the lower bound  
    bit 1 set means return the upper bound  
    bit 2 set means return step size  
R1 = Scale object id  
R2 = 4

### On exit

R0 = value of the lower bound  
R1 = value of the upper bound  
R2 = value of the step size

### Use

This method returns either the lower and upper bounds and step size of the writable field in the Scale object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *scale_get_bounds ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId scale,
                                           int *lower_bound,
                                           int *upper_bound,
                                           int *step_size
                                           );
```

## Scale\_SetTitle 5

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Scale object id  
R2 = 5  
R3 = pointer to text string to use

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the text which is to be used in the title bar of the given Scale dialogue.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *scale_set_title ( unsigned int flags,  
                                         ObjectId scale,  
                                         const char *title  
                                         );
```

## Scale\_GetTitle 6

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Scale object id

R2 = 6

R3 = pointer to buffer to return the text in (or 0)

R4 = size of buffer

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required to hold the text (if R3 was 0)

else Buffer pointed to by R3 contains title text

R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the text string used in a Scale dialogue's title bar.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *scale_get_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId scale,
                                         char *buffer,
                                         int buff_size,
                                         int *nbytes
                                         );
```

## Scale events

The Scale module generates the following Toolbox events:

### **Scale\_AboutToBeShown (0x82c00)**

#### **Block**

+ 8      0x82c00  
+ 12    flags (as passed in to Toolbox\_ShowObject)  
+ 16    value which will be passed in R2 to Toolbox\_ShowObject  
+ 20... block which will be passed in R3 to Toolbox\_ShowObject for the  
         underlying dialogue box

#### **Use**

This Toolbox event is raised just before the Scale module is going to show its underlying Window object, to enable the client to set its initial value appropriately.

#### **C data type**

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                show_type;
    union
    {
        TopLeft                pos;
        WindowShowObjectBlock full;
    } info;
} ScaleAboutToBeShownEvent;
```

## Scale\_DialogueCompleted (0x82c01)

### Block

+ 8      0x82c01  
+ 12     flags

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised after the Scale object has been hidden, either by a Cancel click, or by a click on **Scale** or **Scale To Fit**, or by the user clicking outside the dialogue box (if it is transient). It allows the client to tidy up its own state associated with this dialogue.

Note that if the dialogue was cancelled, a scale factor may still have been applied, for example if the user clicked Adjust on **Scale**, and then cancelled the dialogue.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
} ScaleDialogueCompletedEvent;
```

## Scale\_ApplyFactor (0x82c02)

### Block

+ 8      0x82c02  
+ 16     unsigned integer scale factor to apply

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user clicks on the **Scale** button or the **Scale To Fit** button (if present), or presses Return.

The scale factor to apply is a percentage; 0xffffffff means Scale To Fit.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    unsigned int      factor;
} ScaleApplyFactorEvent;
```

## Scale templates

The layout of a Scale template is shown below. Fields which have types `MsgReference` and `StringReference` are those which will require relocation when they are loaded from a resource file. If the template is being constructed in memory, then these fields should be real pointers (i.e. they do not require relocation).

For more details on relocation, see appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
min_val	4	word
max_val	4	word
step_size	4	word
title	4	MsgReference
max_title	4	word
window	4	StringReference
std1_value	4	word
std2_value	4	word
std3_value	4	word
std4_value	4	word

## Underlying window template

The Window object used to implement a Scale dialogue, has the following characteristics. These must be reproduced if the Window is replaced by a client-specified alternative Window template:

Title bar must be indirected.

### Gadgets

Component ids are derived by adding to 0x82c000.

Component id	Details	
0	number range (Scale)	must have adjuster arrows, and be writable
1-4	action buttons (standard scale factors)	these should have the text 33%, 80%, 100% and 120%
5	action button (Cancel)	this must be marked as a Cancel action button
6	action button (Scale)	this must be marked as the default action button



Component id	Details
7	label (%)
8	label (Scale)
9	action button (Scale to fit)

Scale Wimp event handling

Wimp event	Action
Mouse Click	on <b>Scale</b> or <b>Scale to Fit</b> buttons, then deliver a Scale_ApplyFactor Toolbox event on a standard size button then enter its value into the Writable Field on <b>Cancel</b> button then hide the dialogue box, and deliver a Scale_DialogueCompleted Toolbox event.
Key Pressed	if key is Return then act as if <b>Scale</b> button had been clicked if key is Escape then act as if <b>Cancel</b> button had been clicked.
User Message	Message_MenusDeleted
User Message Recorded	deliver a Scale_DialogueCompleted Toolbox event.



---

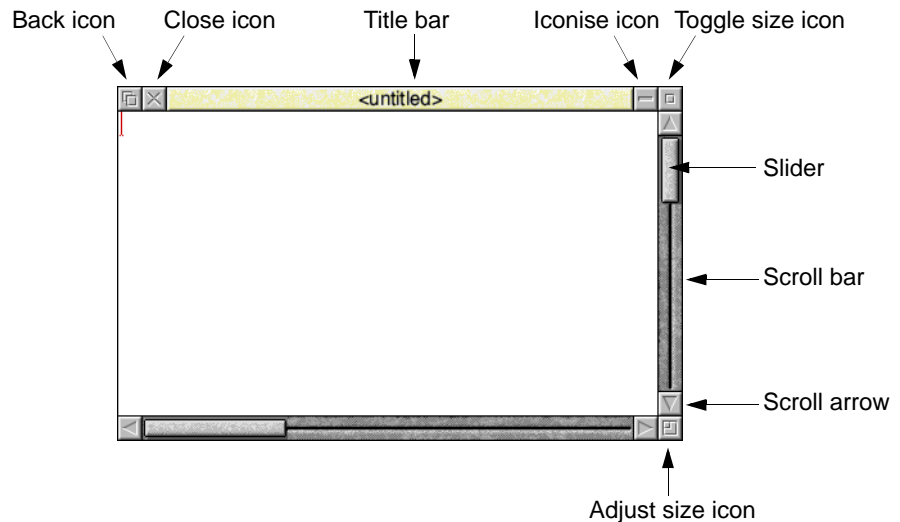
# 16 Window class

---

Objects of the Window class are used by the client application to display its document windows, dialogue boxes etc.

## User interface

A Window is essentially an extension of a Wimp window (in fact part of the Window object definition is a Wimp window definition):



Many Wimp events which are delivered to this Window are dealt with automatically by the Toolbox, based on the attributes of the Window. In this chapter we give further details of exactly what a Window consists of, and the semantics attached to Wimp events for a Window.

The client application is always able to get the Wimp window handle of the underlying Wimp window used to implement this Window object, and can perform all the usual Wimp SWIs on that window (within reason, e.g. deleting an icon belonging to a gadget may have undesirable effects).

# Application Program Interface

## Attributes

A Window object has the following attributes which are specified in its object template and can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attribute	Description												
flags word	<table><tr><th>Bit</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>when set, generate a Window_AboutToBeShown event before showing the underlying Wimp window</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>when set, automatically open this Window when a Wimp OpenWindowRequest is received (when set the client will not see the underlying Wimp requests)</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>when set, automatically close this Window when a Wimp CloseWindowRequest is received (when set the client will not see the underlying Wimp requests)</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>when set, generate a Window_HasBeenHidden Event after hiding the underlying Wimp window</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>when set, indicates that this template is of a toolbar (see <i>Toolbars</i> on page 334)</td></tr></table>	Bit	Meaning	0	when set, generate a Window_AboutToBeShown event before showing the underlying Wimp window	1	when set, automatically open this Window when a Wimp OpenWindowRequest is received (when set the client will not see the underlying Wimp requests)	2	when set, automatically close this Window when a Wimp CloseWindowRequest is received (when set the client will not see the underlying Wimp requests)	3	when set, generate a Window_HasBeenHidden Event after hiding the underlying Wimp window	4	when set, indicates that this template is of a toolbar (see <i>Toolbars</i> on page 334)
Bit	Meaning												
0	when set, generate a Window_AboutToBeShown event before showing the underlying Wimp window												
1	when set, automatically open this Window when a Wimp OpenWindowRequest is received (when set the client will not see the underlying Wimp requests)												
2	when set, automatically close this Window when a Wimp CloseWindowRequest is received (when set the client will not see the underlying Wimp requests)												
3	when set, generate a Window_HasBeenHidden Event after hiding the underlying Wimp window												
4	when set, indicates that this template is of a toolbar (see <i>Toolbars</i> on page 334)												
help message	when a HelpRequest is received for this Window, then this text is sent in a HelpReply message. Note that this Help message is only sent if the gadget (see later) for which the request was received has not got a Help message of its own, or if the pointer is not over any gadget.												
max help	maximum length in bytes of help message												
pointer shape	this gives the name of a sprite to use as the pointer shape, when a Pointer Entering Window event is received for this Window (0 means do not change the pointer shape).												
max pointer shape	maximum length in bytes of sprite name												

Attribute	Description
pointer x hot pointer y hot	the x and y coordinates of the pointer's hot spot. These are relative pixels from the top left corner of the sprite.
menu	the name of the template to use to create a Menu object for this Window
num keyboard shortcuts	the number of keyboard short-cuts which are associated with this Window
keyboard shortcuts	the pointer to the list of keyboard short-cuts for this Window
num gadgets	the number of gadgets which are to appear in this Window
gadgets	the pointer to the list of gadgets for this Window.
default focus	the Component Id of the gadget which is given input focus when the window is shown. If this field is -1 then no gadget will be given input focus if -2 then window will be given input focus (but no caret) allowing keyboard short-cuts to work without having any writables
window	88-byte structure is the standard block which is passed to Wimp_CreateWindow. The window is shown to contain no icons, since these are implemented by gadgets.
internal_bl	the window template to be used for this toolbar. Anchored to the bottom left corner inside the window. †
internal_tl	the window template to be used for this toolbar. Anchored to the top left corner inside the window. †
external_bl	the window template to be used for this toolbar. Anchored to the bottom left corner outside the window. †
external_tl	the window template to be used for this toolbar. Anchored to the top left corner outside the window. †

Attribute	Description
show_event	the event code to be raised when the window is shown.
hide_event	the event code to be raised after the window has been hidden.

† these templates must have the Toolbar bit set.

**Keyboard short-cut**

The attributes of a Keyboard short-cut are as follows:

Attributes	Description
flags word	<b>Bit    Meaning</b> 0      when set, show attached object as 'transient'
wimp key code	the key code returned by the Wimp in a Key Pressed event block, for this keyboard short-cut
key event	this is the Toolbox event to be raised when the Wimp delivers a Key Pressed event with this Wimp key code. 0 means deliver no event
key show	the name of the template for an object to create and show when the Wimp delivers a Key Pressed event with this Wimp key code. 0 means show no object

Note that because keyboard short-cuts work on Wimp key codes, certain key combinations (such as Shift-Ctrl-P) will require the client to provide extra code.

**Gadget**

All gadgets have a common header, followed immediately by a body which is gadget-specific. The header is described on page 338, and the gadget-specific bodies are described in their own sections.

**Manipulating a Window object**

**Creating and deleting a Window object**

A Window object is created using SWI Toolbox\_CreateObject.

When a Window object is created, the following attached objects (see page 11) will be created (if specified):

- menu
- key show (for each keyboard short-cut)

- Toolbars.

See the attributes table above for an explanation of what these objects are.

There are also attached objects which are associated with gadgets in a Window (see later):

- click show (for an action button)
- menu (for a Pop-up menu).

These attached objects are also created when such a gadget is added to the Window, and deleted when the gadget is removed.

A Window object is deleted using SWI Toolbox\_DeleteObject. If it has any attached objects (see above), these are also deleted, unless the non-recursive bit is set for this SWI.

**Showing a Window**

When a Window object is displayed on the screen using SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject it has the following behaviour:

Show type	Position
0 (default)	the underlying window is shown at the last place shown on the screen, or the coordinates given in its template, if it has not already been shown
1 (full spec)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate R3 + 8    visible area maximum x coordinate R3 + 12   visible area maximum y coordinate R3 + 16   scroll x offset relative to work area R3 + 20   scroll y offset relative to work area R3 + 24   Wimp window handle of window to open behind -1    means top of stack -2    means bottom of stack -3    means the window behind the Wimp's backwindow
2 (topleft)	R3 + 0    visible area minimum x coordinate R3 + 4    visible area minimum y coordinate
3 (centred)	the screen dimensions are read and the underlying window offset so that it appears centred on screen
4 (at pointer)	the pointer position is read and the underlying window offset such that the top left corner is at the pointer

### **The Window's menu**

Each Window object can optionally have attached to it a Menu object. The Window object holds the unique id of this Menu object.

When a Window is created, if the client has specified the name of a Menu template for that Window, then a Menu object is created from that template, and the id of that Menu is held in the Window object. This id will be used to show the Menu when the user presses the Menu button over the Window.

Whenever the user of the application presses the Menu mouse button over a Window, the Window class module opens its attached Menu object, by making a SWI Toolbox\_ShowObject passing the attached Menu's id.

If the application wishes to perform some operations on the Menu before it is opened (ticking some entries for example), then by setting the appropriate bit in the Menu's flags word, the application can request that a special Toolbox event (Menu\_AboutToBeShown) is delivered to it before the Menu is actually shown. The precise details of this Toolbox event are described in *Menu events* on page 201. On receipt of such a Toolbox event, the client application is expected to make any changes it wants to the Menu object, and then return to its SWI Wimp\_Poll loop.

In most cases a Menu is attached to the Window at resource editing time by entering the name of the template to use for this Window's Menu. If the application wishes dynamically to attach and detach the menu for a given Window (maybe based on a mode of operation which is defined by the application, e.g. display mode or editing mode), then this can be done using the Window\_SetMenu method described on page 310.

The id of the Menu attached to a Window can be read by using the Window\_GetMenu method.

Window\_SetMenu can only be used when a menu is not already being shown for this Window.

### **Gadgets in a window**

A Window object can optionally contain a number of gadgets. Typically this is used to create dialogue boxes.

There are many kinds of gadget. The Toolbox provides facilities to allow the client application to manipulate a particular gadget in a manner which is appropriate to that gadget, rather than in 'low-level' terms like setting the state of a Wimp icon. The set of gadgets is defined to fit in with the RISC OS Style Guide, and thus to encourage a standard look and feel across dialogue boxes.



Gadgets are normally specified as part of a Window object template, but they can be added to and removed from Windows dynamically at run-time using the `Window_AddGadget` and `Window_RemoveGadget` methods respectively.

Each gadget type defines its own set of methods, and many will have a number of Toolbox events associated with them. This allows the application to receive Toolbox events from user actions, rather than having to deal with mouse clicks and drags on Wimp icons. Much of the low-level Wimp operations are handled automatically by the Toolbox.

Gadgets are described in *Gadgets* on page 337.

### **Keyboard short-cuts**

Each Window object can optionally define a set of mappings from Wimp key codes to Toolbox events. This is particularly useful in allowing the client application to respond identically to a keystroke or an equivalent menu hit, by giving both the same Toolbox event. When a given keystroke is returned by the Wimp for the Window object, the corresponding Toolbox event is raised.

Note that Shift-Ctrl-letter combinations are not allowed.

It is also possible to provide the name of a template for an object which will be created and shown, when a particular keystroke happens. For example the client may wish to display a dialogue box when F4 is pressed. If bit 0 of the keyboard short-cut's flags word is set, then the object is shown with the 'Show with Wimp CreateMenu semantics' bit set in the R0 passed to `Toolbox_ShowObject`.

Sets of Keyboard short-cuts will normally be defined by the client application in its resource file, but they can also be added and removed dynamically using the `Window_AddKeyboardShortcuts` (page 315) and `Window_RemoveKeyboardShortcuts` (page 316) methods, passing as an argument an array of mappings.

### **Pointer shapes**

Each Window object can optionally have a pointer shape defined, giving the name of a sprite to use and its hot spot.

Whenever the Wimp pointer enters this Window, causing a `PointerEnteringWindow` event, the Toolbox changes the pointer shape appropriately.

In most cases a pointer shape is attached to the Window at resource editing time by entering the name of the sprite to be used, and the pointer's hot spot. If the application wishes dynamically to change the pointer for a given Window (maybe based on a mode of operation which is defined by the application, e.g. display mode or editing mode), then this can be done using the `Window_SetPointer` method described in *Window\_SetPointer* 5 on page 311.

The name of the sprite used for the Window's pointer shape and its hot spot can be read by using the `Window_GetPointer` method described in *Window\_GetPointer* 6 on page 312.

### **Help messages**

Each Window object can optionally have attached to it a Help message.

Whenever the Wimp delivers a `HelpRequest` message to the client application for this Window, the attached Help message is sent back automatically by the Toolbox.

In most cases a help message is attached to the Window at resource editing time. A Window's Help message can be set dynamically using the *Window\_SetHelpMessage* 7 described on page 313.

The text of the Help message can be read using the `Window_GetHelpMessage` method.

### **Changing a Window's title**

One of the attributes of a Window which is specified in the template for that Window is the text which appears in its title bar.

A Window's title can be changed dynamically at run-time using the `Window_SetTitle` method.

The current title string can be read using the `Window_GetTitle` method.

### **Getting and setting a Window's client handle**

The client handle for a Window is set and read using `SWI_Toolbox_SetClientHandle` and `SWI_Toolbox_GetClientHandle` respectively.

A typical use of this client handle would be to hold a pointer to a data structure containing the state of a document which is being displayed in this Window in a multi-document editor.

## Window methods

The following methods are all invoked by calling SWI Toolbox\_MiscOp with:

R0	holding a flags word
R1	being a Window id
R2	being the method code which distinguishes this method
R3-R9	potentially holding method-specific data

### Window\_GetWimpHandle 0

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 0

#### On exit

R0 = Wimp window handle for this window

#### Use

This method returns the handle of the underlying Wimp window used to implement this Window object.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_get_wimp_handle ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                int *window_handle
                                                );
```

## Window\_AddGadget 1

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 1

R3 = pointer to description block for gadget

### On exit

R0 = component id

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method adds a gadget to the list of gadgets for this Window object. The format of the description block depends on the type of gadget being added.

If the Window is currently open on the screen, then the gadget will immediately be visible in the Window.

If the gadget's component id is specified as -1, then the Toolbox will allocate an unused component id.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_add_gadget ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId window,
                                             const Gadget *gadget,
                                             ComponentId *gadget_component
                                             );
```

## Window\_RemoveGadget 2

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 2  
R3 = component id

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method removes a gadget from a Window object. If the Window is currently displayed on the screen, then this removal results in a redraw of the Window by the Toolbox.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_remove_gadget ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId window,
                                              ComponentId gadget
                                              );
```

## Window\_SetMenu 3

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 3  
R3 = menu object id

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to set the Menu which will be displayed when the Menu button is pressed over this Window object. The Toolbox handles opening the Menu for you.

If R3 is 0, then the Menu for this Window is detached.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_set_menu ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId window,
                                         ObjectId menu_id
                                         );
```

## Window\_GetMenu 4

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 4

### On exit

R0 = Menu id

### Use

This method is used to get the id of the Menu which will be displayed when the Menu button is pressed over this Window object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_get_menu ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId window,
                                         ObjectId *menu_id
                                         );
```

## Window\_SetPointer 5

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 5  
R3 = pointer to name of sprite to use for pointer  
R4 = x hot spot  
R5 = y hot spot

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to set the Pointer shape which will be used when the pointer enters this Window object. The Toolbox handles setting the Wimp Pointer shape for you.

If R3 is 0, then the Pointer for this Window is detached.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_set_pointer ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId window,
                                             const char *sprite_name,
                                             int x_hot_spot,
                                             int y_hot_spot
                                             );
```

## Window\_GetPointer 6

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 6  
R3 = pointer to buffer  
R4 = size of buffer to hold sprite name  
R5 = x hot spot  
R6 = y hot spot

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required for sprite name (if R3 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R3 holds sprite name  
R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method is used to get the name of the sprite which will be used when the pointer enters this Window object, and to get the pointer's hot spot.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_get_pointer ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId window,
                                             char *buffer,
                                             int buff_size,
                                             int *nbytes,
                                             int *x_hot_spot,
                                             int *y_hot_spot
                                             );
```



## Window\_SetHelpMessage 7

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 7

R3 = pointer to message text

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to set the help message which will be returned when a Help Request message is received for this Window object. The Toolbox handles the reply message for you.

If R3 is 0, then the Help Message for this Window is removed.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_set_help_message ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectId window,
                                                  const char *message_text
                                                  );
```

## Window\_GetHelpMessage 8

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 8  
R3 = pointer to buffer  
R4 = size of buffer to hold message text

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required for message text (if R3 was 0)  
    else Buffer pointed at by R3 holds message text  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method is used to read the help message which will be returned when a Help Request message is received for this Window object.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_get_help_message ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectId window,
                                                  char *buffer,
                                                  int buff_len,
                                                  int *nbytes
                                                  );
```

## Window\_AddKeyboardShortcuts 9

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 9

R3 = number of short-cuts to add

R4 = pointer to memory block containing an array of description blocks for the keyboard short-cuts. Each block is laid out in memory as described in *Window templates* on page 329

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method adds a number of keyboard short-cuts to the list of keyboard short-cuts for this Window object. When a Key Pressed event is received for this Window, the given Toolbox event is raised as the next Wimp event for the client application.

If any of the keyboard short-cuts are already defined for this Window, then they are replaced by the new short-cuts.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_add_keyboard_shortcuts ( unsigned int flags,
                                                         ObjectId window,
                                                         int no_shortcuts,
                                                         const KeyboardShortcut *sc
                                                         );
```

## Window\_RemoveKeyboardShortcuts 10

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 10

R3 = -1 means remove all keyboard short-cuts  
or R3 = number of short-cuts to remove

R4 = pointer to an array of key short-cuts to be removed  
(number given in R3)

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method removes a number of keyboard short-cuts which have been associated with this Window using the Window\_AddKeyboardShortcuts method.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_remove_keyboard_shortcuts ( unsigned int flags,
                                                           ObjectId window,
                                                           int no_remove,
                                                           const KeyboardShortcut *sc
                                                           );
```

## Window\_SetTitle 11

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 11  
R3 = pointer to new text for title bar

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method changes the text in a Window's title bar. If the string is too long for the title bar's buffer, an error is returned.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_set_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId window,
                                           const char *title
                                           );
```

## Window\_GetTitle 12

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 12  
R3 = pointer to buffer to hold title text (or 0)  
R4 = size of buffer

### On exit

R4 = size of buffer required (if R3 was 0)  
    else Buffer pointed at by R3 holds title text  
    R4 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the string currently used in a Window's title bar.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_get_title ( unsigned int flags,
                                           Objectid window,
                                           char *buffer,
                                           int buff_size,
                                           int *nbytes
                                           );
```

## Window\_SetDefaultFocus 13

### On entry

R0 = flags  
 R1 = Window object id  
 R2 = 13  
 R3 = component id

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the default focus component for a window. As with the template, a value of -1 means no default focus, and -2 means put the focus in the window.

Note that this sets the default, i.e. only takes effect when next shown.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_set_default_focus ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectId window,
                                                  ComponentId focus
                                                  );
```

## Window\_GetDefaultFocus 14

### On entry

R0 = flags  
 R1 = Window object id  
 R2 = 14

### On exit

R0 = component id  
 R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method returns the default focus component of a window.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_get_default_focus ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectId window,
                                                  ComponentId *focus
                                                  );
```

## Window\_SetExtent 15

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 15  
R3 = pointer to extent bounding box:  
+0 minimum x coordinate  
+4 minimum y coordinate  
+8 maximum x coordinate  
+12 maximum y coordinate

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method changes the extent of the underlying Wimp window.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_set_extent ( unsigned int flags,  
                                           ObjectId window,  
                                           const BBox *extent  
                                           );
```



## Window\_GetExtent 16

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 16

R3 = pointer to four word block to hold extent

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved and block pointed to by R3 updated:

+0 minimum x coordinate

+4 minimum y coordinate

+8 maximum x coordinate

+12 maximum y coordinate

### Use

This method returns the extent of the underlying Wimp window.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_get_extent ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId window,
                                           BBox *extent
                                           );
```

## Window\_ForceRedraw 17

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 17  
R3 = pointer to area to redraw:  
    +0 minimum x coordinate  
    +4 minimum y coordinate  
    +8 maximum x coordinate  
    +12 maximum y coordinate

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method forces a redraw on the area of the window given by the work area coordinates pointed to by R3.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_force_redraw ( unsigned int flags,  
                                              ObjectId window,  
                                              const BBox *redraw_box  
                                              );
```

## Window\_SetToolBars 18

### On entry

R0 = mask  
    bit 0 set means set internal bl toolbar  
    bit 1 set means set internal tl toolbar  
    bit 2 set means set external bl toolbar  
    bit 3 set means set external tl toolbar  
R3 = object id of internal bl toolbar  
R4 = object id of internal tl toolbar  
R5 = object id of external bl toolbar  
R6 = object id of external tl toolbar

### Use

This method sets the object ids of the toolbars that are attached to a particular window object. If the object is showing then the new toolbars will be shown, and any toolbars of the same type will be hidden (it is not possible to have more than one toolbar of each type). The mask allows selective setting of toolbars.

Passing an Id of zero means that there is no toolbar of that type.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_set_toolBars ( unsigned int flags,  
                                              ObjectId window,  
                                              ObjectId ibl,  
                                              ObjectId itl,  
                                              ObjectId ebl,  
                                              ObjectId etl  
                                              );
```

## Window\_GetToolBars 19

### On entry

R0 = mask  
bit 0 set means return internal bl toolbar  
bit 1 set means return internal tl toolbar  
bit 2 set means return external bl toolbar  
bit 3 set means return external tl toolbar

### On exit

R0 = object id of internal bl toolbar  
R1 = object id of internal tl toolbar  
R2 = object id of external bl toolbar  
R3 = object id of external tl toolbar

### Use

This method returns the object ids of the toolbars that are attached to a window object. By setting the mask it is possible to control which ids are returned.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_get_toolBars ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId window,
                                              ObjectId *ibl,
                                              ObjectId *itl,
                                              ObjectId *ebl,
                                              ObjectId *etl
                                              );
```

## Other SWIs

### SWI Window\_GetPointerInfo (0x82883)

#### On entry

R0 = flags

#### On exit

R0 = x position

R1 = y position

R2 = buttons

bit set

0 adjust

1 menu

2 select

8 not over a toolbox window

R3 = Window id, or Wimp window handle if bit 8 set in R2

R4 = component id, or icon handle if bit 8 of R2 set

#### Use

This SWI is analogous to Wimp\_GetPointerInfo, but returns Object ids and Component ids if the pointer is over a toolbox window.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_get_pointer_info ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  int *x_pos,
                                                  int *y_pos,
                                                  int *buttons,
                                                  ObjectId *window,
                                                  ComponentId *component
                                                  );
```

## SWI Window\_WimpToToolbox (0x82884)

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Wimp window handle  
R2 = icon handle

### On exit

R0 = toolbox object handle for window  
R1 = component id

### Use

This SWI returns the object handle and component id that contains the specified icon.

If the Wimp handle is not known by the toolbox, then the returned object id is 0.

Note that this only applies to Window objects.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_wimp_to_toolbox ( unsigned int flags,
                                                int window_handle,
                                                int icon_handle,
                                                ObjectId *object,
                                                ComponentId *component
                                                );
```

## SWI Window\_ExtractGadgetInfo (0x828be)

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = pointer to an object template  
R2 = component id to match

### On exit

R0 = pointer to Gadget  
R1 = size of gadget

### Use

This SWI returns a pointer to a block of memory suitable for passing to Window\_AddGadget. It is typically used in conjunction with Toolbox\_TemplateLookup and intended to be used for dynamic windows such as the Print dialogue box, or a task manager type application.

Note that the returned area should be copied as it cannot be guaranteed to persist for the duration of the task.

See *Implementing hotspots* on page 56 for an example of using this SWI.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *window_extract_gadget_info ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    const ObjectTemplateHeader *tmpl,
                                                    ComponentId gadget,
                                                    void **desc,
                                                    int *size
                                                    );
```

## Window events

The Window class generates the following Toolbox events:

### Window\_AboutToBeShown (0x82880)

#### Block

+ 8	0x82880
+ 12	flags (as passed in to Toolbox_ShowObject)
+ 16	value as passed in R2 to ToolBox_ShowObject
+ 20...	block as passed in R3 to ToolBox_ShowObject

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised by the Toolbox when Toolbox\_ShowObject is called on a Window which has the appropriate bit set in its template flags word. It enables a client application to set any appropriate attributes of the Window, before it appears on the screen.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader  hdr;
    int                 show_type;
    union
    {
        TopLeft          top_left;
        WindowShowObjectBlock  full_spec;
    } info;
} WindowAboutToBeShownEvent;
```



## Window\_HasBeenHidden (0x82890)

### Block

+ 8      0x82890

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised by the Toolbox when Toolbox\_HideObject is called on a Window which has the appropriate bit set in its template flags word. It enables a client application to clear up after a window has been closed. It is also raised when clicking a non-local action button or clicking outside a window that was opened with 'CreateMenu' semantics.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader  hdr;
} WindowHasBeenHiddenEvent;
```

## Window templates

The layout of a Window template is shown below. Fields which have types `MsgReference` and `StringReference` are those which will require relocation when they are loaded from a resource file. If the template is being constructed in memory, then these fields should be real pointers (i.e. they do not require relocation). Note that the version in the object header should be 102.

For more details on relocation, see appendix *Resource File Formats* on page 511.

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
help_message	4	MsgReference
max_help	4	word
pointer_shape	4	StringReference
max_pointer_shape	4	word
pointer_x_hot	4	word
pointer_y_hot	4	word
menu	4	StringReference
num_keyboard_shortcuts	4	word
keyboard_shortcuts	4	ObjectOffset
num_gadgets	4	word
gadgets	4	ObjectOffset

Field	Size in bytes	Type
default_focus	4	word
show_event	4	word
hide_event	4	word
internal_bl	4	StringReference
internal_tl	4	StringReference
external_bl	4	StringReference
external_tl	4	StringReference
window	88	WimpWindow
data	variable	array of bytes

A WimpWindow is an 88-byte structure with the following fields:

Field	Size in bytes	Type
vis_xmin	4	word
vis_ymin	4	word
vis_xmax	4	word
vis_ymax	4	word
scroll_x	4	word
scroll_y	4	word
behind	4	word
window_flags	4	word
title_fore	1	byte
title_back	1	byte
work_fore	1	byte
work_back	1	byte
scroll_outer	1	byte
scroll_inner	1	byte
title_inputfocus	1	byte
filler	1	byte (must be 0)
work_xmin	4	word
work_ymin	4	word
work_xmax	4	word
work_ymax	4	word
title_flags	4	word
button_type	4	word
sprite_area	4	SpriteAreaReference
min_width	2	half-word
min_height	2	half-word
title_text	4	MsgReference
title_validation	4	StringReference
title_buflen	4	word
num_icons	4	word (must be zero)

#### Keyboard short-cut

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
wimp_key_code	4	word

Field	Size in bytes	Type
key_event	4	word
key_show	4	StringReference
<b>Gadget</b>		
Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
type/size	4	word
xmin	4	word
ymin	4	word
xmax	4	word
ymax	4	word
component_id	4	word
help_text	4	MsgReference
max_help	4	word
data	variable	array of bytes

### Window Wimp event handling

Certain Wimp events for a Window are handled by the Window class, and either acted upon for you, or result in the raising of a Toolbox event. Such events are listed below:

Wimp event	Action
Open Window Request	if the 'auto-open' bit is set for this Window object, then Toolbox_ShowObject is called for this Window
Close Window Request	if the 'auto-close' bit is set for this Window object, then Toolbox_HideObject is called for this Window
Pointer Leaving Window	if there is a pointer shape defined for this Window, then the pointer is set back to its default shape
Pointer Entering Window	if there is a pointer shape defined for this Window, then the pointer is set to that shape
Mouse Click	if the Menu button has been pressed, and there is a Menu object attached to this Window, then the Menu is shown using Toolbox_ShowObject

**Wimp event**

Key Pressed

**Action**

if a keyboard short-cut for the given Wimp key code is attached to this Window, then its Toolbox event is raised as the next Wimp event for the client application

User Msg

Message\_HelpRequest

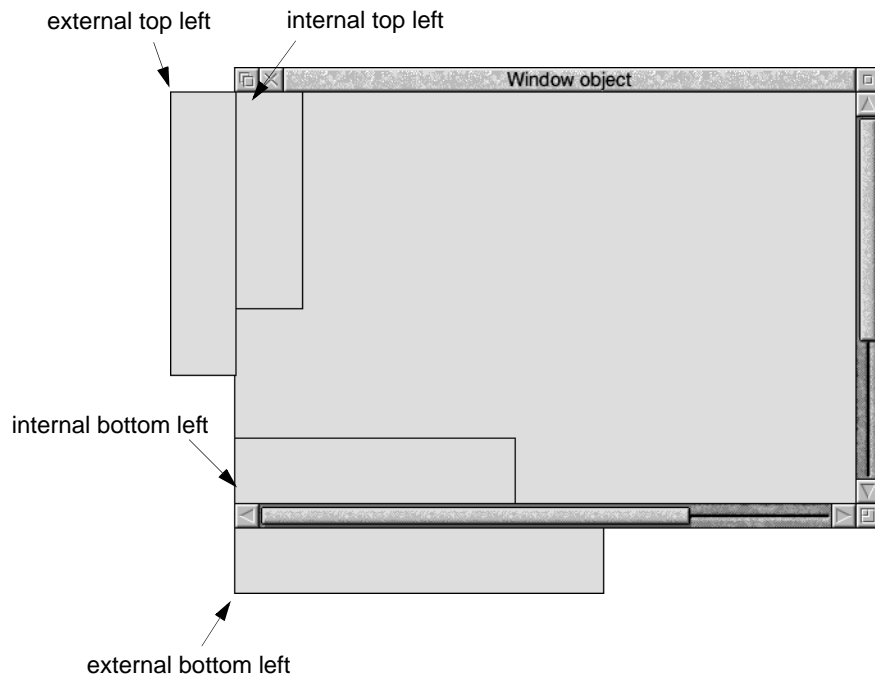
if a help message is attached to this Window, then a reply is sent on the application's behalf

## Toolbars

Toolbars are attachments to windows, and are used mainly as tool boxes and status lines. They cannot exist purely by themselves. By using the toolbars supplied by the Window module, applications will have a consistent mechanism for displaying/accessing such functionality. It is not intended that they be used for anything beyond this.

## User interface

A toolbar is a restricted window object – it cannot have any window furniture (such as a title bar), nor does it have an absolute position when shown on the screen. It is anchored either to the bottom left or to the top left of the parent's visible area; i.e. it does not move or scroll when the parent scrolls its work area.



A toolbar can be considered to be either internal (in which case its size will be clipped when the parent resizes) or external (i.e. lying entirely outside the parent's visible area). On moving a window with an external toolbar close to the extremities of the screen, the bar will 'bounce' over the window until the window itself moves off screen.

Toolbars are displayed in a definite order:

- external toolbars will always be displayed above internal ones
- top left toolbars will always be displayed above bottom left ones.

Usually, this will only be noticed when reducing the size of a window.

For example, when moving a window to the left of the screen, the external toolbar will be displayed above any toolbar inside the window.

## Use of toolbars

### Application tool box

It is anticipated that the top left variety of toolbars will be used as application tool boxes, i.e. they will consist of gadgets that are used to control the behaviour of the application. The decision as to whether an internal or external one is used would typically depend on the number of 'tools' that are required.

### Status lines

Internal bottom left toolbars are usually for status lines. For example:

The data is loading, 50% complete

and external bottom left toolbars for toolboxes that require width (e.g. because they contain a writable) but are unlikely to be as wide as the work area (in which case they would leave an irregular work space).

Note that if a toolbar contains a non-local action button then clicking on it will hide that toolbar.

## Application program interface

### Attributes

Toolbar object attributes are described in the window attributes section on page 300.

Note that a toolbar should not have toolbars itself.

## Manipulating a toolbar

### Creating and deleting a toolbar object

Toolbar objects are created and deleted using the standard `Toolbox_CreateObject` and `Toolbox_DeleteObject` methods.

### Showing and Hiding

A toolbar can only be shown whilst its parent is showing. The only defined show type is `ShowAsDefault`. This will make the window module show the toolbar in the place appropriate for its type. It is possible to hide a toolbar without hiding its parent. If a toolbar is hidden, then this is 'remembered' such that hiding then showing the parent will result in the toolbar still being hidden.

When a toolbar object is displayed on the screen using `SWI Toolbox_ShowObject` it behaves in the same way as shown in *User interface* on page 334.

## Toolbar methods

Toolbars use the same methods as windows (see *Window methods* on page 307). However, the behaviour of the following methods are undefined:

- `Window_SetTitle`
- `Window_GetTitle`
- `Window_SetToolBars`
- `Window_GetToolBars`
- `Window_AddKeyboardShortcuts`
- `Window_RemoveKeyboardShortcuts`

Getting and setting the toolbars associated with a window object are described in `Window_GetToolBars` 19 on page 324 and `Window_SetToolBars` 18 on page 323.

Normally this would be done using `ResEd`.



# Gadgets

## Application Program Interface

Gadgets are not objects in their own right, but exist only as a component of a Window object. Within that object they have unique component ids.

A gadget is essentially a part of a Window which provides functionality (for example, a button or a slider), and is usually implemented using Wimp icons. The use of icons is transparent to the client, who manipulates the gadgets using higher-level, abstract methods which are appropriate to the particular gadget type.

Wherever a gadget is implemented as a set of Wimp icons, the client can access these using low-level Wimp SWIs, but in the vast majority of cases this should not prove necessary.

Some gadgets are 'Composite' in that they consist of gadgets themselves. These are identifiable by the client as they have a NULL icon list. The client will receive toolbox events on both the composite gadget and the gadgets that make them up, but will generally only be interested in the former. Certain gadgets have methods for accessing the component ids of the gadgets that make them up, e.g. `NumberRange_GetComponents`.

Some gadgets support anti-aliased fonts in place of the system font (which may itself be an outline font on RISC OS 3 (version 3.5) and later. When this is the case, the Window module handles mode changes and losing fonts on the client's behalf.

The window module reserves all component ids greater than 0xfffff. Standard dialogues use the range 0x800000 to 0xfffff, leaving 0 to 0x7ffff free for the client.

There are many kinds of gadget. The Toolbox provides facilities to allow the client application to manipulate a particular gadget in a manner which is appropriate to that gadget, rather than in 'low-level' terms like setting the state of a Wimp icon. The set of gadgets is defined to fit in with the RISC OS Style Guide, and thus to encourage a standard look and feel across dialogue boxes.

The available set of gadgets is currently:

<b>Gadget</b>	<b>See page</b>
<i>Action buttons</i>	351
<i>Adjuster arrows</i>	360
<i>Button gadget</i>	361
<i>Display fields</i>	368
<i>Draggable gadgets</i>	371
<i>Labels</i>	379

Gadget	See page
<i>Labelled boxes</i>	380
<i>Number ranges</i>	381
<i>Option buttons</i>	389
<i>Pop-up menus</i>	396
<i>Radio buttons</i>	400
<i>Sliders</i>	409
<i>String sets</i>	417
<i>Writable fields</i>	426

### Attributes

All gadgets have the following attributes which are specified in a window template, and most can be manipulated at run-time by the client application:

Attribute	Description						
flags word	<table><tr><th>Bit</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>30</td><td>when set, gadget is at the back, i.e. created first</td></tr><tr><td>31</td><td>when set, gadget is 'faded'</td></tr></table>	Bit	Meaning	30	when set, gadget is at the back, i.e. created first	31	when set, gadget is 'faded'
Bit	Meaning						
30	when set, gadget is at the back, i.e. created first						
31	when set, gadget is 'faded'						
type/size	this holds the size of the gadget's template (including its header) in its top two bytes, and the type of the gadget in its lower two bytes. The list of currently known gadget types is given below.						
xmin	the minimum x coordinate of the gadget's bounding box (in window work area coordinates).						
ymin	the minimum y coordinate of the gadget's bounding box (in window work area coordinates).						
xmax	the maximum x coordinate of the gadget's bounding box (in window work area coordinates).						
ymax	the maximum y coordinate of the gadget's bounding box (in window work area coordinates).						
component id	this identifies the gadget uniquely within this Window						
help message	when a HelpRequest message is received for this gadget, then this string is sent back in a HelpReply message. If 0, then the help message for the Window will be sent.						
max help	maximum length in bytes of the gadget's help message.						

Note that for the gadgets listed below, the size is 'built in' to the Window module, and so the size can be set to zero though `gadgets.h` defines *gadget\_Type* which includes the size.

The type of a gadget is one of:

Gadget type	Type field
Action Button	128
Option Button	192
Labelled Box	256
Label	320
Radio Button	384
Display Field	448
Writable Field	512
Slider	576
Draggable	640
PopUp Menu	704
Adjuster Arrow	768
Number Range	832
String Set	896
Button	960

## Manipulating a Gadget

Each gadget type defines its own set of methods, and many will have a number of Toolbox events associated with them. This allows the application to receive Toolbox events from user actions, rather than having to deal with mouse clicks and drags on Wimp icons. Most of the low-level Wimp operations are handled automatically by the Toolbox.

Normally all of the gadgets in a particular Window object will be specified in the template for that Window in the resource file, but the Toolbox provides two methods for adding and removing gadgets from a Window object dynamically, namely `Window_AddGadget` and `Window_RemoveGadget`.

All gadgets have standard attributes, which give the gadget's component id in this Window, the gadget's bounding box, and the help message to be associated with this gadget. These attributes are normally specified in the application's resource file; the Help messages can be changed and read using the methods `Gadget_SetHelpMessage/Gadget_GetHelpMessage`. Sending back a help message is automatically handled by the Toolbox.

Each gadget has a flags word which defines the behaviour of that gadget; the exact list of bit settings in this flags word depends on the type of gadget. The client can read and set this word using the Gadget\_GetFlags and Gadget\_SetFlags methods. The top 8 bits of this flags word are generic flags of relevance to all gadgets. The other 24 bits are used to hold Gadget-specific flags. Currently the defined generic flags are:

Bit	Meaning when set
30	Gadget is at the back, i.e. created first
31	Gadget is 'faded'

There is a gadget method which returns a list of Wimp icon numbers for the icons used to implement the gadget. The details of this list and the way in which icon numbers map to the individual components of the gadget are specific to each gadget, and this mapping is documented below for each gadget type. The method is called Gadget\_GetIconList.

This is implementation specific and subject to change in future releases of the window module:

Gadget type	Number of icon numbers returned	Icon list
action button	1	the icon for the action button
option button	2	the icon for the sprite the icon for the text
labelled box	2	the icon for the label the icon for the box
label	1	the icon for the label
radio button	2	the icon for the sprite the icon for the text
display field	1	the icon for the display field
writable field	1	the icon for the writable field
slider	3	the icon for the 'well' the icon for the 'background' the icon for the 'bar'
draggable	1	the icon for the draggable
pop-up menu	1	the icon for the PopUp's button
adjuster arrow	1	the icon for the arrow
number range	0	composite
string set	0	composite
button	1	

Composite gadgets have specific methods to get the component ids of their constituent gadgets. In this way run time methods (e.g. the colour of a slider in a number range) may be applied to the underlying gadgets. It is unlikely however that this will be particularly useful and could in fact affect the behaviour of the toolbox.

## Generic gadget methods

In all of the methods on gadgets

R0	is used as a flags word
R1	holds the object id of this gadget's parent Window object
R2	holds the method code
R3	holds the component id for this gadget
R4-R9	potentially holding method-specific data

The following methods can be applied to all gadgets.

### Gadget\_GetFlags 64

#### On entry

R0 = 0  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 64  
R3 = Gadget component id

#### On exit

R0 = flags settings for this gadget

#### Use

This method returns the flags word for the given gadget.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *gadget_get_flags ( unsigned int flags,  
                                           ObjectId window,  
                                           ComponentId gadget,  
                                           unsigned int *flags_settings  
                                           );
```

## Gadget\_SetFlags 65

### On entry

R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 65  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = new flags settings

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the flags word for the given gadget. The only flags that can usefully be changed are the faded bits. Modifying other bits is undefined.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *gadget_set_flags ( unsigned int flags,  
                                           Objectid window,  
                                           Componentid gadget,  
                                           unsigned int new_flags_settings  
                                           );
```

## Gadget\_SetHelpMessage 66

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 66  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to help message text

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the help message which will be returned, when a help request is received for this gadget.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *gadget_set_help_message ( unsigned int flags,  
                                                  ObjectId window,  
                                                  ComponentId gadget,  
                                                  const char *message_text  
                                                  );
```



## Gadget\_GetHelpMessage 67

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 67  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to buffer  
R5 = size of buffer

### On exit

R5 = size of buffer required to hold help text (if R4 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R4 holds help text  
    R5 gives number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the help message which will be returned, when a help request is received for this gadget.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *gadget_get_help_message ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectId window,
                                                  ComponentId gadget,
                                                  char *buffer,
                                                  int buff_size,
                                                  int *nbytes
                                                  );
```

## Gadget\_GetIconList 68

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 68  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to buffer  
R5 = size of buffer

### On exit

R5 = size of buffer required to hold icon list (if R4 was 0)  
else buffer pointed at by R4 holds list of Wimp icon numbers for this gadget  
R5 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns a list of Wimp icon numbers (integers) for the icons used to implement this gadget. For a composite gadget the size returned will be zero.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *gadget_get_icon_list ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId window,
                                              ComponentId gadget,
                                              int *buffer,
                                              int buff_size,
                                              int *nbytes
                                              );
```

The client should not cache the results of this call, since these values may change at a later date.

## Gadget\_SetFocus 69

### On entry

R0 = flags

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the input focus to the given component of a window. Note that such a component must be a writable field, or a composite gadget which includes a writable field such as a number range.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *gadget_set_focus ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId window,
                                           ComponentId component
                                           );
```

## Gadget\_GetType 70

### On entry

R0 = 0

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 70

R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 = type of this Gadget

### Use

Usage:

This method returns the type of the given gadget.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *gadget_get_type ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId window,
                                           ComponentId gadget,
                                           int *type
                                           );
```

## Gadget\_MoveGadget 71

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 71  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to new bounding box

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method moves an already created gadget within a window. Note that as a new bounding box is given, it allows the gadget to be resized as well, though the exact behaviour of this feature will depend on the gadget type.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *gadget_move_gadget ( unsigned int flags,  
                                             ObjectId window,  
                                             ComponentId gadget,  
                                             const BBox *new_bbox  
                                             );
```

## Gadget\_GetBBox 72

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 72

R3 = Gadget component id

R4 = pointer to 4 word buffer

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method copies the bounding box of a gadget into the supplied buffer.

### C veneer

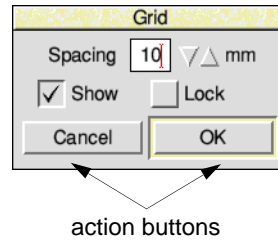
```
extern _kernel_oserror *gadget_get_bbox ( unsigned int flags,
                                           Objectid window,
                                           Componentid gadget,
                                           BBox *box
                                           );
```

## Gadget Wimp event handling

Wimp event	Action
Mouse Click	<p>if Select or Adjust on an action button, option button or radio button member, then if a Toolbox event is associated with this event, it is raised. Otherwise the appropriate default Toolbox event is raised.</p> <p>if on a pop-up menu button, then the associated Menu is shown.</p> <p>if on a draggable then a Draggable_Click/Draggable_DoubleClick is reported.</p>
Key Pressed	<p>This depends on the type of gadget.</p> <p>For a writable field, if the keystroke is a down or up arrow, then the caret is placed in the next or previous writable field (using the field's 'before' and 'after' values).</p> <p>If return is pressed, then the Default action button is activated (if present).</p>
User Message	<p>Message_HelpRequest</p> <p>if a help message is attached to the gadget, then a reply is sent on the application's behalf.</p>

## Action buttons

An action button is normally used to invoke an operation which is available from a dialogue box (e.g. a Cancel button or an OK button):



Such a gadget contains a text string, which is specified when the gadget is created.

The above attributes can be set and read using the methods

`ActionButton_SetText`    /    `ActionButton_GetText`

Whenever the user clicks the Select or Adjust buttons on an action button an `ActionButton_Selected` event is raised with the flags word indicating which mouse button was used. The client can supply an alternative Toolbox event code in the template description for the action button, and can set and read this event code at run-time using the `ActionButton_SetEvent` and `ActionButton_GetEvent` methods.

The client can also specify an object which is to be shown when the action button is clicked on using the Select or Adjust buttons. The name of this object can be given in the action button template or manipulated at run-time using the `ActionButton_SetClickShow` and `ActionButton_GetClickShow` methods.

In a dialogue box, one action button can be chosen as the Default action button. This button is displayed with a distinctive border, and is activated when Return is pressed. An action button is marked as Default by setting a bit in the flags word for the gadget.

One action button can also be marked as the Cancel action button, by setting a bit in its flags word. This action button is also activated when its parent dialogue box has the input focus, and the user presses Escape.

By default, when an action button is clicked using Select, its parent dialogue box is closed. This behaviour can be over-ridden by setting a bit in the action button's flags word, to indicate that it is a 'local' button, whose effect is only to raise its associated Toolbox event. This facility is generally used for buttons which only have a local effect on the state of the dialogue box itself (e.g. a Try button in a font selector).

Clicking Adjust on an action button, raises its Toolbox event and keeps its parent dialogue box open (if it is marked as a Cancel action button, then the contents of any Gadgets are returned to how they were when the parent window was last shown). The Toolbox does not do this for you.

Bits in the flags word for an action button have the following meaning:

Bit	Meaning
0	this is the Default action button
1	this is the Cancel action button
2	this is a local action button
3	if set, then the 'click show' object will be shown transiently (i.e. with Wimp_CreateMenu semantics – default is to show persistently)

## Action button methods

### ActionButton\_SetText 128

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 128  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to text to appear in button

#### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method sets the text which will be displayed in this action button.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *actionbutton_set_text ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId action_button,
                                                const char *text
                                                );
```



## ActionButton\_GetText 129

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 129  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to buffer  
R5 = size of buffer

### On exit

R5 = size of buffer required to hold text (if R4 was 0)  
else buffer pointed at by R4 holds text  
R5 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the text which is currently displayed in this action button.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *actionbutton_get_text ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId action_button,
                                                char *buffer,
                                                int buff_size,
                                                int *nbytes
                                              );
```

## ActionButton\_SetEvent 130

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 130  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = Toolbox event code

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the Toolbox event code which will be raised when this action button is clicked. The rest of the Toolbox event block remains the same as in ActionButton\_Selected.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *actionbutton_set_event ( unsigned int flags,  
                                                ObjectId window,  
                                                ComponentId action_button,  
                                                int event  
                                                );
```

## ActionButton\_GetEvent 131

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 131

R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 holds Toolbox event code

### Use

This method returns the Toolbox event code which will be raised when this action button is clicked.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *actionbutton_get_event ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId action_button,
                                                int *event
                                                );
```

## ActionButton\_SetClickShow 132

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 132  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = object id of the object to show (or 0)  
R5 = show flags  
    bit 0: if clear show persistently, if set show transiently  
    bit 1: if set show centred  
    bit 2: if set show at pointer

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method allows the client to specify the object to show when the user clicks Select or Adjust on the action button. By setting bit 0 of R5 it is possible to control whether the show is persistent or not. Bits 1 and 2 of R5 can be used to control where the object is shown.

If R4 is 0, then no object should be shown.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *actionbutton_set_click_show ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId window,
                                                    ComponentId action_button,
                                                    ObjectId object,
                                                    unsigned int show_flags
                                                    );
```

## ActionButton\_GetClickShow 133

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 133  
R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 = id of object to be shown  
R1 = show flags  
    bit 0: if clear show persistently, if set show transiently  
    bit 1: if set show centred  
    bit 2: if set show at pointer

### Use

This method returns the object id of the object which will be shown when the user clicks Select or Adjust on the action button. If bit 0 of R1 is set on exit, it means that the object will be shown transiently. If bit 1 of R1 is set, the object will be shown centred and if bit 2 is set it will be shown at the pointer.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *actionbutton_get_click_show ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId window,
                                                    ComponentId action_button,
                                                    ObjectId *object,
                                                    unsigned int *show_flags
                                                    );
```

## ActionButton\_SetFont 134

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 134  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to font name to use  
R5 = width in 16ths of a point  
R6 = height in 16ths of a point

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method makes the action button use an anti-aliased font. If the font name is NULL, then the button will use system font.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *actionbutton_set_font ( unsigned int flags,  
                                                ObjectId window,  
                                                ComponentId action_button,  
                                                const char *font_name,  
                                                unsigned int width,  
                                                unsigned int height  
                                                );
```

# Action button Toolbox events

## ActionButton\_Selected (0x82881)

### Block

+ 8      0x82881  
+ 12      flags  
bits 0, 1 and 2 show how the activation was done:  
bit 0 set means Adjust was held down  
bit 1 reserved  
bit 2 set means Select was held down  
If bits 0-2 are all 0, then Return was pressed on a default action button, or Escape was pressed activating the cancel action button.  
bits 3, 4 and 5 indicate what type of button it is:  
bit 3 set means that this is a Default action button  
bit 4 set means that this is a Cancel action button  
bit 5 set means that this is a local action button (i.e its parent window has not been closed)

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user clicks on an action button (or in the case of a default action button presses Return), and the client has not specified their own event to be associated with this button (by setting the event in the template to non-zero).

The returned flags word indicates whether the action button is a default and/or a cancel button, and also which mouse button was used to select the button.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
} ActionButtonSelectedEvent;
```

# Action button templates

Field	Size in bytes	Type
text	4	MsgReference
max_text_len	4	word
click_show	4	StringReference
event	4	word

## Adjuster arrows

An adjuster arrow gadget will be displayed as an up, down, left or right arrow icon, and clicking on the arrow will raise an Adjuster\_Clicked Toolbox event, with an indication of whether the change is up or down:



The adjuster arrow's flags word indicates whether the adjuster is an incrementor or decrementor. There is also a bit to indicate whether this is part of an 'up/down' or 'left/right' pair.

Bits in the flags word for an adjuster arrow have the following meaning:

Bit	Meaning
0	set $\Rightarrow$ 'increment' clear $\Rightarrow$ 'decrement'
1	set $\Rightarrow$ one of an 'up/down' pair clear one of a 'left/right' pair

## Adjuster arrows Toolbox events

### Adjuster\_Clicked (0x8288c)

#### Block

+ 8      0x8288c  
+ 16     (0  $\Rightarrow$  down, 1  $\Rightarrow$  up)

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user clicks the mouse on an adjuster arrow (Adjust clicks on a down arrow are reported as 'up', on an up arrow as 'down').

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader  hdr;
    int                 direction;
} AdjusterClickedEvent;
```

## Adjuster arrow templates

There are no extra fields than those in the gadget header.



## Button gadget

The Button gadget is similar to a Wimp icon. The main differences are that a Button will always have indirected data and that not all icon flags are settable:

- A Button created as sprite only cannot be made into any sort of text Button.
- A Button created as text only cannot be made into a sprite only Button.
- A sprite only Button can only refer to sprites by name and these must be in the Wimp sprite pool or the task's sprite area.

Bits in the flags word for a Button gadget have the following meanings:

Bit	Meaning
0	Use the task's sprite area (requires the window to have client sprite area) for sprite only buttons else use the Wimp sprite pool
1	return menu clicks

## Button methods

### Button\_GetFlags 960

#### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 960

R3 = Gadget component id

#### On exit

R0 = icon flags

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method returns the flags of the given button gadget. The bits have the same meaning as those of a Wimp Icon.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *button_get_flags ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectID window,
                                           ComponentID button,
                                           int *icon_flags
                                           );
```

## Button\_SetFlags 961

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 961  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = clear word  
R5 = EOR word

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the flags of a button. The effect of the clear word and the EOR word are analogous to those of `Wimp_SetIconState`, except that, as described above, not all combinations are settable.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *button_set_flags ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId window,
                                           ComponentId button,
                                           int clear_word,
                                           int EOR_word
                                           );
```

**Button\_SetValue 962****On entry**

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 962

R3 = Gadget component id

R4 = new value

**On exit**

R1-R9 preserved

**Use**

This method sets the value (i.e. text or sprite name) of a Button.

**C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *button_set_value ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId window,
                                           ComponentId button,
                                           const char *value
                                           );
```

## Button\_GetValue 963

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 963  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to buffer to hold string  
R5 = size of buffer

### On exit

R5 = size of buffer required (if R4 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R4 holds string  
    R5 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the value of a Button.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *button_get_value ( unsigned int flags,  
                                           ObjectId window,  
                                           ComponentId button,  
                                           char *buffer,  
                                           int buff_size,  
                                           int *nbytes  
                                           );
```

## Button\_SetValidation 964

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 964

R3 = Gadget component id

R4 = new value

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the validation string (e.g. sprite name) of a Button.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *button_set_validation ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId window,
                                              ComponentId button,
                                              const char *value
                                              );
```

## Button\_GetValidation 965

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 965  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to buffer to hold string  
R5 = size of buffer

### On exit

R5 = size of buffer required (if R4 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R4 holds string  
    R5 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the validation string of a Button.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *button_get_validation ( unsigned int flags,  
                                              ObjectId window,  
                                              ComponentId button,  
                                              char *buffer,  
                                              int buff_size,  
                                              int *nbytes  
                                              );
```

## Button\_SetFont 966

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 966  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to font name to use  
R5 = width in 16ths of a point  
R6 = height in 16ths of a point

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method makes the Button use an anti-aliased font. If the font name is NULL, then the Button will use system font.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *button_set_font ( unsigned int flags,
                                         ObjectId window,
                                         ComponentId button,
                                         const char *font_name,
                                         int width,
                                         int height
                                         );
```

## Button toolbox events

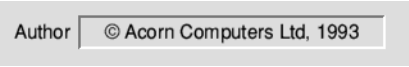
The button gadget does not have any toolbox events. All click or key presses are returned as Wimp events but with the component and window id of the tasks id block updated.

## Button templates

Field	Size in bytes	Type
button_flags	4	Word
value	4	MsgReference
max_value	4	word
validation	4	StringReference
max_validation	4	word

## Display fields

A display field gadget is used to display information in a 'read-only' manner:



The display field has a 'slabbed in' boxed display area in which a text string is displayed. The contents of the display area can be set and read using the `DisplayField_SetValue` and `DisplayField_GetValue` methods.

Bits in the flags word for a Label have the following meaning:

Bit	Meaning
1-2	justification: 0 ⇒ left-justified 1 ⇒ right-justified 2 ⇒ centred

## Display field methods

### DisplayField\_SetValue 448

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 448  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to text string to use

#### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method sets the text string shown in a display field. The change is immediately visible if the parent dialogue box is currently on the screen.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *displayfield_set_value ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId display_field,
                                                const char *text
                                                );
```



## DisplayField\_GetValue 449

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 449  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to buffer  
R5 = size of buffer

### On exit

R5 = size of buffer required else (if R4 was 0)  
buffer pointed at by R4 contains text  
R5 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the text string shown in a display field.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *displayfield_get_value ( unsigned int flags,  
                                                ObjectId window,  
                                                ComponentId display_field,  
                                                char *buffer,  
                                                int buff_size,  
                                                int *nbytes  
                                                );
```

## DisplayField\_SetFont 450

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 450  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to font name to use  
R5 = width in 16ths of a point  
R6 = height in 16ths of a point

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method makes the display field use an anti-aliased font. If the font name is NULL, then the field will use system font.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *displayfield_set_font ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId display_field,
                                                const char *font_name,
                                                int width,
                                                int height
                                              );
```

## Display field templates

Field	Size in bytes	Type
text	4	MsgReference
max_text_len	4	word

# Draggable gadgets

A draggable gadget consists of a sprite, text or text&sprite which appears in a dialogue box, and can be dragged using the mouse. When the drag occurs, if this is a sprite or text&sprite draggable, then the Toolbox will use the standard CMOS bit to decide whether to do a 'solid' drag or a 'dotted line' drag.

Solid dragging makes use of the DragAnObject module allowing both text and sprite to be dragged (unlike DragASprite).

If it is a sprite draggable gadget, then the sprite used can be set and read dynamically using the Draggable\_SetSprite/Draggable\_GetSprite methods.

If it is a text draggable gadget, then the text used can be set and read dynamically using the Draggable\_SetText/Draggable\_GetText methods.

With a draggable of type click or doubleclick, a clicks or double click on the gadget will be returned as a Wimp mouse click event, but the toolbox id block will be updated to reflect the component and window (i.e. no special toolbox event is returned).

When the user begins to drag a draggable, the client can choose to receive a Draggable\_DragStarted Toolbox event. When the drag ends, the client will always receive a Draggable\_DragEnded Toolbox event.

Bits in the flags word for a draggable have the following meaning:

Bit	Meaning
0	warn of drag start using Draggable_DragStarted
1	draggable contains a sprite
2	draggable contains text
3-5	Draggable type: 0 ⇒ drag only 1 ⇒ click, drag, doubleclick 2 ⇒ click selects, doubleclick, drag
6	deliver drag ended events as Toolbox id's rather than Wimp windows (if possible)
7	dragged object has a drop shadow (if solid)
8	dragged object is not dithered (if solid)

## Draggable methods

### Draggable\_SetSprite 640

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 640  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to sprite name to use

#### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method sets the name of the sprite which will be used for this draggable.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *draggable_set_sprite ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId window,
                                              ComponentId draggable,
                                              const char *sprite_name
                                              );
```

## Draggable\_GetSprite 641

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 641  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to buffer (or 0)  
R5 = size of buffer to hold sprite name

### On exit

R5 = size of buffer required for message text (if R4 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R4 holds sprite name  
    R5 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the name of the sprite which is currently being used for this draggable.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *draggable_get_sprite ( unsigned int flags,  
                                              ObjectId window,  
                                              ComponentId draggable,  
                                              char *buffer,  
                                              int buff_size,  
                                              int *nbytes  
                                              );
```

## Draggable\_SetText 642

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 642  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to text to use

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the text which will be displayed in this draggable.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *draggable_set_text ( unsigned int flags,  
                                             ObjectId window,  
                                             ComponentId draggable,  
                                             const char *text  
                                             );
```

## Draggable\_GetText 643

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 643  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to buffer  
R5 = size of buffer

### On exit

R5 = size of buffer required (if R4 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R4 holds text  
    R5 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the text which is currently being used for this draggable.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *draggable_get_text ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId window,
                                             ComponentId draggable,
                                             char *buffer,
                                             int buff_size,
                                             int *nbytes
                                           );
```

## Draggable\_SetState 644

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 644  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = state (0  $\Rightarrow$  deselected, 1  $\Rightarrow$  selected).

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the Draggable's state to either selected or deselected.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *draggable_set_state ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId window,
                                             ComponentId draggable,
                                             int state
                                             );
```

## Draggable\_GetState 645

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 645  
R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 = state

### Use

This method returns the Draggables' state (0  $\Rightarrow$  deselected, 1  $\Rightarrow$  selected).

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *draggable_get_state ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId window,
                                             ComponentId draggable,
                                             int *state
                                             );
```



## Draggable Toolbox events

### Draggable\_DragStarted (0x82887)

#### Block

+ 8     0x82887  
+ 12    flags  
         bit 0 means Adjust is held down  
         bit 1 will be 0  
         bit 2 means Select is held down  
         bit 3 means Shift is held down  
         bit 4 means Ctrl is held down

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user starts a drag of a draggable gadget.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct  
{  
    ToolboxEventHeader    hdr;  
} DraggableDragStartedEvent;
```

### Draggable\_DragEnded (0x82888)

**Block**

+ 8      0x82888  
+ 12    flags:  
         bit 0 clear then:  
         +16      Wimp window handle of end of drag  
         + 20      Wimp icon handle of end of drag  
         or bit 0 set:  
         +16      Window id of end of drag  
         +20      component id of end of drag  
+24    destination x coordinate of mouse pointer  
+28    destination y coordinate of mouse pointer

**Use**

This Toolbox event is raised when the user ends a drag of a draggable gadget. By setting bit 6 when the draggable is created it is possible to receive events in terms of window object ids and gadget component ids. If the drag ended over a non-toolbox window (or bit 6 was zero) then Wimp handles are returned.

**C data type**

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader  hdr;
    int                 window_handle;
    int                 icon_handle;
    int                 x;
    int                 y;
} DraggableDragEndedEvent;
```

### Draggable templates

Field	Size in bytes	Type
text	4	MsgReference
max_text_len	4	word
sprite	4	StringReference
max_sprite_len	4	word

## Labels

A label consists of some explanatory text which appears in a dialogue box. The client application can choose whether the bounding box of the label is shown by a visible box or not.

- a label contains text, which is unchangeable at run-time
- a label can be right-justified, left-justified, or centred, as indicated by its flags word.

Bits in the flags word for a label have the following meaning:

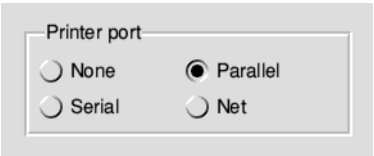
Bit	Meaning
0	omit bounding box
1-2	justification: 0 $\Rightarrow$ left-justified 1 $\Rightarrow$ right-justified 2 $\Rightarrow$ centred

## Label templates

Field	Size in bytes	Type
label	4	MsgReference

## Labelled boxes

A labelled box gadget is used for collecting together a set of related items:



The box has a label which can be either text or a sprite, and this label will appear at the top left hand corner of the box (a bit in the flags word for the gadget indicates whether text or a sprite is to be used). ResEd creates labelled boxes with bit 30 set so that they are created behind other gadgets.

There are no Toolbox events or methods associated with a labelled box.

Bits in the flags word for a labelled box have the following meaning:

Bit	Meaning
0	labelled box has a sprite label (default is text)
1	in the case of a sprite label, the icon is filled if this bit is set, otherwise it is unfilled. This is because certain sprites will sufficiently obscure the border, and may be masked so should allow the tile sprite to show through.

## Labelled box templates

Field	Size in bytes	Type
label	4	MsgReference or StringReference

## Number ranges

A number range is a gadget used to display one of a range of possible integer or fixed point values. The value is shown in a display area, which can either be writable (in which case a writable field is used) or not writable (in which case a display field is used). It is also possible to create a Number Range where there is no display area.

The value which the client gives to a Number Range Gadget (and which it receives back) is a signed integer, to which a 'precision' will be applied. The precision is essentially the power of 10 by which the value should be divided, and the number of places which will be shown after the decimal point. For example to get the value 3.42 displayed in a Number Range the client would pass the value 342 with a precision of 2. Normally the precision of a Number Range is specified when the Gadget is created, but it can be set and read at run-time using the `NumberRange_SetBounds` and `NumberRange_GetBounds` methods. A Number Range can be made to display merely integer values by specifying a precision of 0. The maximum precision is 10, i.e. there can be up to ten digits after the decimal point.

The value displayed in a number range gadget is set using the `NumberRange_SetValue` method. The value passed is an integer which will be divided by  $10^{\text{precision}}$  and will have precision digits after the decimal point. The value of a number range is read using the `NumberRange_GetValue` method; this value is an integer which should be divided by  $10^{\text{precision}}$  to get its real equivalent. A number range has a lower and upper bound which constrains the values to which it can be set; these bounds are in 'integer' terms (i.e. before the precision has been applied). For example if a number range gadget has a precision of 3, and the client wishes to have a lower bound of 1.000 and an upper bound of 4.999, then the lower and upper bounds of the gadget should be set to 1000 and 4999 respectively.

A number range can also be given a step size. The step size is expressed in integer terms (i.e. before the precision is applied). For example if a number range gadget has a precision of 2, then setting a step size of 5 will result in a 'real' step size of 0.05. The bounds and step size can be set and read using the `NumberRange_SetBounds` and `NumberRange_GetBounds` methods.

A number range can also have a pair of adjuster arrows placed 8 OS Units to the right of its display area (either the writable or display field). When the user clicks on these arrows, the value of the number range is either decremented or incremented by its step size, subject to its lower and upper bounds (and displayed using its precision).

A number range can also have an associated slider. The slider is like a slider gadget, except that it can only be positioned relative to the Number Range's display area. The possible positionings are:

- a horizontal slider 8 OS Units to the right of the display area
- a horizontal slider 8 OS Units to the left of the display area.

When both a slider and adjusters are requested, then the adjusters appear at either end of the slider, rather than the positioning outlined above.

If the Number Range is writable, then the underlying Writable Field is given a validation string which will only permit input of numeric digits (0-9), the decimal point character for the current territory (unless the precision field is 0) and where applicable the minus sign. It also has 'before' and 'after' values which are used to move the caret in the same way as described for Writable Fields. Another Writable may reference the component id of a Number Range in its before and after fields.

Whenever the value changes in a number range gadget, the client is informed of the change via an `NumberRange_ValueChanged` Toolbox event, if it has set the appropriate bit in the gadget's flags word.

Included in the definition of the number range is the length of the display field in OS Units (`display_length` as shown in *Number range templates* on page 388). This is ignored if there is no slider.

Bits in the flags word for a number range gadget have the following meanings:

Bit	Meaning when set
0	inform client of value changes using <code>NumberRange_ValueChanged</code>
2	writable (default is read-only display)
3	no display area
4	has adjuster arrows
5-7	slider type: <b>value    meaning</b> 0    ⇒   no slider 1    ⇒   slider to the right of the display area 2    ⇒   slider to the left of the display area
8-9	justification: 0 ⇒ left-justified 1 ⇒ right-justified 2 ⇒ centred
12-15	desktop colour of slider bar
16-19	desktop colour of slider background

Note: slider colours are in the same flag position as a Slider Gadget.

## Number range methods

### NumberRange\_SetValue 832

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 832  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = new value

#### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method sets the value displayed in the number range's display area, subject to its bound constraints. The value will be displayed taking into account its precision.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *numberrange_set_value ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId number_range,
                                                int value
                                                );
```

## NumberRange\_GetValue 833

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 833

R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 holds current value

### Use

This method returns the value of the number range. Note that this is the integer form of what is actually displayed in the display area (i.e. not taking 'precision' into account).

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *numberrange_get_value ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId number_range,
                                                int *value
                                              );
```



## NumberRange\_SetBounds 834

### On entry

R0 = flags  
    bit 0 set means change the lower bound  
    bit 1 set means change the upper bound  
    bit 2 set means change the step size  
    bit 3 set means change the precision  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 834  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = new lower bound  
R5 = new upper bound  
R6 = new step size  
R7 = precision

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method is used to set the lower and upper bounds, the step size and the precision of the number range. Note that the bounds and step size are expressed in terms of an integer before they are transformed using the precision value.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *numberrange_set_bounds ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId number_range,
                                                int lower_bound,
                                                int upper_bound,
                                                int step_size,
                                                int precision
                                                );
```

## NumberRange\_GetBounds 835

### On entry

R0 = flags  
    bit 0 set means return the lower bound  
    bit 1 set means return the upper bound  
    bit 2 set means return the step size  
    bit 3 set means return the precision  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 835  
R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 = lower bound  
R1 = upper bound  
R2 = step size  
R3 = precision

### Use

This method returns the lower and upper bounds, the step size and the precision of the number range, depending on the setting of the appropriate flags bits. Note that the bounds and step size are expressed in terms of an integer before they are transformed using the precision value.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *numberrange_get_bounds ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId number_range,
                                                int *lower_bound,
                                                int *upper_bound,
                                                int *step_size,
                                                int *precision
                                                );
```

## NumberRange\_GetComponents 836

### On entry

R0 = flags  
    bit 0 set means return the numerical field  
    bit 1 set means return the left adjuster  
    bit 2 set means return the right adjuster  
    bit 3 set means return the slider  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 836  
R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 = numeric id  
R1 = left adjuster id  
R2 = right adjuster id  
R3 = slider id

### Use

This method returns the component ids of the gadgets that make up the number range depending on which flag bits are set. Note that the numeric id will be the component id of the Display Field or Writable, dependent on how the Gadget was created.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *numberrange_get_components ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId window,
                                                    ComponentId number_range,
                                                    ComponentId *numeric_field,
                                                    ComponentId *left_adjuster,
                                                    ComponentId *right_adjuster,
                                                    ComponentId *slider
                                                    );
```

## Number range Toolbox events

### NumberRange\_ValueChanged (0x8288d)

**Block**

- + 8      0x8288d
- + 16     new value shown in display area

**Use**

This Toolbox event is raised when the value of the Number Range has changed.

**C data type**

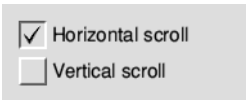
```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader  hdr;
    int                 new_value;
} NumberRangeValueChangedEvent;
```

## Number range templates

Field	Size in bytes	Type
lower_bound	4	word
upper_bound	4	word
step_size	4	word
initial_value	4	word
precision	4	word
before	4	word
after	4	word
display_length	4	word

# Option buttons

An option button is used to indicate whether a particular option has been chosen or not (e.g. case-sensitive in a Find dialogue box). It has two states – on and off:



Such a gadget is displayed with a standard option icon, together with a textual label; the textual label can be read and set at run-time using the `OptionButton_SetLabel` and `OptionButton_GetLabel` methods.

The on/off state of the option button can be set and read using the `OptionButton_SetState`/`OptionButton_GetState` methods.

If bit zero of the flags is set, then whenever the state of the Option Button changes, an `OptionButton_StateChanged` event is raised, with the flags word indicating which mouse button was used. The client can supply an alternative Toolbox Event code in the template description for the Option Button, and can set and read this event code at run-time using the `OptionButton_SetEvent` and `OptionButton_GetEvent` methods.

Bits in the flags word for Option Button have the following meaning:

Bit	Meaning
0	generate a <code>OptionButton_StateChanged</code> when user clicks.
2	when set, this means that the Option Button is 'On' when first created.

## Option button methods

### OptionButton\_SetLabel 192

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 192  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to string giving label to use

#### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method sets the label which will be used for this option button.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *optionbutton_set_label ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId option_button,
                                                const char *label
                                                );
```

## OptionButton\_GetLabel 193

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 193  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to buffer  
R5 = size of buffer

### On exit

R5 = size of buffer required to hold label (if R4 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R4 holds label  
    R5 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the label which is currently displayed for this option button.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *optionbutton_get_label ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId option_button,
                                                char *buffer,
                                                int buff_size,
                                                int *nbytes
                                                );
```

## OptionButton\_SetEvent 194

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 194  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = Toolbox event code

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the Toolbox event which will be raised when the state of this option button changes. The rest of the Toolbox event block remains the same as in OptionButton\_StateChanged.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *optionbutton_set_event ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId option_button,
                                                int event
                                                );
```



## OptionButton\_GetEvent 195

### On entry

R0 = flags  
 R1 = Window object id  
 R2 = 195  
 R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 holds Toolbox event code.

### Use

This method returns the Toolbox event which will be raised when this option button's state changes.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *optionbutton_get_event ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId option_button,
                                                int *event
                                                );
```

## OptionButton\_SetState 196

### On entry

R0 = flags  
 R1 = Window object id  
 R2 = 196  
 R3 = Gadget component id  
 R4 = state (0 ⇒ off, 1 ⇒ on)

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the option button's state to on or off.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *optionbutton_set_state ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId option_button,
                                                int state
                                                );
```

## OptionButton\_GetState 197

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 197  
R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 = state

### Use

This method returns the option button's state (0  $\Rightarrow$  off, 1  $\Rightarrow$  on).

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *optionbutton_get_state ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId option_button,
                                                int *state
                                                );
```

## Option button Toolbox events

### OptionButton\_StateChanged (0x82882)

#### Block

+8      0x82882  
+ 12    flags  
         bits 0, 1 and 2 show how the activation was done:  
         bit 0 set means Adjust was held down  
         bit 1 reserved  
         bit 2 set means Select was held down  
+ 16    new state (0  $\Rightarrow$  off, 1  $\Rightarrow$  on)

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the state of an option button changes, and the client has not specified an event to be associated with this change.

The returned flags word indicates which mouse button was used to select the button.

#### C data type

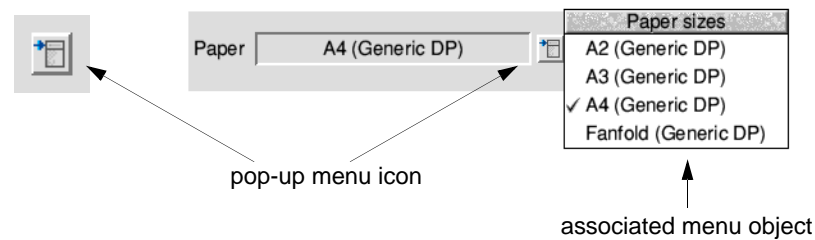
```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                new_state;
} OptionButtonStateChangedEvent;
```

## Option button templates

Field	Size in bytes	Type
flags	4	word
label	4	MsgReference
max_label_len	4	word
event	4	word

## Pop-up menus

A pop-up menu gadget will be displayed as a 'menu-arrow' icon, and its associated Menu object will be displayed when a mouse button is clicked over this icon:



The Menu to be displayed can be set and read dynamically at run-time using the `PopUp_SetMenu` and `PopUp_GetMenu` methods. It can also be done with `ResEd`.

If the appropriate bit is set in the flags word, then a `PopUp_AboutToBeShown` Toolbox event is delivered before the associated pop-up Menu is shown. This allows the client to build a new Menu object and associate it with the pop-up using `PopUp_SetMenu`.

Note that Menu 'hits' will be reported for the Menu object, and not for the pop-up gadget. The Menu will have as its parent, the dialogue box in which the pop-up exists, and the pop-up itself as the parent component. Note also that the associated pop-up Menu may also have its flags word bit set which requests a warning before it is shown; this event will be delivered after the `PopUp_AboutToBeShown` event.

Bits in the flags word for a pop-up Menu have the following meaning:

Bit	Meaning
0	warn using <code>PopUp_AboutToBeShown</code> before the associated menu is shown.

## Pop-up menu methods

### PopUp\_SetMenu 704

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 704  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = object id of Menu to use

#### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method sets the Menu object which will be shown when the pop-up button is clicked on.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *popup_set_menu ( unsigned int flags,  
                                         ObjectId window,  
                                         ComponentId popup,  
                                         ObjectId menu  
                                         );
```

## PopUp\_GetMenu 705

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 705  
R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 = Menu object id

### Use

This method returns the object id of the Menu which will be shown when the pop-up button is clicked on.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *popup_get_menu ( unsigned int flags,  
                                         ObjectId window,  
                                         ComponentId popup,  
                                         ObjectId *menu  
                                         );
```

# Pop-up menu Toolbox events

## PopUp\_AboutToBeShown (0x8288b)

### Block

- + 8      0x8288b
- + 16    object id of Menu object which will be shown  
(note that the 'self' id and component fields will refer to the  
parent Window's object id and the PopUp's component id respectively)

### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the user has clicked on a pop-up button. The Menu is actually shown on the next call to Wimp\_Poll.

### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader  hdr;
    ObjectId            menu_id;
} PopUpAboutToBeShownEvent;
```

# Pop-up menu templates

Field	Size in bytes	Type
menu	4	StringReference

## Radio buttons

A radio button is used for making a single choice from a set of options, and a number of radio buttons are normally used in a 'group'. The group to which a radio button belongs is determined by the radio button's 'group number'.

A radio button is displayed as a standard radio icon, together with a text label. The label for a radio button can be set and read using the `RadioButton_SetLabel` and `RadioButton_GetLabel` methods.

A radio button has two states: 'On' and 'Off'. Only one radio button in a group is in the on state at any one time. When the user clicks on a radio button its state is set to on.



Whenever the state of a radio button changes, a `RadioButton_StateChanged` event is raised, with the flags word indicating which mouse button was used, if the appropriate bit was set in the flags word for the radio button, requesting that a `RadioButton_StateChanged` event is generated. The client can supply an alternative Toolbox event code in the template description for the radio button, and can set and read this event code at run-time using the `RadioButton_SetEvent` and `RadioButton_GetEvent` methods.

Bits in the flags word for a radio button have the following meaning:

Bit	Meaning
0	generate a <code>RadioButton_StateChanged</code> when user clicks
2	when set, means that the radio button is On when first created



## Radio button methods

### RadioButton\_SetLabel 384

#### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 384

R3 = Gadget component id

R4 = pointer to string giving label to use

#### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method sets the label which will be used for this radio button.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *radiobutton_set_label ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId radio_button,
                                                const char *label
                                                );
```

## RadioButton\_GetLabel 385

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 385  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to buffer  
R5 = size of buffer

### On exit

R5 = size of buffer required to hold label (if R4 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R4 holds label  
    R5 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the label which is currently displayed for this radio button.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *radiobutton_get_label ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId radio_button,
                                                char *buffer,
                                                int buff_size,
                                                int *nbytes
                                              );
```

## RadioButton\_SetEvent 386

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 386  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = Toolbox event code

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the Toolbox event which will be raised when the state of the radio button changes. The rest of the Toolbox event block will be the same as for the RadioButton\_StateChanged Toolbox event.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *radiobutton_set_event ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId radio_button,
                                                int event
                                              );
```

## RadioButton\_GetEvent 387

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 387  
R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 holds Toolbox event code

### Use

This method returns the Toolbox event which will be raised when this radio button's state changes.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *radiobutton_get_event ( unsigned int flags,  
                                                ObjectId window,  
                                                ComponentId radio_button,  
                                                int *event  
                                                );
```

---

## RadioButton\_SetState 388

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 388  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = state (0  $\Rightarrow$  Off, 1  $\Rightarrow$  On)

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the state of the radio button to On or Off. When a button which is Off is set to On, the button which was previously On is set to Off. If by setting the radio button to Off, this would result in no button being On in the group, then an error is returned.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *radiobutton_set_state ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId radio_button,
                                                int state
                                                );
```

## RadioButton\_GetState 389

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 389  
R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 = state (0  $\Rightarrow$  Off, 1  $\Rightarrow$  On)  
R1 = component id of radio button which is On in the group

### Use

This method returns the state of the given radio button.

The client can determine which radio button is On in a group by calling this method for any one button in the group, since the component id of the On button is also returned (in R1).

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *radiobutton_get_state ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId radio_button,
                                                int *state,
                                                Component Id *selected
                                              );
```

---

## RadioButton\_SetFont 390

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 390  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to font name to use  
R5 = width in 16ths of a point  
R6 = height in 16ths of a point

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method makes the radio button use an anti-aliased font. If the font name is NULL, then the button will use system font.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *radiobutton_set_font ( unsigned int flags,
                                              ObjectId window,
                                              ComponentId radio_button,
                                              const char *font_name,
                                              unsigned int width,
                                              unsigned int height
                                              );
```

## Radio button Toolbox events

### RadioButton\_StateChanged (0x82883)

#### Block

+ 8      0x82883  
+ 12      flags  
            bits 0, 1 and 2 show how the activation was done:  
                bit 0 set means Adjust was held down  
                bit 1 is reserved  
                bit 2 set means Select was held down  
+16      state (0  $\Rightarrow$  Off, 1  $\Rightarrow$  On)  
+20      component id of the radio button within the group which  
            was On before this state change

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the state of a radio button changes, and the client has not specified an event to be associated with this change.

The returned flags word indicates which mouse button was used to select the radio button.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    int                 state;
    ComponentId         old_on_button;
} RadioButtonStateChangedEvent;
```

## Radio button templates

Field	Size in bytes	Type
group_number	4	word
label	4	MsgReference
max_label_len	4	word
event	4	word



# Sliders

A slider gadget is used to display a 'bar', which may be draggable by the user, displayed in a 'well'. Whether the slider is draggable or not is indicated by its flags word:



By setting a bit in the slider's flags word the client can request that all changes in the slider's value are returned as the bar is dragged. Alternatively it may request to receive value changes only when the bar dragging stops (i.e. when the user releases the mouse button). Such changes are reported via the Slider\_ValueChanged Toolbox event.

A slider is specified as either being 'vertical' or 'horizontal'.

A slider has associated with it an initial value, a minimum value, a maximum value, and a step size. If the slider is draggable (indicated by a flags bit), then when the user drags the bar with the mouse, the bar moves a number of pixels commensurate with the step size, and the bounding box of the slider.

The maximum and minimum values and the step size can be set and read dynamically using the Slider\_SetBound/Slider\_GetBound methods.

A Slider also has associated with it, the colour used for its 'bar' – this is a Desktop colour. This is normally specified in the resource file, but can be set and read dynamically using the Slider\_SetColour/Slider\_GetColour methods.

The current value of the slider can be set and read using the Slider\_SetValue/Slider\_GetValue methods.

Bits in the flags word for a slider have the following meaning:

Bit	Meaning
0	if set then deliver value changes when user clicks/drags
1	if set then deliver value changes constantly whilst dragging else just at start/end
3	if set means slider is vertical (default is horizontal)
4	if set then bar is draggable/clickable
12-15	the desktop colour of the bar
16-19	the desktop colour of the background

## Slider methods

### Slider\_SetValue 576

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 576  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = integer value

#### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method sets the value of a slider. The slider's bar is changed accordingly.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *slider_set_value ( unsigned int flags,  
                                           ObjectId window,  
                                           ComponentId slider,  
                                           int value  
                                           );
```

## Slider\_GetValue 577

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 577

R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 = slider's value

### Use

This method returns the value of a slider.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *slider_get_value ( unsigned int flags,  
                                           ObjectId window,  
                                           ComponentId slider,  
                                           int *value  
                                           );
```

## Slider\_SetBounds 58

### On entry

R0 = flags  
    bit 0 set means set lower bound  
    bit 1 set means set upper bound  
    bit 2 set means set step size  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 578  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = lower bound  
R5 = upper bound  
R6 = step size

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets the lower bound, upper bound and step size of a slider gadget.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *slider_set_bounds( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId window,
                                           ComponentId slider,
                                           int lower_bound,
                                           int upper_bound,
                                           int step_size
                                           );
```

## Slider\_GetBounds 579

### On entry

R0 = flags  
    bit 0 set means return lower bound  
    bit 1 set means return upper bound  
    bit 2 set means return step size  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 579  
R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 = lower bound  
R1 = upper bound  
R2 = step size

### Use

This method returns the lower bound, upper bound and step size of a slider gadget.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *slider_get_bounds( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId window,
                                           ComponentId slider,
                                           int *lower_bound,
                                           int *upper_bound,
                                           int *step_size
                                           );
```

## **Slider\_SetColour 580**

### **On entry**

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 580  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = Desktop colour value for bar  
R5 = Desktop colour value for background

### **On exit**

R1-R9 preserved

### **Use**

This method sets the Desktop colour used in a slider.

### **C veneer**

```
extern _kernel_oserror *slider_set_colour ( unsigned int flags,  
                                           ObjectId window,  
                                           ComponentId slider,  
                                           int bar_colour,  
                                           int back_colour  
                                           );
```

## Slider\_GetColour 581

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 581

R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 = Desktop colour value for bar

R1 = Desktop colour value for background

### Use

This method returns the Desktop colour used in a slider.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *slider_get_colour ( unsigned int flags,
                                           ObjectId window,
                                           ComponentId slider,
                                           int *bar_colour,
                                           int *back_colour
                                           );
```

Slider Toolbox events

Slider\_ValueChanged (0x82886)

Block									
+ 8	0x82886								
+ 12	flags:								
	bits 0-2:								
	<table><tr><th>value</th><th>description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>means 'start of drag or just click'</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>means 'drag has ended'</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>means 'drag still in progress'</td></tr></table>	value	description	0	means 'start of drag or just click'	1	means 'drag has ended'	2	means 'drag still in progress'
value	description								
0	means 'start of drag or just click'								
1	means 'drag has ended'								
2	means 'drag still in progress'								
+ 16	new value of slider.								

Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the value of the slider has changed. This may be due to an update caused by a user action (e.g. dragging the bar).

C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader  hdr;
    int                 new_value;
} SliderValueChangedEvent;
```

Slider templates

Field	Size in bytes	Type
lower_bound	4	word
upper_bound	4	word
step_size	4	word
initial_value	4	word



## String sets

A string set is a gadget used to display one of an ordered set of text strings.

The string which is shown in the display area is known as the 'selected string'. The display area can be either writable (in which case a writable field is used) or not writable (in which case a display field is used).

A string set has a pop-up Menu placed 8 OS Units to the right of the display area. The client supplies a set of available strings, and the Toolbox will display the selected string in the string set's display area. The Toolbox will build a Menu on the client's behalf, and display it when the pop-up menu button is clicked. The selected string will be shown as ticked in the Menu, and hits on the Menu will result in the string corresponding to the Menu entry text becoming the selected string.

If the string set is writable, then if the user enters a string which is not in the string set, no entry would be shown as ticked in an associated pop-up Menu.

The set of available strings can be set at run-time using the `StringSet_SetAvailable` method. The selected string is set and read using the `StringSet_SetSelected` and `StringSet_GetSelected` methods.

Whenever the selected string changes in a string set gadget, the client is informed of the change via a `StringSet_ValueChanged` Toolbox event, if it has set the appropriate bit in the gadget's flags word.

If a string set is writable, it can also have a set of allowable characters which the user can type into the display area. This is identical to the 'a' directive used in a Wimp icon's validation string.

The set of allowable characters can be set at run-time using the `StringSet_SetAllowable` method.

In the template description for a writable string set, the client specifies the component ids of any writable fields which come before and after it. These are used to move the caret between writable fields when the user presses the arrow and tab keys. A special value of -1 indicates that there is no writable field before or after this one.

Bits in the flags word for a string set gadget have the following meanings:

Bit	Meaning
0	inform client of changes to the selected string using <code>StringSet_ValueChanged</code>
1	writable (default is read-only display)
3	inform client just before showing the menu

Bit	Meaning
4	does not have any display field or writable
5-6	justification: 0 $\Rightarrow$ left-justified 1 $\Rightarrow$ right-justified 2 $\Rightarrow$ centred

## String set methods

### StringSet\_SetAvailable 896

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 896  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to block of contiguous strings which are to be used as the available set of strings

#### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method is used to set the available set of strings in a string set, and a pop-up menu will be built from them. Strings are separated using a comma (','), a comma must be escaped using the \ character, if the client wishes it to appear in the display area. To get the \ character itself, \\ should be used.

Note that there is no StringSet\_GetAvailable.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *stringset_set_available ( unsigned int flags,  
                                                ObjectId window,  
                                                ComponentId string_set,  
                                                const char *strings  
                                                );
```

## StringSet\_SetSelected 898

### On entry

R0 = flags

bit 0 set means index of string is supplied in R4

clear means the string itself is supplied

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 898

R3 = Gadget component id

R4 = pointer to string to be selected or R4 = index of string to be selected

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method sets which string in the string set is selected. The string can either be specified as a text string or as an index into the array of available strings (depending on the setting of bit 0 in the flags word). The selected string is shown in the string set's display area, and will be ticked in the associated pop-up Menu.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *stringset_set_selected ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId string_set,
                                                const char *string_to_select
                                                );
```

## StringSet\_GetSelected 899

### On entry

R0 = flags  
    bit 0 set means return index of selected string  
    clear means the string itself is returned  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 899  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = index of selected string or R4 = pointer to buffer to hold selected string  
R5 = size of buffer

### On exit

R0 = index of selected string (if bit 0 of flags word was set)  
    else  
        if R4 was 0 then R5 holds size of buffer required  
    else  
        buffer pointed at by R4 holds selected string  
    R5 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the currently selected string for this string set (i.e. the one shown in the display area). This may be either an index into the set of available strings or a buffer containing the string itself. If the selected string is not in the available set (e.g. it has been typed into a writable string set), then the value -1 is returned if an index is requested (by setting bit 0 of the flags word for this call).

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *stringset_get_selected ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId string_set,
                                                ...
                                                );
```

---

## StringSet\_SetAllowable 900

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 900

R3 = Gadget component id

R4 = pointer to string giving new set of allowable characters

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method defines the set of allowable characters which can be typed into a writable string set. The set is specified in the same way as a Wimp 'a' validation string directive (without including the letter 'a').

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *stringset_set_allowable ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId string_set,
                                                const char *allowable
                                                );
```

## StringSet\_GetComponents 902

### On entry

R0 = flags  
    bit 0 set means return the alphanumerical field  
    bit 1 set means return the popup menu  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 902  
R3 = Gadget component id

### On exit

R0 = alphanumeric id  
R1 = popup id

### Use

This method returns the component ids of the gadgets that make up the string set depending on which flag bits are set. Note that the alphanumeric id will be the component id of the Display Field or Writable, dependent on how the Gadget was created.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *stringset_get_components ( unsigned int flags,
                                                  ObjectId window,
                                                  ComponentId string_set,
                                                  ComponentId *alphanumeric_field,
                                                  ComponentId *popup_menu
                                                  );
```

---

## StringSet\_SetFont 903

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 903  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to font name to use  
R5 = width in 16ths of a point  
R6 = height in 16ths of a point

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method makes the action button use an anti-aliased font. If the font name is NULL, then the string set will use system font.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *stringset_set_font ( unsigned int flags,
                                             ObjectId window,
                                             ComponentId string_set,
                                             const char *font_name,
                                             unsigned int width,
                                             unsigned int height
                                           );
```

## String set Toolbox events

### StringSet\_ValueChanged (0x8288e)

#### Block

+ 8      0x8288e  
+ 12      flags  
          if bit 0 is set, then the text string was too long to fit into the event block  
+ 16...   text string shown in string set's display area (or null string if too long to fit)

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the value of the string set has changed. If the text string was too long to fit into the event block, then bit 0 of the flags word is set.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader  hdr;
    char
    string[sizeof(ToolboxEvent)-sizeof(ToolboxEventHeader)];
} StringSetValueChangedEvent;
```

### StringSet\_AboutToBeShown (0x8288f)

#### Block

+ 8      0x8288f

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised just before the string set's menu is to be shown. This allows the client to make changes to the string set just when it is used, rather than continually.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader  hdr;
} StringSetAboutToBeShownEvent;
```



**String set templates**

Field	Size in bytes	Type
string_set	4	MsgReference
initial_selected_string	4	MsgReference
max_selected_string_len	4	word
allowable	4	MsgReference
max_allowable	4	word
before	4	word
after	4	word

## Writable fields

The writable field has a boxed display area in which a text string is displayed and can be edited by the user. The contents of the display area can be set and read using the `WritableField_SetValue` and `WritableField_GetValue` methods. The user can click the mouse in a writable field and enter its value from the keyboard:



Whenever the value in a writable field is changed, the client receives a `WritableField_ValueChanged` Toolbox event, if it has set the appropriate bit in the flags word. This will happen when the user presses a key whilst the caret is in it.

Note that it is possible to get different values from `Writable_GetValue` on subsequent calls, without receiving a `ValueChanged` Event in between. This is because the value represents what is actually visible in the gadget.

A writable field can also have a set of allowable characters which the user can type into the display area. This is identical to the 'a' directive used in a Wimp icon's validation string.

The set of allowable characters can be set at run-time using the `WritableField_SetAllowable` method. To allow all characters, this attribute should be `NULL`.

In the template description for a writable field, the client specifies the component ids of writable fields which come 'before' and 'after' it. These are used to move the caret between writable fields when the user presses the arrow and tab keys. A special value of `-1` indicates that there is no writable field before or 'after' this one. The exact semantics for the keys are as follows:

- |                       |   |   |
|-----------------------|---|---|
| up-arrow or shift-TAB | ⇒ | move the caret to the writable field before the one which currently has the caret |
| down-arrow or TAB     | ⇒ | move the caret to the writable field after the one which currently has the caret  |

Bits in the flags word for a writable field have the following meaning:

Bit	Meaning
0	inform of value changes using <code>WritableField_ValueChanged</code>

Bit	Meaning
2-3	justification: 0 $\Rightarrow$ left-justified 1 $\Rightarrow$ right-justified 2 $\Rightarrow$ centred
4	do not display text, use '-' for each character (password support)

## Writable field methods

### WritableField\_SetValue 512

#### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 512  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to text string to use

#### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

#### Use

This method sets the text string shown in a writable field. The change is immediately visible if the parent dialogue box is currently on the screen.

#### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *writablefield_set_value ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId writable,
                                                const char *text
                                                );
```

## WritableField\_GetValue 513

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 513  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to buffer  
R5 = size of buffer

### On exit

R5 = size of buffer required (if R4 was 0)  
    else buffer pointed at by R4 contains text  
    R5 holds number of bytes written to buffer

### Use

This method returns the text string shown in a writable field.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *writablefield_get_value ( unsigned int flags,
                                                ObjectId window,
                                                ComponentId writable,
                                                char *buffer,
                                                int buff_size,
                                                int *nbytes
                                                );
```

## WritableField\_SetAllowable 514

### On entry

R0 = flags

R1 = Window object id

R2 = 514

R3 = Gadget component id

R4 = pointer to string giving new set of allowable characters

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method defines the set of allowable characters which can be typed into a writable field. The set is specified in the same way as a Wimp 'a' validation string directive (without including the letter 'a'). If the string is NULL, then all characters are allowable.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *writablefield_set_allowable ( unsigned int flags,
                                                    ObjectId window,
                                                    ComponentId writable,
                                                    const char *allowed
                                                    );
```

## WritableField\_SetFont 516

### On entry

R0 = flags  
R1 = Window object id  
R2 = 516  
R3 = Gadget component id  
R4 = pointer to font name to use  
R5 = width in 16ths of a point  
R6 = height in 16ths of a point

### On exit

R1-R9 preserved

### Use

This method makes the writable field use an anti-aliased font. If the font name is NULL, then the field will use system font.

### C veneer

```
extern _kernel_oserror *writablefield_set_font ( unsigned int flags,  
                                                ObjectId window,  
                                                ComponentId writable_field,  
                                                const char *font_name,  
                                                int width,  
                                                int height  
                                                );
```

## Writable field Toolbox events

### WritableField\_ValueChanged (0x82885)

#### Block

+ 8      0x82885  
+ 12     flags  
         if bit 0 is set, then the text string was too long to fit into the event block  
+ 16... text string shown in writable field

#### Use

This Toolbox event is raised when the value of the writable field has changed. The text string is copied into the event block, and is nul-terminated. If the text string was too long to fit into the event block, then bit 0 of the flags word is set and a null string is supplied.

#### C data type

```
typedef struct
{
    ToolboxEventHeader hdr;
    char
string[sizeof(ToolboxEvent)-sizeof(ToolboxEventHeader)];
} WritableFieldValueChangedEvent;
```

## Writable field templates

Field	Size in bytes	Type
text	4	MsgReference
max_text_len	4	word
allowable	4	MsgReference
max_allowable_len	4	word
before	4	word
after	4	word







**R**esEd is the tool used to construct and edit Toolbox resource files. It provides the following:

- A display of the object templates present in the resource file (called the resource file display), each object template being represented by a named icon. You can drag these icons to move and copy object templates between resource file displays (and other co-operating applications).
- A selection of pre-defined object templates for you to drag into a resource file display (this is the standard way to populate a resource file display with object templates).
- A specialised editor to allow you to edit all the various classes of object templates.

To use this chapter you should have a basic understanding of the Toolbox and objects.

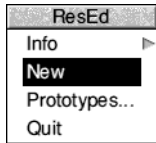
## Overview

The process for creating, editing, and saving a resource file can be summarised as follows:

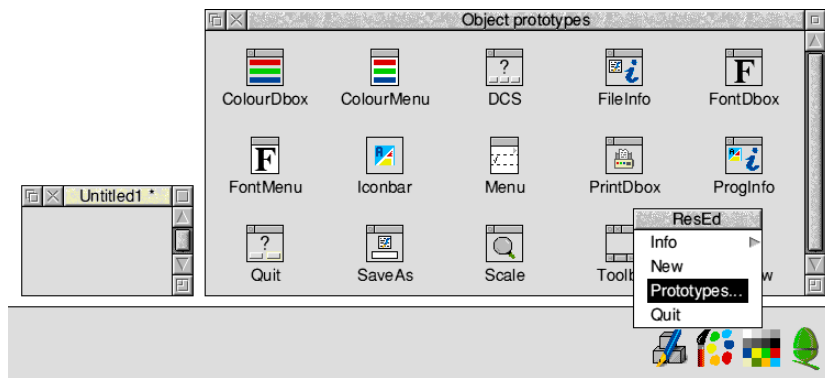
- 1 Start ResEd.
- 2 Open a new resource file display.
- 3 Open an object prototypes display containing pre-defined object templates.
- 4 Drag the object templates you require from the object prototypes window into the resource file display.
- 5 Double-click on an object template to open an editing window for it.
- 6 Edit the object templates.
- 7 Save the edited object templates into a resource file.

The following section, *Creating and editing a Toolbox resource file*, gives a detailed description of the above process.

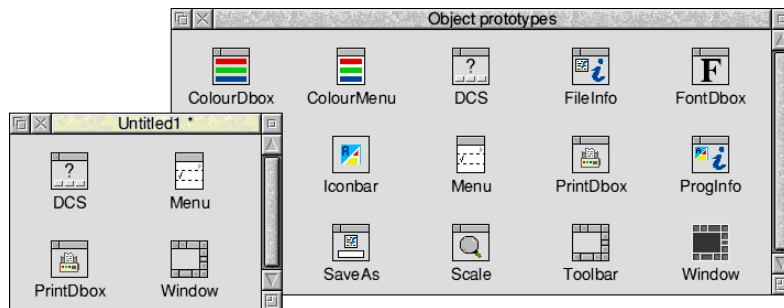
## Creating and editing a Toolbox resource file



- 1 Start ResEd in a similar way to other RISC OS applications, by double-clicking on its application icon. It loads and installs an icon on the iconbar.
- 2 Open a new resource file display by clicking Select on the ResEd iconbar icon or choosing **New** from the ResEd menu. A new, untitled resource file display will appear on the screen.
- 3 The object prototypes window allows you to drag any prototype object template into the resource file display. To open the object prototypes window click Adjust on the iconbar icon or choose **Prototypes...** from the ResEd menu.

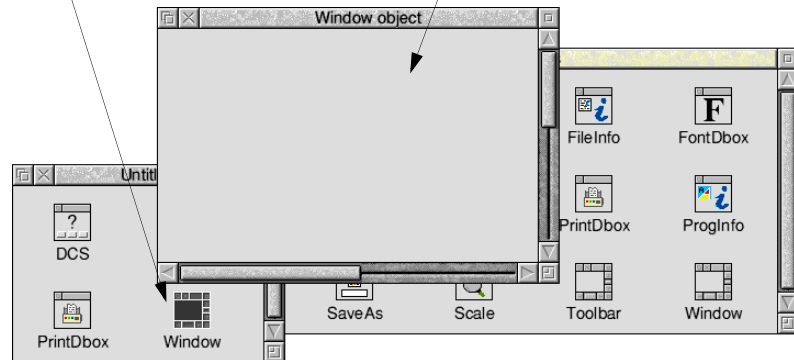


- 4 Drag one or more object templates from the object prototypes window into the resource file display.

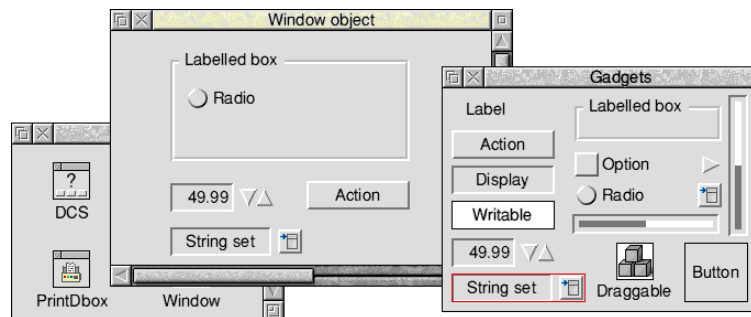


- 5 To edit a Window object template double-click on its icon in the resource file display. An editing window will appear showing the object template in full:

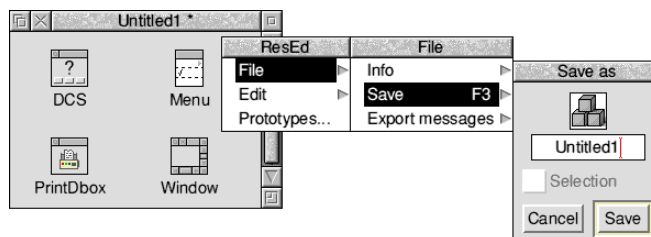
double click on an  
object template icon ... ... an editing window for that template is displayed



- 6 When you have finished editing a window object template, close the editing window using the close icon (some object templates are displayed for editing in dialogue boxes, and you close these by clicking on the **OK** button):



- 7 When you have finished editing all the object templates you can save them using the **Save** option from the resource file display menu. This leads to a Save as dialogue box, which allows you to save some or all of your object templates.



## Starting ResEd

Start ResEd in a similar way to other RISC OS applications, by double-clicking on its application icon. It loads and installs an icon on the iconbar. It may also be loaded by double-clicking on a file of type Resource, in which case the file is loaded and displayed.

Each resource file is displayed in its own resource file display. If you load a file which is already loaded, that file's window is raised to the top of the window stack.

Whenever a resource file is loaded, a corresponding Sprites file is sought in the same directory. If one is found its sprites are loaded with \*iconsprites and used when displaying the resources in the resource file display. Sprite files may also be loaded by dragging to the iconbar icon.

### The iconbar icon

The iconbar icon responds to the mouse in the following ways:

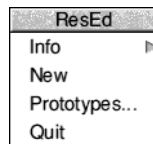
- clicking Select on the icon opens an empty resource file display
- clicking Menu on the icon opens the ResEd Menu
- clicking Adjust on the icon opens the object prototypes window.

Empty resource files are opened with incrementally-unique names (Untitled1, Untitled2 etc). Each one is opened in a slightly different position to the last.

The object prototypes window contains prototype object templates of each class. You can drag these into the resource file display in order to populate it with object templates. The object prototypes window is fully described in *The object prototypes window* on page 437.

### The iconbar menu

Clicking Menu on the iconbar icon displays the following menu:



**Info** displays an Info dialogue box.

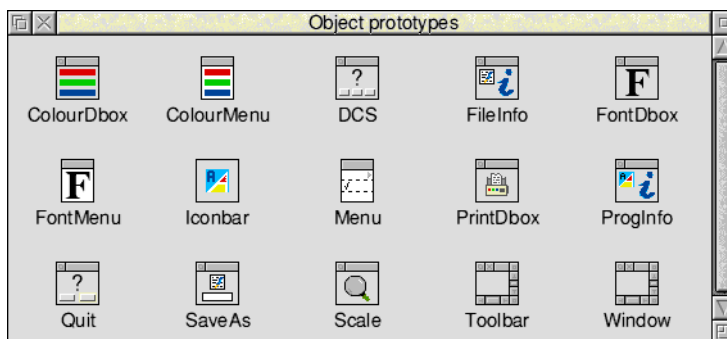
**New** opens an empty, untitled resource file display.

**Prototypes...** opens the object prototypes window (described on page 437).

**Quit** exits the program.

## The object prototypes window

Resource file displays may be populated with object templates by dragging them in from the object prototypes window. The templates are named after the classes they represent. You can copy them into your resource file display by drag and drop, rename them as desired, and then view and edit them by double-clicking on their icons.



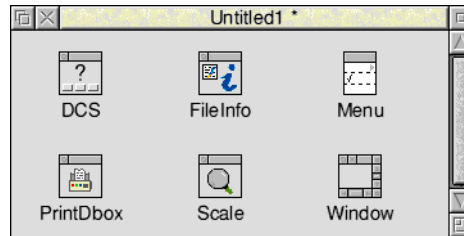
The following object templates are available:

Colour Dbox Colour menu DCS Dbox File Info Dbox  
 Font Dbox Font menu Iconbar icon Menu  
 Print Dbox Prog Info Dbox Quit Dbox Save As Dbox  
 Scale Dbox Toolbar Window

To open or raise the object prototypes window, choose **Prototypes...** from the iconbar menu or click Adjust on the iconbar icon. The object prototypes window is very similar to an ordinary resource file display, but attempts to move, rename, modify or delete object templates within it are ignored. It is not possible to edit an object template within the object prototypes window; instead you must first drag the object template into a resource file display. The object prototypes window does not have a menu and only Ctrl-Z and Ctrl-A keyboard short-cuts are available.

## The resource file display

The resource file display is Filer-like, in that it contains a grid of icons, one per object template held in the resource file. The sprite associated with each icon is a pictorial clue as to the type of object template that icon represents; each class of object template has its own sprite. The text associated with each icon is the name assigned to that object template.



Icons may be selected, deselected and dragged from one resource file display to another (as in the Filer).

### Editing an object template

To edit an object template, double-click on its icon. A window will then open for that object template. Some common features of editing object templates are described in *Editing object templates in general* on page 442.

For details of editing the individual types of object templates see

- *Editing the Menu class* on page 445
- *Editing a Window object template and gadgets* on page 455
- *Editing other classes* on page 491.

### Copying object templates

You can copy object templates between resource file displays by dragging their icons. You can also make a copy of an object template within one resource file display by using Shift-Drag Select.

### Moving object templates

You can move an object template from one resource file display to another using Shift-Drag Select. This will remove the object template from the source window.

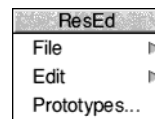
**Note:** Copy or move operations that would result in duplicate names are resolved by the new object templates' names being automatically disambiguated by the addition of a unique numeric suffix (you will be warned if this happens).

If you drag a selection into a different application, the result is the exporting of a resource file containing just the selected object templates. This file is named `Selection`.

If the resource file display is the target of a drag and drop or DataSave interaction from another application, it checks the file type and rejects the file if not of type Resource or Text (for more information on text files see *Exporting and importing messages* on page 503). Resource files are imported into the resource file display and object template names are disambiguated if necessary, as described above. Importing a file does not alter the filename of the destination resource file display – the name of the incoming file is simply ignored.

## The resource file display menu

Clicking Menu on the resource file display shows the ResEd menu:



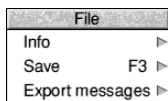
### The File menu

**Info** leads to a File Info dialogue box.

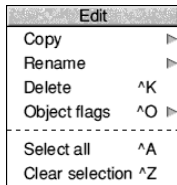
**Save** leads to a Save as dialogue box, which includes a Selection button for saving only the selected object templates.

**Export messages** leads to a Save as dialogue box allowing you to produce a text file containing all the user-visible messages for the file (or selection, if **Save selection** is set). The messages may then be edited (typically, translated into a different language) and then re-imported by dropping the file back into the resource file display.

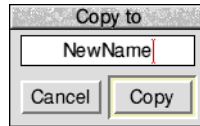
For more information about exporting and importing messages see *Exporting and importing messages* on page 503.



## The Edit menu

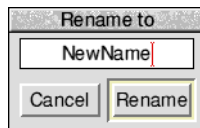


**Copy** (which is shaded unless only one object template is selected) leads to the following dialogue box:



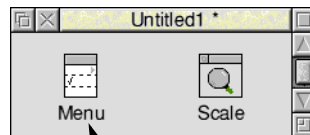
The name field is filled in with the name of the selected object template. To make a copy of the object template in the same file, alter the name and click **Copy**.

**Rename** leads to a dialogue box with a writable icon for entering a new name for the selected object template and a **Rename** button to accept the change:

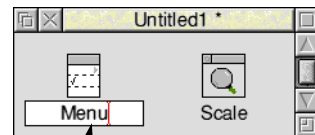


The writable icon is initially filled in with the current name. When **Rename** is pressed, the object template is renamed unless a name clash would occur, in which case an error message is issued instead.

You can also change an object template's name by clicking Alt-Select inside the icon's name, editing the string and pressing Return:



click Alt-select inside the icon's name ...



... edit the name and press Return

Pressing Escape or clicking outside the writable icon cancels the rename.

**Delete** deletes all the selected object templates.

**Object flags** allows you to edit the settings of the object flags for the selected object templates. See *The Object flags dialogue box* on page 441 for more details.

**Select all** selects all the object templates in a resource file display.

**Clear selection** deselects all the selected object templates.

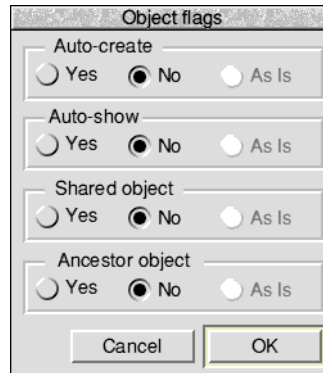
## Prototypes...

This option displays the object prototypes window.



## The Object flags dialogue box

You can edit most object template data by double-clicking on its icon. There is, however, a 32-bit flags field in the object header. These flags are applicable to all classes of object, and you may view the flags of an individual object template by selecting it and entering the **Object flags** dialogue box. It has the following appearance:



To summarise, the flags are:

Bit	Meaning when set
0	create object when resource file is loaded
1	show object as soon as it is created
2	object is shared
3	mark this as an Ancestor object

If there is one object template selected, or multiple object templates which have identical flag values, the buttons will be set to **Yes** or **No** as appropriate. If there are multiple selected object templates with different flag settings, then the flags which differ will be set to **As Is**, indicating to the user that the flag value differs across the object templates.

You may adjust the settings as required, and on pressing **OK** the new flag values will be applied to the selected object templates. Any flags which are set to **As Is** will not be applied to the selected object templates; each object template will retain its existing value for those flags. So, for example, you could change a number of object templates to be 'Shared' without altering their other flags.

## Editing object templates in general

Once you have dragged an object template from the Objects prototype window into the resource file display you can edit it by double-clicking on its icon. You can then edit a properties box for that object template specifying how you want it to appear and behave. All the object properties boxes share the following features.

### Length fields

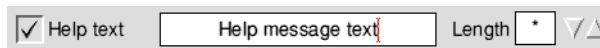
#### Help messages

The Window and Menu object templates, and all gadget templates, include the facility to specify a help message:



A screenshot of a user interface element. On the left, there is a checkbox labeled "Help text" which is currently unchecked. To its right is a text input field. Further right, the word "Length" is displayed next to a small box containing an asterisk (\*), followed by two small triangular buttons (one pointing down, one pointing up).

If you switch on the **Help text** option you are then able to enter a help message into the associated message field:



A screenshot of the same user interface element as above, but with the "Help text" checkbox checked. The text input field now contains the text "Help message text". The "Length" field still shows an asterisk (\*).

By default an asterisk is displayed in the **Length** field. This asterisk ensures that, whatever string you enter into the message field, the exact length of that string (including its terminator) will be passed to the Toolbox.

Alternatively you can manually change the size of the **Length** field to be greater than the length of the help message itself. This is useful if you wish to alter the help message at run-time. If you type a number into the **Length** field directly, then, when you click on **OK**, the size of the **Length** field will be set to the length of the string you entered + 1 (unless the number you entered is greater than the length of the string, in which case the number will remain as you entered it).

The following are some points to bear in mind when entering help text:

- If you switch off the **Help text** option then any help message you entered in the associated message field will be removed.
- If you switch on the **Help text** option, but leave the associated message field empty, then the Interactive help window will go blank when the user moves the pointer over the relevant object.

#### Other length fields

Some other options in object properties boxes behave in a similar manner to the above; for example, editing the Titles of objects.

## The selection model

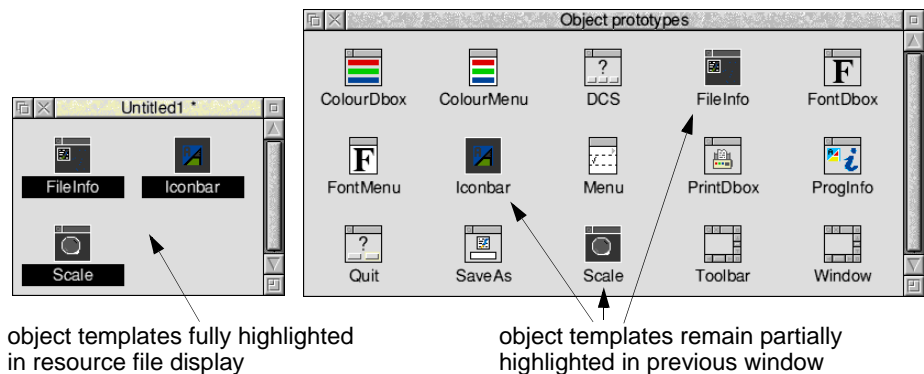
ResEd supports some new selection techniques to improve the way you can manipulate objects and object templates.

### Selection highlighting

ResEd provides two levels of selection with two corresponding types of highlight:

- a full highlight for a selection within a window that has the input focus
- a partial highlight for the previous selection in a deselected window.

For example, when you select one or more object templates in the object prototypes window and drag them to a resource file display, the original object templates remain partially highlighted. This allows you to return to the object prototypes window and, by clicking on any of the object templates within the original selection, automatically select all of the original selection. For example:



You can use this additional selection technique throughout ResEd; for example, you can select menu entries when editing a Menu object template, and still retain them as a selection if you temporarily need to edit a different window:



Window has input focus



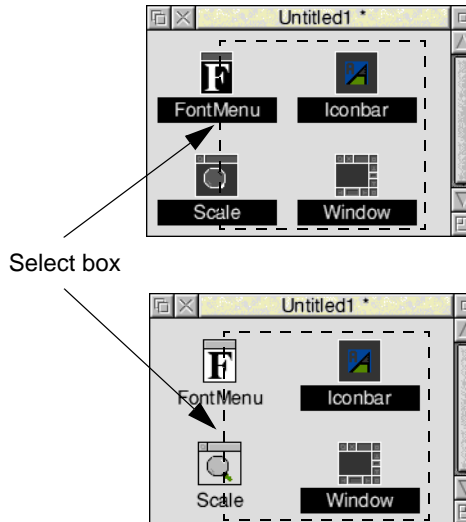
two menu entries selected within the window



menu entries still selected when the window no longer has the input focus

### Box selection

If you use the mouse to drag a Select box around a group of object templates, you can control whether all the objects (even those partly) within the box are selected, or just the ones wholly within the box:



dragging a box around a group of object templates will select any object template partly or wholly within the Select box

dragging a box around a group of object templates while holding down Shift will select only objects wholly within the Select box

Groups of gadgets (in the Window editor) or groups of menu entries (in the Menu editor) can be selected in a similar way.

## Cancel and OK

### Cancel

Clicking **Cancel** (or pressing Escape) will close the dialogue box without making any changes.

Clicking Adjust **Cancel** (or pressing Shift-Escape) will leave the dialogue box displayed but will remove any changes made since opening the box.

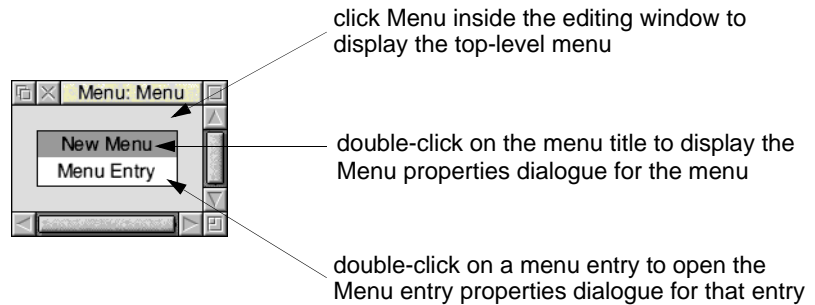
### OK

Clicking **OK** (or pressing Return) will close the dialogue box and include any changes in the object template.

Clicking Adjust **OK** (or pressing Shift-Return) will leave the dialogue box displayed and update all changes made since opening the box (e.g. if you increased the contents of a help message field, the **Length** field would then be increased automatically).

## Editing the Menu class

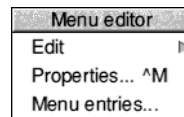
Double-clicking on a menu object template in the resource file display will display a Menu editing window with the following appearance:



The editing window displays the menu as it will appear when displayed by the Toolbox.

## The Menu editor

Clicking Menu inside the editing window displays the following menu:



**Edit** leads to the Edit submenu.

Edit	
Delete	^K
Properties...	^P
<hr/>	
Select all	^A
Clear selection	^Z

**Delete** deletes the selected menu entries.

**Properties...** opens the Menu entry properties dialogue box for the selected menu entry (see *Editing a Menu entry* on page 446).

**Select all** selects all the menu entries in the menu.

**Clear selection** deselects all the menu entries in the menu.

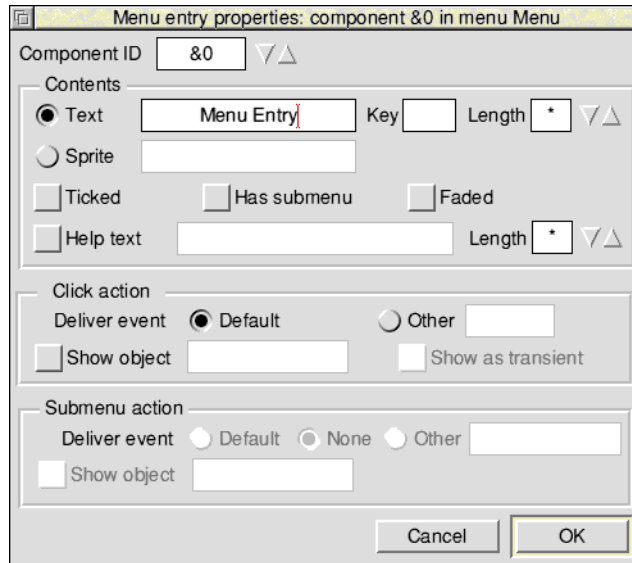
**Properties...** displays the Menu properties dialogue box, described in *Editing the Menu* on page 448.

**Menu entries...** displays the Menu entries window, described in *Inserting a new Menu entry* on page 449.

## Editing a Menu entry

### The Menu entry properties dialogue box

This is a dialogue box for viewing and editing the characteristics of a menu entry. You can open it by selecting a menu entry in the editing window and then selecting **Properties...** from the Edit menu (or by double-clicking on a menu entry):



**Component ID** is a text field containing the hexadecimal component identifier of this menu entry. Normally there is no need for you to edit this field as the component identifiers are automatically assigned. If you wish to assign identifiers yourself, you must ensure that they are unique within each menu.

Note: Clicking **OK** while any component ids are the same will elicit an error message and the dialogue box will stay open until this is sorted out.

**Text** and **Sprite** determine the contents of the menu entry:

If you select **Text**, you can then enter the text and keyboard short-cut to be displayed, and the maximum permissible length for the entry's text to be set to at run-time.

If you want to enter a keyboard short-cut into the **Key** field manually, you may have to use !Chars to display short-cuts such as Shift F3. It is more advisable to create a keyboard short-cut first (in the Keyboards shortcut dialogue box), and then drag this short-cut to the menu entry properties dialogue box. This process is fully described in *Using a keyboard short-cut entry to 'fill in' a menu entry* on page 464.

If you select **Sprite**, you may then enter the name of a sprite to be displayed.

**Ticked** displays a tick next to this entry.

**Has Submenu** controls whether the entry has a submenu arrow.

**Faded** displays this entry in grey; when the menu is shown by an application the entry will be unselectable.

The writable field next to **Help text** allows you to supply a suitable interactive help string for the Toolbox to send to !Help when the mouse pointer is over this menu. If **Help text** is switched off, the Toolbox will instead supply any help text associated with the menu as a whole – see *Editing the Menu* on page 448).

The **Click action** section specifies what happens when the user selects this menu entry. The first thing that will happen is that the application will receive an event:

Selecting **Default** specifies that you will receive the default event (Menu\_Selection).

Selecting **Other** allows you to receive whichever event you specify in the associated writable field (the event can be entered as a hex number, e.g. 'E345', or as a decimal number).

After the event has been delivered, you can specify whether an object will be shown automatically. You can do this by turning on the **Show object** option and entering the name of the object to be shown in the associated writable field.

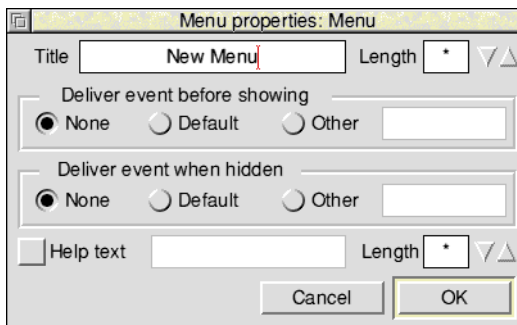
The **Submenu action** section is very similar, and specifies what should happen when the user traverses the submenu arrow of this entry. (The section is faded unless the **Has Submenu** option has been selected). The text fields have the same meanings as for menu selection. The default event in this case is Menu\_Submenu.

The two **Show object** name fields may be filled in by dragging an object template's icon from the resource file display into the appropriate text entry field (or onto the corresponding option icon if the text entry field is shaded).

## Editing the Menu

### The Menu properties dialogue box

This is a dialogue box for editing the top-level characteristics of a menu. It is opened from the Edit menu or by double-clicking on the menu's title:



The **Title** field contains the text shown at the head of the menu.

Note: If a Menu with no title is shown, the Wimp will not display a title bar. This is not Style Guide compliant, but the Menu editor allows this so that you can set a title at run-time.

**Deliver event before showing** controls the following:

- **None** specifies that no event should be returned.
- **Default** specifies that the default event (Menu\_AboutToBeShown) should be returned immediately before showing the window.
- **Other** allows you to specify a different event to be delivered to the application. The associated field displays the event code in hex; you may enter event codes in either decimal or hex (by prefixing with '&').

**Deliver event when hidden** controls the following:

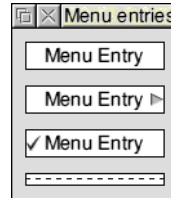
- **None** specifies that no event should be returned.
- **Default** specifies that the default event (Menu\_HasBeenHidden) should be returned immediately after the window is hidden.
- **Other** allows you to specify a different event to be delivered to the application. The associated field displays the event code in hex; you may enter event codes in either decimal or hex (by prefixing with '&').

The writable field next to **Help text** allows you to supply a suitable interactive help string for the Toolbox to send to !Help when the mouse pointer is over this menu (if **Help text** is switched off, the Toolbox will not reply to such HelpRequest messages).



## Inserting a new Menu entry

You can insert new menu entries into the menu using the Menu entries window. The Menu entries window is opened by selecting **Menu entries...** from the top-level menu.



The Menu entries window contains a dotted line separator and three prototype menu entries:

- a basic menu entry
- a menu entry with a submenu arrow
- a ticked menu entry.

The menu entries in the Menu entries window may be dragged with the mouse and dropped over the menu area to insert new menu entries and separators. The new entry is placed between two existing entries according to the vertical position of the drop point. If the mouse pointer is within the menu's title, it is inserted after the title; if it is dropped after the final entry it is appended at the bottom.

## Manipulating menu entries

### Copying menu entries

You can copy a menu entry from one part of a menu to another using Shift-Drag Select. The insertion point is determined as for inserting a new item. New menu entries are automatically assigned unique component ids within the menu.

You can also use Drag Select to copy menu entries between editing windows.

### Moving menu entries between different editing windows

You can move menu entries between different Menu editing windows using Shift-Drag Select. The selected entries are deleted from the source window.

### Re-ordering menu entries

You can re-order menu entries using Drag Select. The insertion point is determined as for inserting a new item.

Note: If a copy or move operation results in a menu containing two entries with the same component id, the editor forces the newly inserted one to have a unique id.

## Example menu

This example shows you how you might create the three menu entries in the following typical menu:



## Creating a submenu

The first menu entry in the above example (**Pen**) has an associated submenu, so the Menu entry properties box could be filled in as follows:

Menu entry properties: component &0 in menu DoodleMenu

Component ID: &0

Contents:

- ☒ Text: Pen, Key: , Length: \*
- ☐ Sprite:
- ☐ Ticked, ☒ Has submenu, ☐ Faded
- ☐ Help text: , Length: \*

Click action:

- Deliver event: ☒ Default, ☐ Other:
- ☐ Show object: , ☐ Show as transient

Submenu action:

- Deliver event: ☐ Default, ☒ None, ☐ Other:
- ☒ Show object: PenMenu

Buttons: Cancel, OK

The minimum sections to edit in the Menu entry properties box are

- **Text** – give the menu entry a unique name (e.g. 'Pen').
- **Has submenu** – switch it on.

- **Show object** (in the Submenu action area) – switch it on and specify the name of the object to show if the user traverses the submenu arrow (e.g. 'PenMenu').

You would then create another menu object template and give it the name 'PenMenu'. This object would be displayed when the user traverses the submenu arrow.

## Displaying a dialogue box

The second menu entry in the above example (**Styles...**) has an associated dialogue box, so the Menu entry properties box could be filled in as follows:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Menu entry properties: component &1 in menu DoodleMenu". It is divided into three main sections: "Contents", "Click action", and "Submenu action".

- Contents:** The "Text" radio button is selected. The text field contains "Styles...". There are also fields for "Key" and "Length" (set to "\*"). Below this are checkboxes for "Ticked", "Has submenu", "Faded", and "Help text".
- Click action:** The "Default" radio button is selected for "Deliver event". The "Show object" checkbox is checked, and the text field next to it contains "StylesBox". There is also an unchecked "Show as transient" checkbox.
- Submenu action:** The "Default" radio button is selected for "Deliver event". The "Show object" checkbox is unchecked.

At the bottom right are "Cancel" and "OK" buttons.

The minimum sections to edit in the Menu entry properties box are as follows:

- **Text** – give the menu entry a unique name (e.g. 'Styles'). In this particular example the ellipsis (...) signifies to the user that the dialogue box that will be displayed is a persistent dialogue box (so the **Show as transient** option should not be selected).
- **Show object** (in the Click action area) – switch it on and specify the name of the object to show if the user clicks on this entry (e.g. 'StylesBox').

You would then create a window object template for the dialogue box and give it the name 'StylesBox'. This object would be displayed when the user clicks on **Styles...**

**Note:** Any object (e.g. submenus and dialogue boxes) can also be built dynamically at run-time by the client application (see *Attaching a submenu dynamically* on page 175).

## Creating a keyboard short-cut

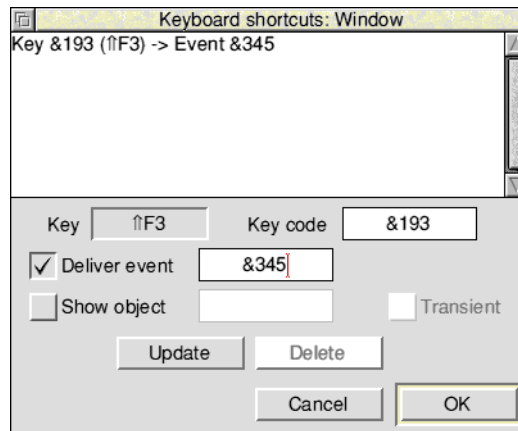
The third menu entry in the above example (**Group**  $\uparrow$ F3) returns an event if the user clicks on the entry or uses a keyboard short-cut (Shift F3); this would allow the client application to perform an appropriate action on receipt of the event.

Creating this keyboard short-cut requires two stages:

- defining the keyboard short-cut within the window object template itself.
- dragging this keyboard short-cut to the Menu entry properties box.

### Defining the keyboard short-cut

The first stage is to define the keyboard short-cut within the window object template itself. For example:



- 1 Click Select on the **Key** field and press Shift F3; the corresponding code (&193) is automatically entered into the **Key code** field.
- 2 Specify the event code in the **Deliver event** box (e.g. '&345').
- 3 Click on **Update** to add the new keyboard short-cut to the scrolling list.
- 4 Click on **OK** to add the new keyboard short-cut to the Window object template.

For more information on keyboard short-cuts see *Keyboard short-cuts* on page 462.

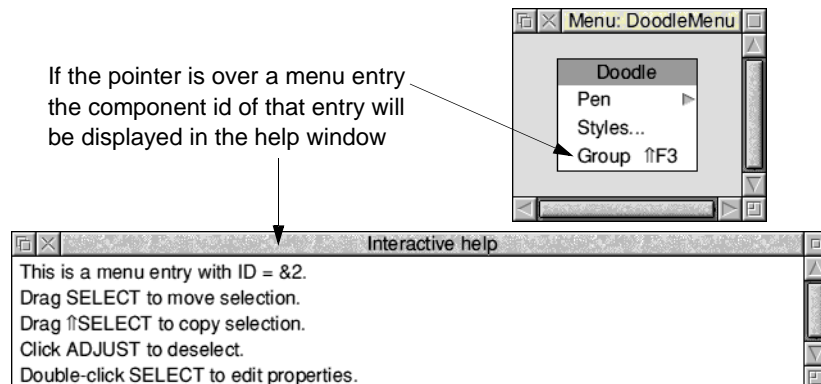
### Filling in the Menu entry properties box

The next stage is to open the third menu entry and give it a unique name (i.e. 'Group'), and then drag the keyboard short-cut to it. This will automatically fill in:

- the Key short-cut (e.g. Shift F3) in the **Key** field
- the event code to return if the user clicks on this entry (e.g. '&345'):

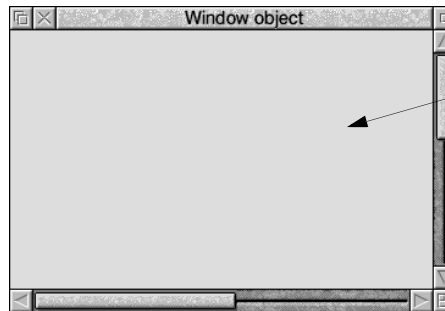
### Interactive help for menu entries

The Help window gives you information about the Menu window and also displays the component id of an individual menu entry:



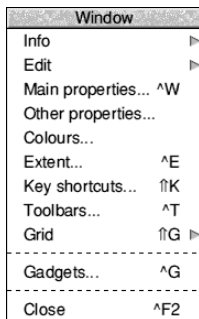
## Editing a Window object template and gadgets

Double-clicking on a window object template in the resource file display will display an editing window. This window displays the window object template as it will appear (complete with gadgets) when displayed by the Toolbox. It has the following appearance:



double-click Select on the window background to display the **Main properties** dialogue box

### The Window menu



**Info** leads to an Info box showing the object template's name.

**Edit** leads to the Edit submenu for the selected gadget(s).  
See *The Edit submenu* on page 469.

**Main properties...** opens the Main window properties dialogue box. This box allows you to specify those properties.  
See *The Main properties dialogue box* on page 456 for more details.

**Other properties...** opens the Other window properties dialogue box. This box allows you to edit those properties of a window object template that you would normally only specify once.  
See *The Other properties dialogue box* on page 459 for more details.

**Colours...** opens the Window Colours dialogue box.  
See *Window Colours* on page 461 for more details.

**Extent...** opens the Window Extent dialogue box.  
See *Window Extent* on page 462 for more details.

**Key shortcuts...** opens the Keyboard short-cuts dialogue box. This allows you to define keyboard short-cuts for use inside the window.  
See *Keyboard short-cuts* on page 462 for more details.

**Toolbars...** allows you to attach toolbar object templates to this window. See *Toolbar object template* on page 473 for more details.

**Grid** leads to the Grid dialogue box. This allows you to display an optional grid of alignment points to assist in the uniform placement of gadgets.  
See *The Grid* on page 465 for more details.

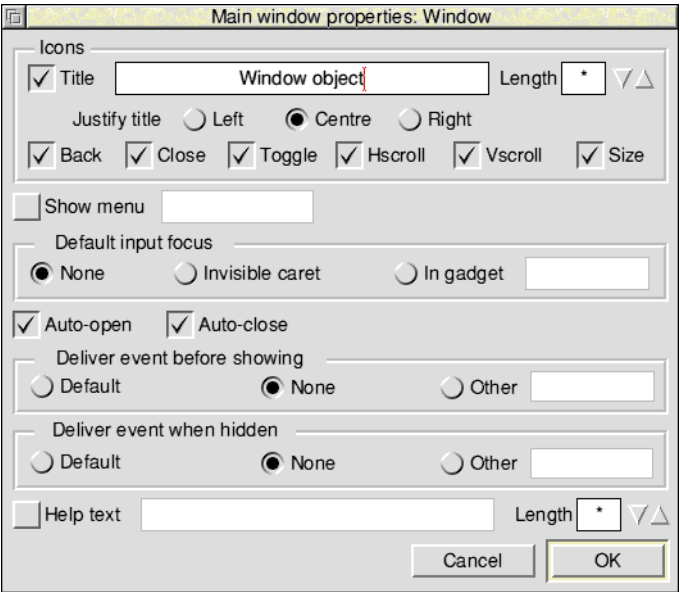
**Gadgets...** opens, or brings to the front, the gadgets window. This is a selection of gadgets which may be dragged into a Window object template to populate it with gadgets. See *The gadgets window* on page 466 for more details.

**Close** closes the window and incorporates any changes.

The Main properties dialogue box

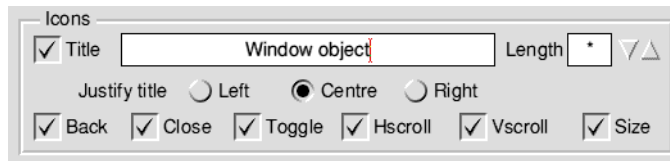


This dialogue box allows you to edit the main properties of a window object template. The name of the window object template that the dialogue box refers to is displayed in the titlebar. Choose **Main properties...** from the Window menu or double-click Select on the window background to display this box:





**Icons** controls the following features:



**Title** allows you to enter the title of the window within the title bar. If you switch this option off the window will not have a title bar.

Note: The window title is always a vertically-centred, indirected text icon in system font; there is no facility to set a validation string.

**Justify title** allows you to specify the justification of the title within the title bar.

The **Back**, **Close**, **Toggle**, **Hscroll**, **Vscroll** and **Size** option buttons control whether the Back icon, Close icon, Toggle Size icon, Horizontal scroll bar, Vertical scroll bar and Adjust size icons are displayed.

**Show Menu** is an option button that controls whether the window has a menu attached to it. If this is switched on, the associated writable field is unshaded for the menu object template's name to be entered. Alternatively the field can be filled in by dropping a menu object template onto it (or onto the corresponding option icon if the field itself is shaded).

**Default input focus** allows you to set the characteristics of the default input focus for the window.



**None** specifies that the window has no input focus and no caret.

**Invisible caret** specifies that the window has input focus, but no caret is displayed until the user clicks in an appropriate area.

**In gadget** specifies that the window has input focus and the caret is displayed inside a gadget. You can enter the component id of the gadget in the adjoining field or drag a gadget to the field (or to the corresponding radio button if the field itself is shaded).

**Auto-open** controls whether the Window module automatically (re-)opens the window when a Wimp\_OpenWindowRequest event is received.

**Auto-close** controls whether the Window module automatically closes the window when a Wimp\_CloseWindowRequest event is received.

**Deliver event before showing** controls the following:

- **Default** specifies that the default event (Window\_AboutToBeShown) should be returned immediately before showing the window.
- **None** specifies that no event should be returned.
- **Other** allows you to specify a different event to be delivered to the application. The associated field displays the event code in hex; you may enter event codes in either decimal or hex (by prefixing with '&'). When the event is delivered the rest of the event block is filled in as it would have been for Window\_AboutToBeShown.

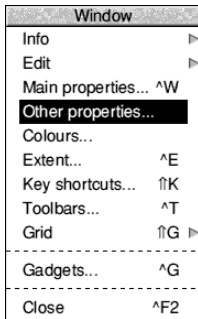
**Deliver event when hidden** controls the following:

- **Default** specifies that the default event (Window\_HasBeenHidden) should be returned immediately after the window is hidden.
- **None** specifies that no event should be returned.
- **Other** allows you to specify a different event to be delivered to the application. The associated field displays the event code in hex; you may enter event codes in either decimal or hex (by prefixing with '&'). When the event is delivered the rest of the event block is filled in as it would have been for Window\_HasBeenHidden.

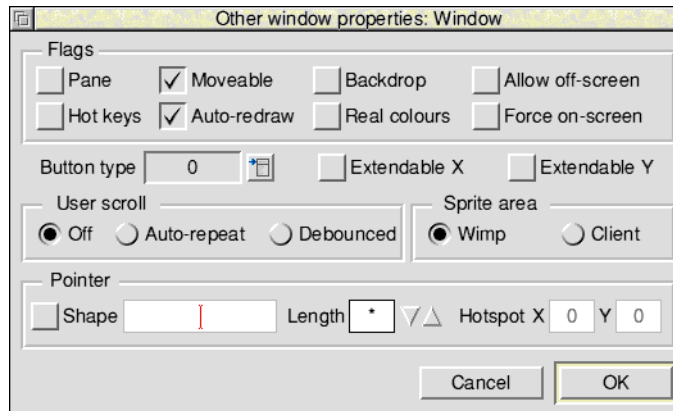
The writable field next to **Help text** allows you to supply a suitable interactive help string for the Toolbox to send to !Help when the mouse pointer is over this window (if **Help text** is switched off, the Toolbox will not reply to such HelpRequest messages).

The above controls are described in the *Window Manager* chapter in Volume 3 of the RISC OS *Programmer's Reference Manual*, and in the chapter *Window class* on page 299.

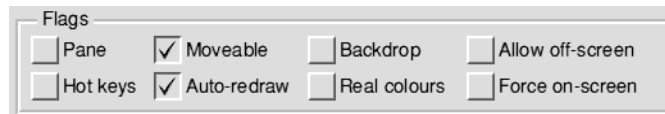
## The Other properties dialogue box



This dialogue box allows you to edit those properties of a window object template that you would normally only specify once. You can only display this box by choosing **Other properties...** from the Window menu:



**Flags** controls the following features:



**Pane** specifies that the window is a pane.

**Moveable** determines if the window is moveable, i.e. it can be dragged by the user.

**Backdrop**, if selected, does not allow any other windows to be opened below this one.

**Allow offscreen** allows the window to be opened or dragged outside the screen area (regardless of the Configure option settings).

**Hot keys** allows events to be generated for hot keys.

**Auto-redraw** specifies that the window can be redrawn entirely by the Wimp, i.e. there are no user graphics in the work area.

**Real colours** specifies that the window colours should be treated as GCOL numbers instead of standard Wimp colours.

**Force on-screen** forces the window to stay on screen.

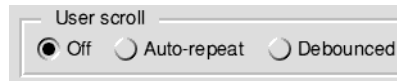
Note: Old-style window flags are not supported (i.e. bit 31 of the window flags word is always set).

**Button type** determines how the Wimp will deal with mouse movements and clicks over the window's background. There are 16 possible types which can be selected from the Pop-up menu (see the RISC OS *Programmer's Reference Manual* entry for Wimp\_CreateIcon on page 1-93 for more details).

**Extendable X** ignores the right-hand extent if the Adjust size icon of the window is dragged.

**Extendable Y** ignores the lower extent if the Adjust size icon of the window is dragged.

**User scroll** controls the Scroll\_Request event:



**Off** does not return a Scroll\_Request event.

**Autorepeat** returns a Scroll\_Request event when a mouse button is clicked on one of the arrow icons (with auto-repeat) or in the outer scroll bar region (no auto-repeat).

**Debounced** returns a Scroll\_Request event when a mouse button is clicked on one of the arrow icons (but with no auto-repeat) or in the outer scroll bar region (no auto-repeat).

**Sprite area** controls whether sprites are located in the client area or the Wimp sprite area.

**Shape** is an option button that controls whether the mouse pointer should change shape when it is over the window. If this is switched on, the associated writable fields are unshaded for the pointer sprite's name, its length, and the coordinates of its hotspot to be entered.

## Manipulating the window

You can use the icons around the window object template to manipulate the window's size, position and scroll offsets. This information is saved with the template. The stacking position is not saved; all templates are saved with a stacking position of -1 (top of stack) unless the window's Backdrop flag is set, in which case the position is -2 (bottom of the stack).

## Re-sizing the window

You can resize windows which have no scrollbar using Ctrl-Shift-Drag Adjust. The window can only be resized subject to the constraints of its current work area extent.

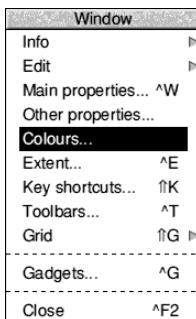
## Moving the window

You can move windows which have no title bar using Ctrl-Shift-Drag Select.

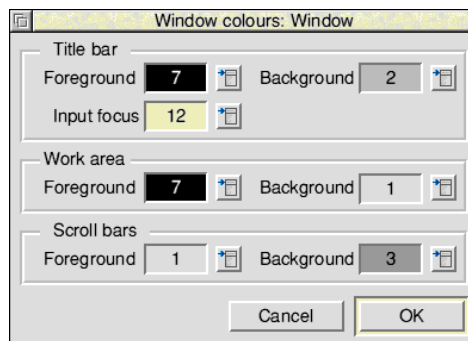
## Closing the window

The window's Close icon, if present, may be used to close the window. The window may also be closed by using the **Close** menu option, or by the keyboard short-cut Ctrl-F2.

## Window Colours



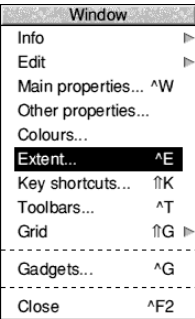
This dialogue box allows you to edit the colours of a window:



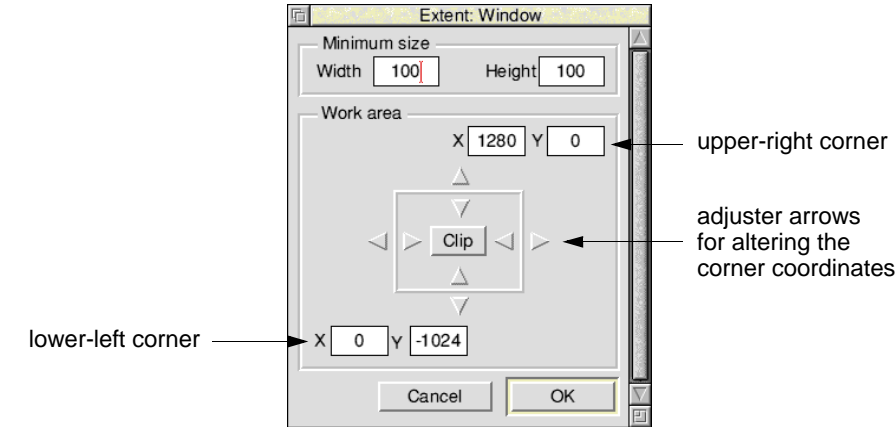
The display fields contain the Wimp colour number of the chosen colour, and have their backgrounds set to that colour. The menu buttons invoke a pop-up menu offering a choice of the 16 Wimp colours. The menus for **Titlebar: Foreground** and **Work area: Background** also offer the choice **Transparent**.

An alternative form of this dialogue box is displayed if the window object's **Real colours** flag has been set (see *The Other properties dialogue box* on page 459). In this case the pop-up menus are not available and the colour display fields are replaced by writable icons; values in the range 0 to 255 may be entered.

### Window Extent



This dialogue box allows you to edit the extent (work area size) of a window:



The **Work area** is represented by two pairs of x,y coordinates for the lower-left and upper-right corners. You may adjust these coordinates by typing into the adjoining writable fields, or using the adjuster arrows on the 'adjustable square'.

Clicking on the **Clip** button causes the size of the work area to be made equal to the window's current visible area on your screen.

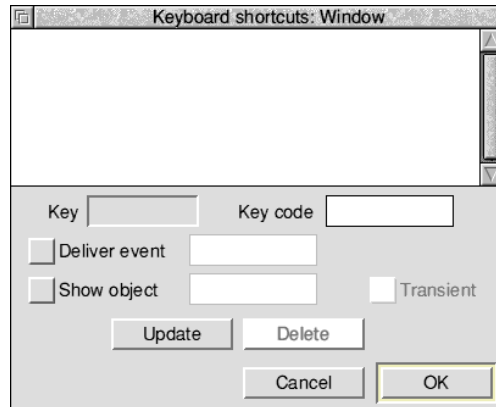
**Width** and **Height** allow you to enter the size below which the window may not go.

### Keyboard short-cuts



Each window may have a list of keyboard short-cuts associated with it. These are programmable mappings from Wimp key codes to Toolbox events. When a keystroke event is delivered, the Window module checks to see if it is in the list of short-cuts for the window containing the caret. If so, it delivers the associated event to the application. Alternatively (or additionally), a keyboard short-cut may be associated with an object template which specifies an object to be shown when the keystroke happens.

The keyboard short-cuts assigned to a window may be created and modified using the Keyboard shortcuts dialogue box. The name of the window that the dialogue box refers to is displayed in the titlebar:



Existing keyboard short-cuts are displayed in the scrolling area. Double-click on one of them to load its details into the icons below for editing; alternatively simply type in the details of the new one.

**Key** is a special icon which allows you to define a key code by pressing the corresponding key(s) on the keyboard. First click Select on the icon to activate it and then press the key combination. The corresponding code appears in the **Key code** field, and a description of the key appears in the **Key** field. Note that Shift-Ctrl-letter combinations are not allowed.

**Key code** is the Wimp keycode for the event as described in the RISC OS *Programmer's Reference Manual* entry for Wimp\_Poll (see page 1-112). This code is displayed automatically when you enter a key press into the **Key** field, or you may specify it yourself as a decimal number or a hex number (by preceding it with &).

**Deliver event** selects whether the keystroke will generate an event. The associated writable field allows you to enter the event code as a decimal or hex number.

**Show object** selects whether the keystroke should show an object. The associated writable field allows you to specify the name of the object template to be shown.

**Transient** causes the object to be shown with transient behaviour.

**Update** adds the new keyboard short-cut to the scrolling list, replacing any short-cut for the same key already present.

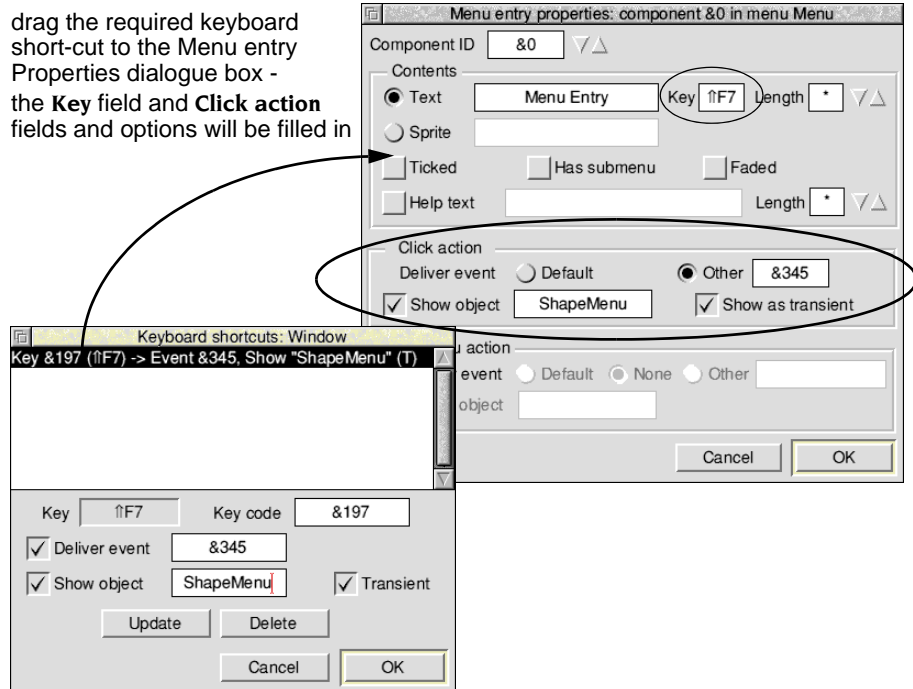
**Delete** deletes the selected short-cuts from the list. The short-cuts listed in the scrolling list can be selected for deleting by clicking on them (Adjust toggles whether the short-cut is selected or not).

**OK** accepts the updated list of short-cuts and closes the window.

**Cancel** closes the window, discarding any changes.

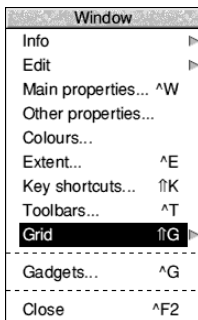
### Using a keyboard short-cut entry to 'fill in' a menu entry

You can fill in the **Key** field and **Click action** fields (**Deliver event**, **Show object** and **Show as transient**) in a menu entry by dragging a keyboard short-cut entry from the **Keyboard shortcuts** scrolling area and dropping it into a Menu entry properties dialogue box in the Menu editor:

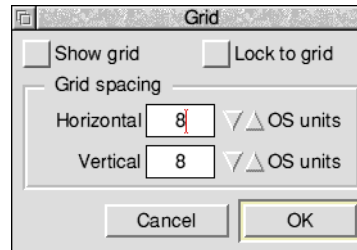




## The Grid



The Grid dialogue box can display an optional grid of alignment points to assist in the uniform placement of gadgets:



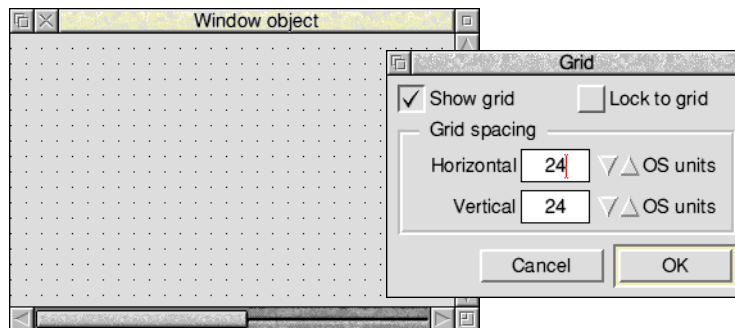
The grid is represented by a matrix of dots which overlay the contents of the window. The grid spacing is specified as a number of OS Units between grid points, this being configurable independently for different windows.

**Show grid** controls whether the grid is currently displayed for this window.

If **Lock to grid** is selected, gadgets may only be moved or resized in units of grid spacing. This means that if you have a group of gadgets then you can move (or resize) them, either horizontally or vertically, in multiples of the selected grid spacing, and they will keep their relative positions.

Note: If you drag gadgets into a window, the gadgets will not be locked to the grid in the window until you use the **Snap to grid** option (see page 470).

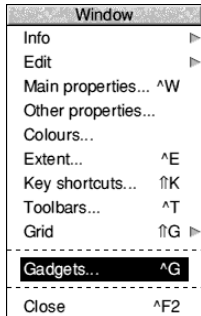
**Grid spacing** controls the spacing of the grid. For maximum compatibility across different RISC OS modes you are advised to set grid spacings to exact multiples of 8, and to this end the adjuster arrows alter the grid spacing in steps of 8. Values that are not a multiple of 8 may be entered from the keyboard but will be forced to be exact multiples of 4. For example:



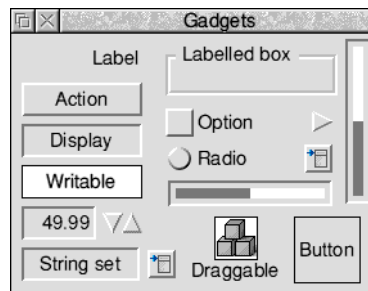
There is also an option that allows you to snap gadgets to grid points. This is described in *Snap to grid* on page 470.

## Gadgets

### The gadgets window



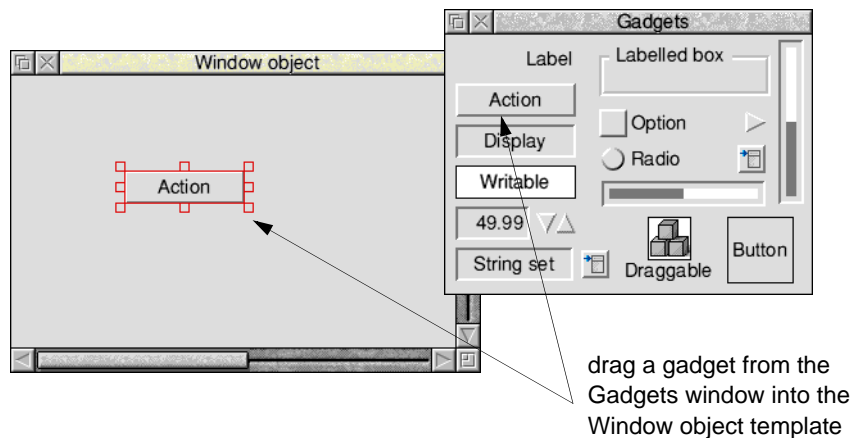
You can populate a window with gadgets by dragging them in from the gadgets window. This is a read-only window containing a typical example of each supported gadget type. You can display the gadgets window by choosing the **Gadgets...** option from a Window menu (or by pressing Ctrl-G):



The gadgets in the gadgets window may not be moved or deleted. The gadgets window does not have a menu, and only the keyboard short-cuts ^A and ^Z are available.

### Positioning and moving gadgets

You can drag any of the gadgets from the gadgets window into your window object template and drop them wherever is appropriate.



## Repositioning and copying

You can reposition one or more gadgets in your window by first selecting them and then using Drag-Select with the pointer over one of the selected gadgets. If **Lock to grid** is on, the gadgets are moved by the nearest multiple of the grid spacing. If you hold down Shift, a copy of the gadgets is made.

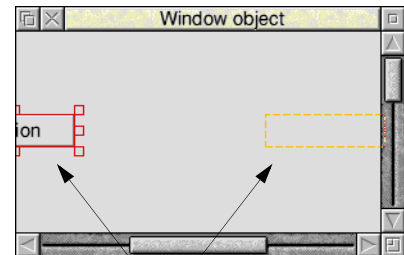
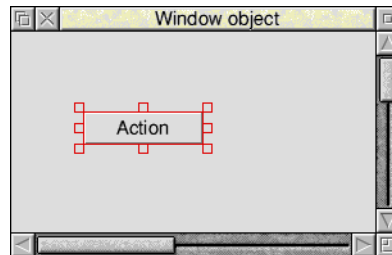
## Accurate positioning

There are three ways to position a gadget accurately:

- specify its coordinates in the window's work-area coordinate system (see *The Coordinates dialogue* on page 471)
- align it with one or more other gadgets using the Align menu (see page 472).
- move the gadget (or selection of gadgets) using the cursor keys. This can be done by selecting a gadget, holding down the Select button (as if dragging), and then pressing any of the four cursor keys.

## Auto-scrolling

If you want to move a gadget beyond the visible area of the window on the screen you must drag the gadget **very slowly** towards one of the sides of the window. Auto-scrolling of the window will occur when the mouse pointer comes close to a side of the window; scrolling is faster the closer the pointer is to the edge.



drag a gadget slowly to any side of the window to start auto-scrolling

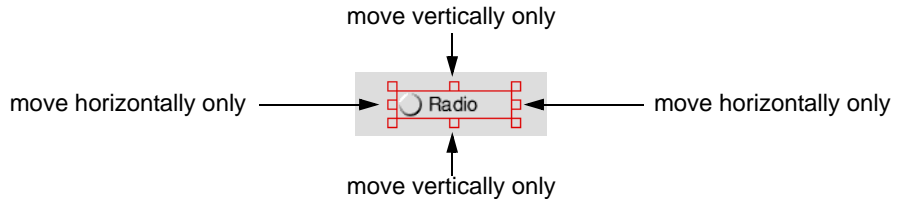
## Moving gadgets between windows

You can copy gadgets between windows by dragging them from one window object template to another (to avoid auto-scrolling you should not drag a gadget too slowly when dragging between windows).

If you hold down Shift the gadgets are deleted from the source window.

### Moving a gadget in one direction only

You can move a gadget in one direction only using Drag-Adjust on the top, bottom, left or right resize handles (if **Lock to grid** is switched on, the gadgets are moved by the nearest multiple of the grid spacing):



### Changing the size of a gadget

You can change the size of a gadget using Drag-Select on a resize handle (if **Lock to Grid** is on the change in size of the gadget (or selection of gadgets) is always a multiple of the grid spacing).

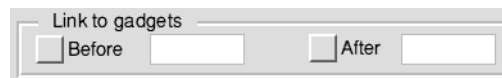
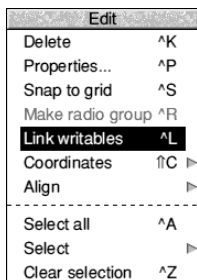
You can also change the size of one gadget, or of a selection of gadgets, using the **Width** and **Height** options in the Coordinates dialogue box (see page 471).

### Stacking

Gadgets are not intended to be stacked; so there are no facilities for placing one gadget 'above' another. Gadgets whose bounding boxes overlap will stack in an arbitrary order; there is no way you can guarantee that this order will remain unchanged. The exception to this rule is the labelled box gadget, which is always placed beneath all other gadgets.

### Moving the caret between writable gadgets

You can define the order in which the caret is moved between writable gadgets (in response to the Tab, Shift-Tab, up-arrow and down-arrow keys) by filling in the **Before** and **After** fields of the gadget properties dialogues:



These fields contain the component ids of the two gadgets 'before' and 'after' the gadget. To help you fill these in, you can drag gadgets into them, or more typically you can use the **Link writables** option in the Edit submenu. This automatically fills in these fields for all the selected gadgets that support caret movement (writable fields, string sets and number ranges). The ordering imposed is left-to-right and top-to-bottom (as if you were reading a page of text).

## The Edit submenu

Edit	
Delete	^K
Properties...	^P
Snap to grid	^S
Make radio group	^R
Link writables	^L
Coordinates	⇧C ▶
Align	▶
<hr/>	
Select all	^A
Select	▶
Clear selection	^Z

If you select one or more gadgets then, depending on the gadgets selected, some of the following edit options in the Edit submenu will be available:

**Delete** deletes the selection of gadgets.

**Properties...** opens the gadget properties dialogue box for the selected gadget. An alternative way to open this dialogue box is to double-click Select on the gadget itself.

**Snap to grid** snaps selected gadgets to the window grid (see *Snap to grid* on page 470). Note that this option is independent of the **Lock to grid** setting, and is operative even when the grid points are not displayed.

**Make radio group** makes any selected radio buttons into a radio group (see *Manipulating radio groups* on page 470).

**Link writables** links the selected writable gadgets together so that they can be traversed with Tab, Shift-Tab, up arrow and down arrow keys (see *Moving the caret between writable gadgets* on page 468).

**Coordinates** allows gadget coordinates to be entered from the keyboard for precise positioning (see *The Coordinates dialogue* on page 471).

**Align** allows you to align gadgets with one another (see *The Align menu* on page 472).

**Select all** selects all the gadgets in the window.

**Select** leads to the Select submenu.

Select	
Radio group	⇧R
<hr/>	
Next writable	
Previous writable	
Default writable	
<hr/>	
Default action	
Cancel action	

**Radio group** selects all the radio buttons in the radio group to which the selected radio button belongs (see *Manipulating radio groups* on page 470).

**Next writable** selects the gadget that is linked after the selected gadget.

**Previous writable** selects the gadget that is linked before the selected gadget.

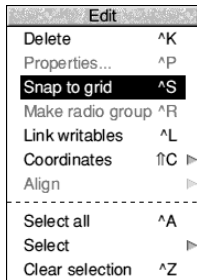
**Default writable** selects any gadget that is assigned as the 'default input focus' for the window.

**Default action** selects any action button that is assigned as the default action button.

**Cancel action** selects any action button that is assigned as the cancel action button.

**Clear selection** deselects all the gadgets in the window.

## Snap to grid



The **Snap to grid** operation on the **Edit** submenu makes each selected gadget move so that its alignment point is on the nearest gridpoint.

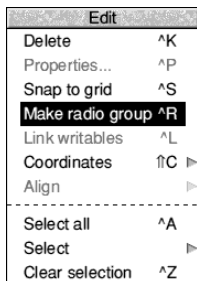
The 'alignment point' of a gadget is as follows:

- the Y-coordinate is always the centre of the gadget
- the X-coordinate is normally the lefthand side of the gadget.  
(the only exception is the label gadget; where the alignment point is on the lefthand side if the label is left-justified, on the righthand side if the label is right-justified, and in the centre if the label is centre-justified)

**Snap to grid** snaps each selected gadget independently (when the selection is moved under grid-lock, the relative positions of the gadgets are preserved).

If you drag a selection of gadgets into a window they will not be snapped to the grid in that window (even if **Lock to grid** were switched on). If they were snapped automatically to the grid it would alter their relative positions to each other, and this might not be desired. The gadgets remain selected when dragged into a window, so if you do want to snap them to the grid then you can just press Ctrl-S (for **Snap to grid**).

## Manipulating radio groups



When you drag radio buttons into a Window object template from the gadgets window, each one ends up in its own new radio group. You must then select and group them explicitly using the **Make radio group** option in the Edit menu.

The **Make radio group** option is faded unless the window's selection consists entirely of radio buttons. When you choose this menu entry, the selected radio buttons are placed into a single new radio group.

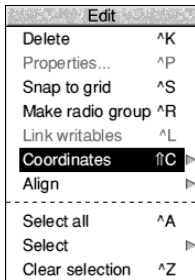
To select all members of a radio group, press Menu over one of them and choose **Radio group** from the Select submenu in the Edit menu. This enables you to see instantly the grouping relationship between radio buttons.

When a radio button is copied within a window by use of Shift-Drag, the copy is put into the same group as the original. So the easiest method to create a radio group is to drag a single radio button into the Window object template and make multiple copies of it using Shift-Drag Select.

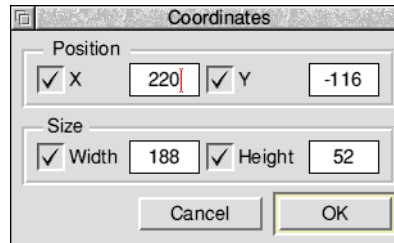
### Dragging a group of radio buttons between window templates

Adding radio buttons to a window never adds them to a pre-existing group; but any radio groups added to a window remain as groups.

## The Coordinates dialogue



This dialogue box allows you to position or size selected gadgets by entering coordinates (in the window's work-area coordinate system) from the keyboard:

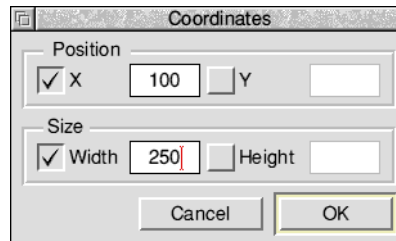


When a single gadget is selected, all four option buttons are switched on and the four writable fields are filled in with its position and size.

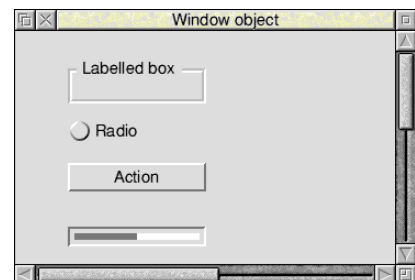
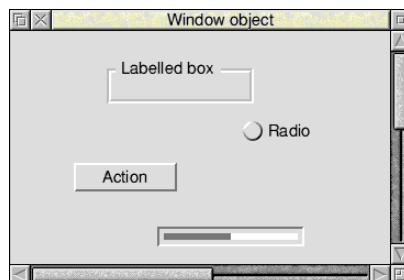
If you select more than one gadget, they are checked to see if they have common values for any of the four attributes. Those attributes with common values are filled in, and the corresponding option buttons switched on. Those attributes with differing values are faded, and the corresponding option buttons switched off. You may toggle the option buttons to alter the settings of any of the latter attributes.

When you click **OK**, the attributes are set from those fields with the option buttons switched on. The attributes that have their option buttons off are left alone. Thus, it is possible to set several gadgets to have the same X position without altering their Y positions, and at the same time equalise the width of the selected gadgets:

selecting the four  
gadgets below, and  
setting Position and  
Size as opposite ...



... would result in this



The Align menu

Edit	
Delete	^K
Properties...	^P
Snap to grid	^S
Make radio group	^R
Link writables	^L
Coordinates	↑C
Align	
<hr/>	
Select all	^A
Select	
Clear selection	^Z

The Align menu allows you to align a group of selected gadgets in a window

- 1 select one or more gadgets
- 2 decide which gadget you want to align the other gadgets to and press Menu over it (this gadget does not need to be part of the selection)
- 3 go into the **Align** menu and click on the required type of alignment:

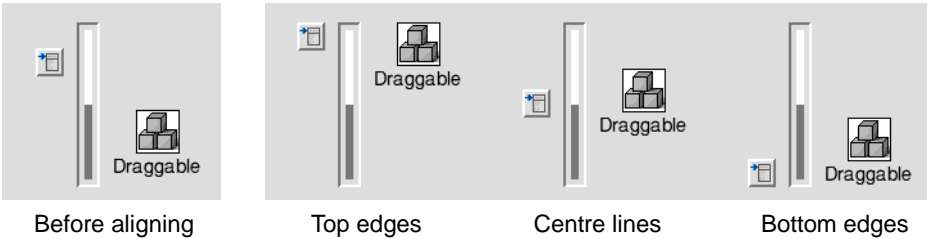
Align	
Top edges	
Centre lines	
Bottom edges	
<hr/>	
Left edges	
Centre lines	
Right edges	

The gadgets are then moved to align with the nominated gadget.

If you press Menu when the pointer is not over a gadget the Align menu will be faded. **Lock to grid** is ignored when aligning.

Aligning gadgets from top to bottom

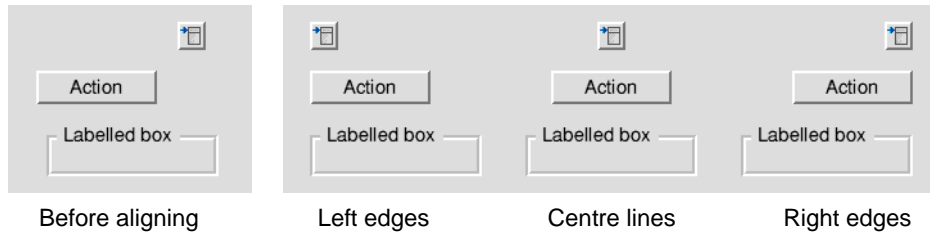
The top three options control how the gadgets will be aligned from top to bottom. In the following example the gadgets are aligned with the slider gadget:





### Aligning gadgets from left to right

The bottom three options control how the gadgets will be aligned from left to right. In the following example the gadgets are aligned with the Labelled box gadget:



### Toolbar object template

The toolbar object prototype is a window object template. Double-clicking on it inside a resource file display will display a blank editing window:

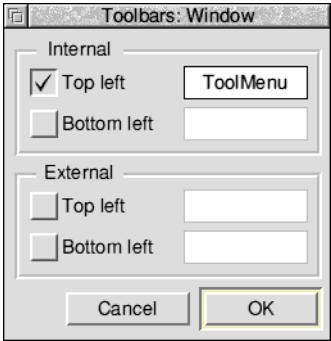


You can then edit this window, move it round the screen (using Ctrl-Shift-Drag Select), change its size (using Ctrl-Shift-Drag Adjust) and colour, drag gadgets into it etc, in exactly the same way as you would edit a window object template.

Positioning the toolbar within a window



Once you have finished designing your toolbar you can open a window object template, go into the window menu for that template, and select the **Toolbars...** option. This will display the following box:

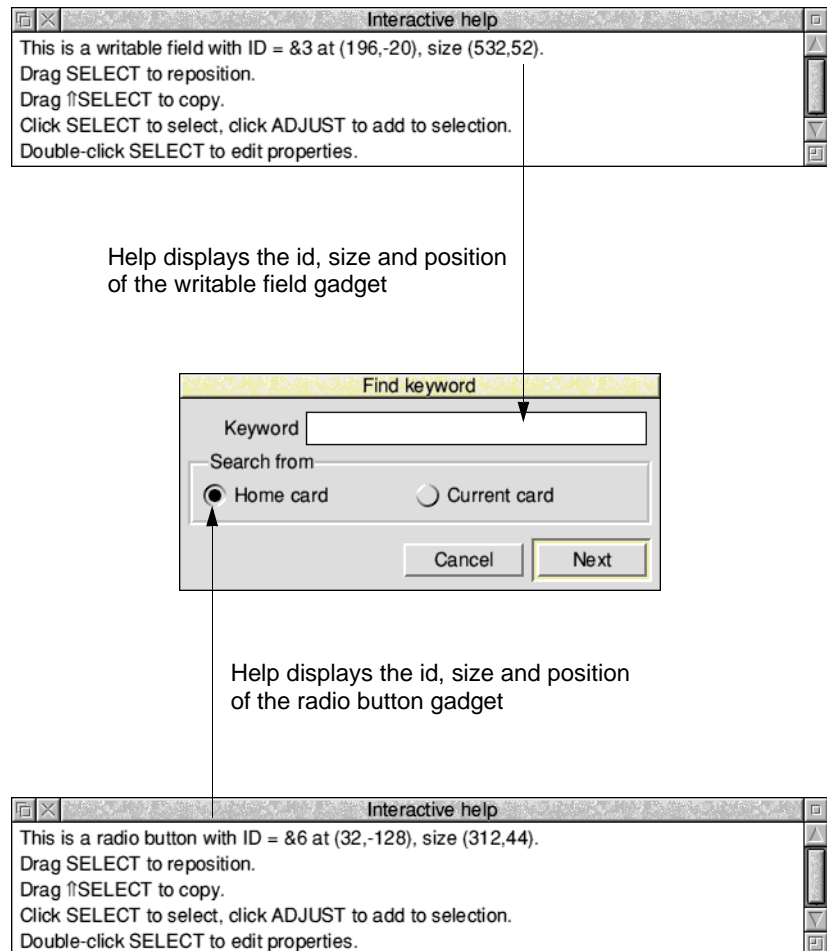


You can enter a toolbar object template name into a writable field after switching on the corresponding option icon (e.g. to the right of **Top left**), or drop a toolbar object template onto the writable field (or onto the associated option icon if the writable field is faded).

## Interactive help for gadgets

The Help window displays the id, size and position of a gadget in a window.

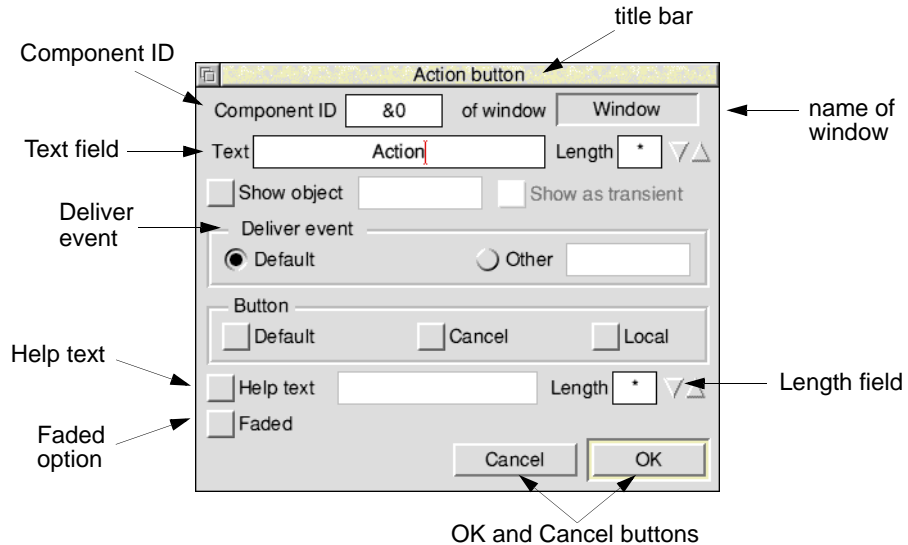
In the following example, a window has been customised as a Find dialogue box and the pointer has been moved over two of the gadgets in the window:



The customised window shown above is described in *Adding a find capability* on page 58 in the *User Interface Toolbox* manual.

## Common features in gadget properties boxes

Some features are common to several or all gadget properties boxes. These are described here rather than repeating their descriptions in each gadget section:



- The title bar contains a string describing the type of gadget being edited.
- The first field is always a writable icon containing the gadget's **Component ID**. Normally you do not have to enter anything into this field as a unique number is automatically assigned to it. If you need to, you can change a gadget's id by typing a new id into this icon. When OK is pressed, the gadget will be renumbered. Duplicate component ids are not allowed within a window; any attempt to set a component id to one already used by a gadget in the same window will be faulted. New gadgets dragged in from the gadgets window have a new unique component id chosen automatically.
- Next to the component id is a display field showing the name of the window object template that the gadget belongs to.
- Many of the dialogues have a **Text** field allowing you to type in a string which appears in the gadget.
- All gadgets have a **Help text** field. This is a writable icon for you to supply a suitable interactive help string for the Toolbox to send to !Help when the mouse pointer is over the gadget. If the **Help text** option icon is not selected, the underlying window will respond to !Help instead.
- All gadgets have a **Faded** option button. Setting this fades the gadget and makes it inactive to mouse clicks.

- Some string entry fields (including Help and Text) have an associated **Length** field. This is a writable number range which specifies the length of the buffer used to hold the text. For more details on how this field works see *Help messages* on page 442.
- Several of the dialogues feature a **Deliver event** section. This section allows you to specify whether or not you want an event to be returned, and what that event should be:
  - **Default** specifies that the default event should be returned.
  - **None** (if present) specifies that no event should be returned.
  - **Other** is used to specify a user event; you may enter event codes in either decimal or hex (by prefixing with 'E').
- Every gadget properties dialogue has **OK** and **Cancel** buttons (see page 444 for more details).

### Opening a gadget properties box

You can open the properties dialogue box for a gadget by double-clicking on the gadget in the Window editor.

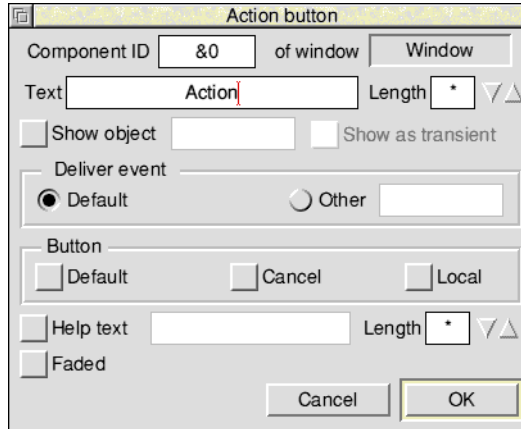
The following sections describe in detail the layout and extra controls of each type of gadget properties dialogue:

Gadget	see page
Action button properties	478
Adjuster arrow properties	479
Button properties	479
Display field properties	481
Draggable properties	481
Label properties	482
Labelled box properties	483
Number range properties	483
Option button properties	485
Pop-up menu properties	486
Radio button properties	486
Slider properties	487
String set properties	488
Writable field properties	490

## Action button properties

Action

The action button properties box is displayed as follows:



The **Show object** option controls whether pressing this button should cause another object to be shown automatically. You can enter the object template's name into the associated writable field, or drag the object template into this field (or onto the associated option icon if the field is faded). This mechanism may be used to make nested dialogues.

**Show as transient** selects whether the object will be shown as a transient or not.

The **Button** section allows you to specify the operation of the action button.

**Default** controls whether this button is the default for the window it is in. If you select it, the button is given a highlighted border and is activated by any presses of the Return key within its window.

**Cancel** controls whether this button is the cancel button for the window it is in. If this is selected, all clicks on the button cause the window to be closed. Also any Escape key presses when the parent window has the caret cause the Cancel button to be activated.

When you make an action button into the Default or Cancel button for its window, that attribute is removed from the button that previously had it.

If you drag an action button into another window, the editor checks that the strictures regarding Default and Cancel buttons are not violated (that there must be at most one of each). If necessary the previous 'owners' of these attributes are made into normal action buttons.

Whenever the Default attribute is added to an action button, its bounding box is automatically enlarged to include the special border, and when the attribute is removed, the bounding box is made correspondingly smaller.

**Local** makes an action button into a Local action button. Unlike a normal action button, activating it will not cause the parent window to be closed.

### Adjuster arrow properties



The adjuster arrow properties box is displayed as follows:

The 'Adjuster Arrow' dialog box contains the following fields and controls:

- Component ID:** &0 of window Window
- Direction:** Radio buttons for Left, Right (selected), Up, and Down.
- Help text:** A text input field.
- Length:** A numeric input field with up/down arrow buttons.
- Faded:** A checkbox.
- Buttons:** Cancel and OK.

The **Direction** radio buttons control the direction that the arrow button is pointing in, and hence whether the button will return 'up' or 'down' events.

### Button properties



The Button gadget exposes most of the underlying Wimp icon, allowing you to create custom controls. The Button properties box is displayed as follows:

The 'Button' dialog box contains the following fields and controls:

- Component ID:** &0 of window Window
- Text/Sprite:** Checkboxes for Text (checked) and Sprite. The text input field contains 'Button'.
- Length:** 8
- Validation:** A text input field.
- Length:** 1
- Use client's sprite area:** A checkbox.
- Return menu clicks:** A checkbox.
- Button type:** 0
- ESG:** 0
- Colours:**
  - Foreground:** 7
  - Background:** 0
- Icon flags:**
  - ☒ Border
  - ☒ H-centred
  - ☒ V-centred
  - ☐ Filled
  - ☐ Adjust
  - ☐ Half size
  - ☐ Needs help
  - ☐ Right justified
- Help text:** A text input field.
- Length:** \*
- Faded:** A checkbox.
- Buttons:** Cancel and OK.

**Text** and **Sprite** are option buttons controlling the contents of the icon. By switching the two buttons on or off, or just switching one of them on, you can produce four combinations. The effects of these various combinations are described in the *RISC OS Programmer's Reference Manual* on page 3-101. If necessary you can then specify a validation string in the **Validation** field. Note, however, that if you only switch on Sprite, then the pointer must be to a sprite name.

**Use client's sprite area** specifies that the Toolbox should first check on those areas set up by `Toolbox_Initialise`, rather than using the default Wimp Sprite area.

**Return menu clicks** specifies that a Menu click is returned to the client application (instead of being processed and acted upon by the Toolbox).

**Button Type** is a string set offering the sixteen possible Wimp button types:

0 Never	8 Double/Drag
1 Always	9 Menu icon
2 Auto-repeat	10 Double/Click/drag
3 Click	11 Radio
4 Release	12 Type 12
5 Double click	13 Type 13
6 Click/Drag	14 Write/Click/Drag
7 Release/Drag	15 Writeable

**ESG** is a writeable field for the input of the icon's Exclusive Selection Group number. This number is constrained to be between 0 and 31.

**Foreground** and **Background** offer the choice of the sixteen standard Wimp colours from a pop-up menu. The associated display field shows the chosen colour, as well as the Wimp colour number in a contrasting colour.

The option buttons under **Icon flags** are used to set the remaining icon flag bits that are not implicitly defined by the above settings. The correspondence between buttons and icon flag bits is as follows (see the *RISC OS Programmer's Reference Manual* entry for `Wimp_CreateIcon` on page 1-93 for more details):

Button	Bit
Border	2
H-centred	3
V-centred	4
Filled	5
Adjust	10
Half size	11
Needs help	7
Right justified	9



There are three icon flag bits that are pre-set which you cannot change:

Bit	Set to
6	always set to system font
8	always indirected
21	always unselected when first displayed

### Display field properties



The display field properties box is displayed as follows:

The 'Display field' dialog box contains the following fields and controls:

- Component ID:** A text box containing '&0'.
- of window:** A dropdown menu set to 'Window'.
- Text:** A text box containing 'Display'.
- Length:** A text box containing '\*' with up and down arrow buttons.
- Justify:** Three radio buttons: 'Left' (unselected), 'Centre' (selected), and 'Right' (unselected).
- Help text:** A text box (empty) and a 'Length' field with '\*' and arrow buttons.
- Faded:** An unchecked checkbox.
- Buttons:** 'Cancel' and 'OK' buttons at the bottom right.

The **Justify** radio buttons are used to choose whether the contents are positioned to the left, right or centre of the gadget.

### Draggable properties



The draggable properties box is displayed as follows:

The 'Draggable' dialog box contains the following fields and controls:

- Component ID:** A text box containing '&0'.
- of window:** A dropdown menu set to 'Window'.
- Text:** A checked checkbox, a text box containing 'Draggable', and a 'Length' field with '\*' and arrow buttons.
- Sprite:** A checked checkbox, a text box containing 'file\_fae', and a 'Length' field with '\*' and arrow buttons.
- Deliver event at start of drag:** An unchecked checkbox.
- Use Toolbox IDs:** An unchecked checkbox.
- Drag type:** Three radio buttons: 'Drag' (selected), 'Double/Click' (unselected), and 'Double/Select' (unselected).
- Has drop shadow:** A checked checkbox.
- Dithered:** A checked checkbox.
- Help text:** A text box (empty) and a 'Length' field with '\*' and arrow buttons.
- Faded:** An unchecked checkbox.
- Buttons:** 'Cancel' and 'OK' buttons at the bottom right.

The Draggable gadget may have a writable text string, a sprite, or both, as chosen by relevant option buttons. At least one of these must be on.

The **Deliver event at start of drag** option allows you to control delivery of the Draggable\_DragStarted event.

**Use Toolbox IDs** allows you to specify that object/component id pairs of the drag destination will be reported, rather than Wimp window handle/icon handle pairs.

The **Drag type** radio buttons allow you to select the behaviour of the draggable.

**Drag** provides drag behaviour equivalent to dragging a standard Save As box.

**Double/Click** is equivalent to Icon button type 10.

**Double/Select** is equivalent to Icon button type 8.

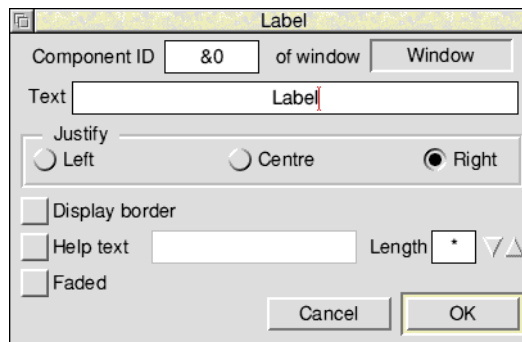
**Has drop shadow** allows you to specify whether the draggable has a grey drop shadow when dragged.

**Dithered** allows you to specify whether the draggable is displayed as semi-transparent when dragged.

## Label properties

Label

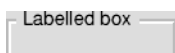
The label properties box is displayed as follows:



The **Justify** radio buttons are used to choose whether the contents are positioned to the left, right or centre of the gadget.

**Display border** controls whether the gadget's bounding box is drawn or not.

## Labelled box properties

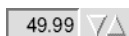


The labelled box properties box is displayed as follows:

The labelled box can have either a textual or sprite label, but not both. This is chosen using the **Text** and **Sprite** radio buttons. The text entry field next to the unselected radio button is faded.

**Filled** allows you to specify that the background to the sprite is set to grey.

## Number range properties



The number range properties box is displayed as follows:

**Deliver events when value changes** controls whether the application receives `NumberRange_ValueChanged` events when the contents of the writable change.

**Initial, Minimum, Maximum** and **Step Size** are writable fields in which you specify the main parameters of the number range. They are always specified as integers.

**Precision** controls the display of a decimal point; its value is the number of digits to be displayed to the right of the point (thus if precision is 2, the value 2.34 is specified as 234). To display integers, set Precision to 0.

**Has numerical display** controls whether any numbers are displayed.

**Display** and **Writable** select whether the display area may be typed into. If **Writable** is on, the **Link to gadgets** section allows you to specify which gadgets the caret should be moved to when the Tab, Shift Tab, up-arrow and down-arrow keys are pressed. If you drag a gadget into the **Before** or **After** writable fields (or their associated option icons) its component id is entered into the field automatically. Normally, however, you would use the **Link writables** option in the Edit menu to determine the path taken by the caret. See *Moving the caret between writable gadgets* on page 468 for more details.

The **Justify** radio buttons are used to choose whether the numeric value is positioned to the left, right or centre of the numerical display field.

**Display width** allows you to specify the width (in multiples of 4 OS units) of the field that displays the number (only if **Has slider** is switched on).

**Has adjusters** controls whether adjuster arrows are displayed; if selected, they will appear as a pair of buttons to the right of the display area (or, if there is a slider, at either end of the slider).

**Has slider** controls the presence and positioning of the gadget's associated slider. The slider is always placed 8 OS units away from the display area, and may be to the left or right of it. The slider will be interactive only if the writable radio button is selected.

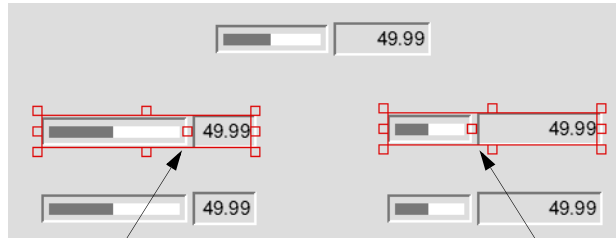
The **Slider colour** section allows you to specify the colours of the slider:

**Bar** is a display field showing the colour of the slider's bar. The colour is set by specifying a Wimp colour number from the attached pop-up menu.

**Background** is a display field showing the background colour of the slider's bar. The colour is set by specifying a Wimp colour number from the attached pop-up menu.

### Altering the size of the numerical field

As well as the normal eight resize handles, number range gadgets which display a slider and numerical display have an additional handle. You can drag this handle to the left or right to adjust the size of the numerical display field:



drag the handle to the right  
to shorten the numerical field

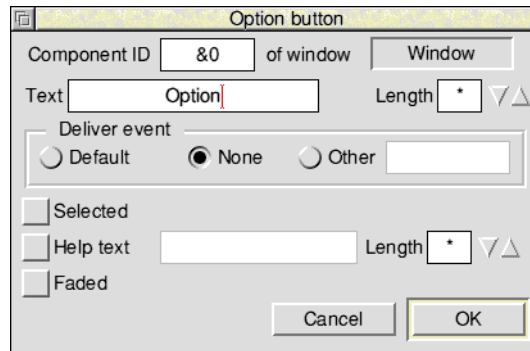
drag the handle to the left  
to lengthen the numerical field

Note: You can only alter the size of the numerical field on one number range gadget at a time. If you try and resize this field on a selection of number range gadgets only the gadget you are actually resizing will be resized.

### Option button properties

Option

The option button properties box is displayed as follows:



**Selected** chooses whether this button is initially switched on or not.

### Pop-up menu properties



The pop-up menu properties box is displayed as follows:

**Show menu** controls whether a menu will be automatically shown when the menu button is clicked. The template name of the menu to be attached may be filled in by dragging a Menu object template to this field. If no Menu object template is supplied, the application will be expected to create it at run-time in response to the PopUp\_MenuAboutToBeShown event.

**Deliver event before showing** controls whether the client application will receive a PopUp\_MenuAboutToBeShown event when the object is about to be shown.

### Radio button properties



The radio button properties box is displayed as follows:

Each radio button is a separate gadget and belongs to a 'radio group', this group being the set of radio buttons with which it is mutually exclusive. The radio group is implemented by means of a 'Group Number' (see *Radio buttons* on page 400) in the Toolbox data structure that describes the gadget; the group number is not the same as the Wimp's ESG (which the Toolbox does not use). You cannot specify the

group number explicitly, instead you must use the **Make radio group** option in the Edit menu; however, the group number assigned by ResEd is always displayed in the **in group** field.

**Selected** chooses whether the button is initially on or off; only one button in the group may be on at once, and switching another on will turn off the previously-on button.

## Slider properties



The slider properties box is displayed as follows:

The **Type** radio buttons select between a read/write slider and a read-only one.

The **Orientation** radio buttons select whether the slider is horizontal or vertical. When a slider's orientation is changed, it is rotated through 90 degrees about its centre point.

**Slider colour Bar** is a display field showing the colour of the slider's bar. The colour is set by specifying a Wimp colour number from the attached pop-up menu.

**Slider colour Background** is a display field showing the background colour of the slider. The colour is set by specifying a Wimp colour number from the attached pop-up menu.

The **Deliver events** buttons control when the application will receive Slider\_ValueChanged events.

**Minimum** and **Maximum** are the signed integer bounds of the slider's range.

The **Initial** value and **Step size** are constrained to be valid given the current minimum and maximum settings.

String set properties



The string set properties box is displayed as follows:

A screenshot of the 'String Set' properties dialog box. It contains various fields and controls for configuring a string set. The 'Component ID' is '&0' and 'of window' is 'Window'. The 'Title' is 'Items'. The 'Strings' field contains 'Item 1,Item 2'. The 'Initial' field contains 'String set' and has a 'Length' of '\*'. The 'Has display field' is checked, with 'Display' selected over 'Writable'. The 'Justify' options are 'Left', 'Centre' (selected), and 'Right'. The 'Deliver events' section has 'Value Changed' selected over 'About To Be Shown'. There is a 'Specify allowed characters' section with a 'Length' of '\*'. Below that is an 'Allowed characters' section with checkboxes for 'a-z', 'A-Z', '0-9', and 'Other'. The 'Link to gadgets' section has 'Before' and 'After' fields. There is a 'Help text' field with a 'Length' of '\*'. A 'Faded' checkbox is at the bottom left. 'Cancel' and 'OK' buttons are at the bottom right.

To set up a string set, enter the list of available strings into the **Strings** writable field. The list is comma-separated; to include a comma in one of the strings, precede it with a backslash. To include a literal backslash, use two backslashes.

The **Initial** writable field is for entering the string whose value will be used as the initial contents of the string set. This string does not have to be one of the list of available strings.

**Has display field** controls whether any text is displayed.



**Display** and **Writable** select whether the display area may be typed into. If **Writable** is switched on, the display area of the string set will be writable and the user may enter any desired string into it – not just one of the predetermined choices. Switching on **Writable** also enables you to fill in the **Specify allowed characters** section.

The **Justify** radio buttons are used to choose whether the contents are positioned to the left, right or centre of the display area.

**Deliver events Value Changed** controls whether the application receives `StringSet_ValueChanged` events when the contents of the writable change.

**Deliver events About To Be Shown** controls whether the client application will receive a `StringSet_AboutToBeShown` event when the object is about to be shown.

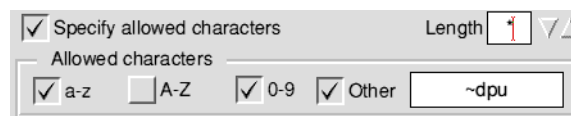
The **Specify allowed characters** section allows you to specify what characters may be typed into the display area. If you do not switch on this option any character will be accepted (before you can fill in the **Specify allowed characters** section you must first switch on **Writable**).

**Length** determines the size of buffer allocated to the validation string.

**Allowed characters** accepts a pattern for the characters that should be allowed in the gadget.

- The three option buttons marked **a-z**, **A-Z** and **0-9** enable you to specify the lower-case letters a-z, the upper-case letters A-Z and the digits 0-9.
- The **Other** option allows you to enter a pattern as for the Wimp's icon validation string 'A' command (for more information on the A command see the *RISC OS Programmer's Reference Manual* entry for `Wimp_CreateIcon` on page 3-102).

For example, if you wanted to specify that the only characters allowed were the digits 0-9 and the lower-case letters a-z, except for 'd', 'p' and 'u', you would fill this section in as follows:



The **Link to gadgets** section allows you to specify which gadgets the caret should be moved to when the Tab, Shift Tab, up-arrow and down-arrow keys are pressed. If you drag a gadget into the **Before** or **After** writable fields (or into the associated option icon if the writable field is faded) its component id is entered into the field automatically. Normally, however, you would use the **Link writables** option in the Edit menu to determine the path taken by the caret. See *Moving the caret between writable gadgets* on page 468 for more details.

## Writable field properties

Writable

The writable field properties box is displayed as follows:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Writable field". It contains several sections: "Component ID" with a text field containing "&0" and a dropdown set to "Window"; "Text" with a text field containing "Writable" and a "Length" dropdown set to "\*"; "Justify" with three radio buttons: "Left", "Centre" (selected), and "Right"; "Specify allowed characters" with a checkbox, a "Length" dropdown set to "\*", and a section for "Allowed characters" with checkboxes for "a-z", "A-Z", "0-9", and "Other" followed by a text field; "Password behaviour" with a checkbox; "Link to gadgets" with a checkbox, "Before" and "After" text fields, and a "Link" button; "Deliver events when value changes" with a checkbox; "Help text" with a text field and a "Length" dropdown set to "\*"; and "Faded" with a checkbox. At the bottom are "Cancel" and "OK" buttons.

The **Justify** radio buttons are used to choose whether the contents are positioned to the left, right or centre of the gadget.

The **Specify allowed characters** section allows you to specify what characters may be typed into the display area. **Length** determines the size of buffer allocated to the validation string. **Allowed characters** accepts a pattern for the characters that should be allowed in the gadget as for the Wimp's icon validation string 'A' command. For a full description of allowed characters see the section on allowed characters on the previous page.

If **Password behaviour** is switched on, then any characters entered will be displayed as minus signs.

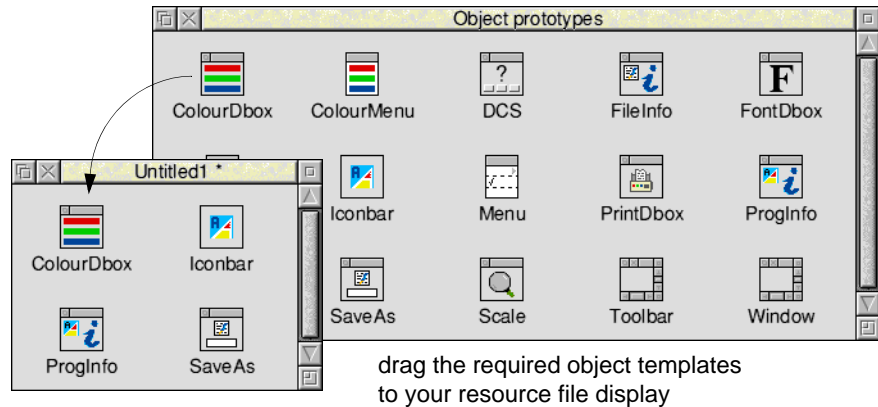
The **Link to gadgets** section allows you to specify which gadgets the caret should be moved to when the Tab, Shift Tab, up-arrow and down-arrow keys are pressed. If you drag a gadget into the **Before** or **After** writable fields (or into the associated option icon if the writable field is faded) its component id is entered into the field automatically. Normally, however, you would use the **Link writables** option in the Edit menu to determine the path taken by the caret. See *Moving the caret between writable gadgets* on page 468 for more details.

**Deliver events when value changes** controls whether the application receives WritableField\_ValueChanged events when the contents of the writable change.

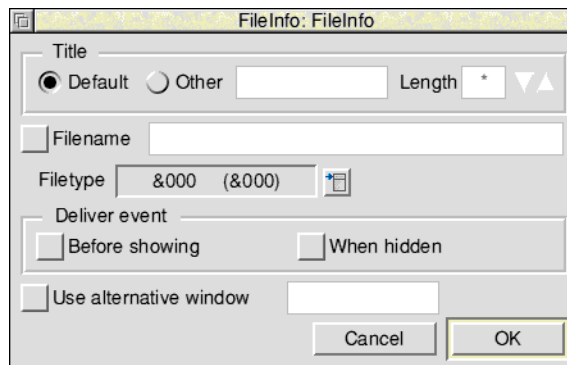
## Editing other classes

There are three stages in editing any of the remaining object templates.

- 1 Display the object prototypes window and drag the required object templates from the object prototypes window into your resource file display:



- 2 Edit each object template by double-clicking on its icon in the resource file display. An editing window for that object template will then be opened. For example, the File Info object template:

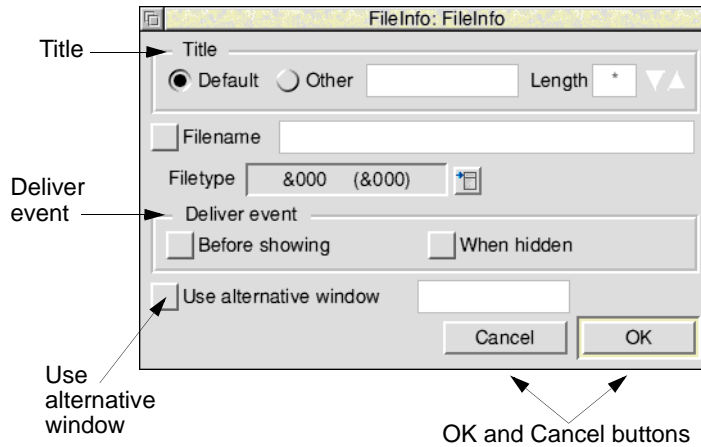


In general the editing dialogue boxes for these remaining object templates are not WYSIWYG representations of the underlying objects.

- 3 Close the editing window with the **OK** button to confirm the changes you have made. If you close the editing window with the **Cancel** button, the modified data is discarded.

## Common features in standard dialogue boxes and menus

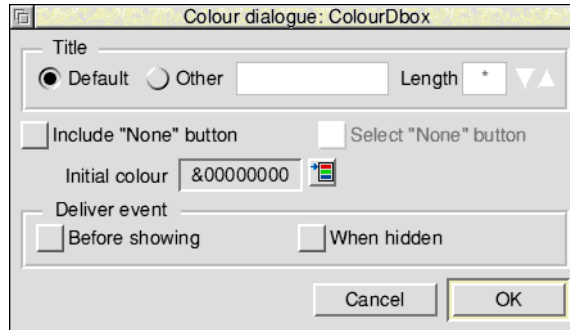
Some features are common to several or all standard dialogue boxes or standard menus. These are described here rather than repeating their descriptions in each individual section:



- **Title** is the title string to appear in the title bar of the dialogue box or menu. If this is set to **Default**, the module will provide a suitable default. If it is set to **Other**, the accompanying writable fields are unfaded for you to specify an initial title and its maximum length.
- **Deliver event** controls the following:
  - Before showing** controls whether the client application will receive a `DialogueAboutToBeShown` event when the object is about to be shown.
  - When hidden** specifies that the client application will receive a `DialogueCompleted` event when the object is hidden.
- **Use alternative window** is an option button which controls the availability of the writable field next to it. If the option is switched on, you may enter the name of a Window object template to be used as the prototype for creating the relevant object template, instead of the standard one (alternatively you can drag a window object template icon from the resource file display into the writable field – or into the associated option icon if the writable field is faded). This enables any standard dialogue or menu to be given a custom appearance. The custom window must contain gadgets similar to those used in the default module window; see the relevant chapter on the particular module for details.
- Every dialogue box and menu has **OK** and **Cancel** buttons.

## Colour Dialogue class

The Colour Dialogue object template is displayed as follows:



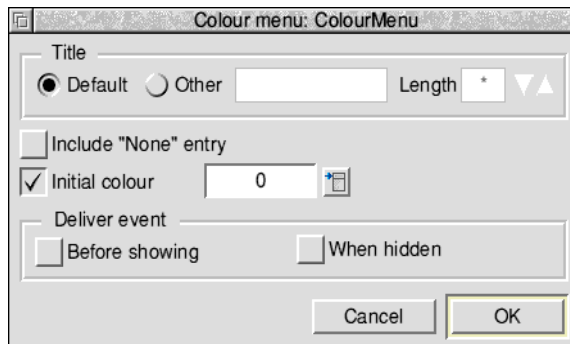
**Include "None" button** is an option button that decides whether the dialogue will allow the choice of 'no' colour.

**Select "None" button** specifies that the **None** button is selected by default.

**Initial colour** is a display field that shows the RGB value of the selected colour. Next to it is a pop-up button which summons a colour picker from which the initial colour may be chosen.

## Colour Menu class

The Colour Menu object template is displayed as follows:

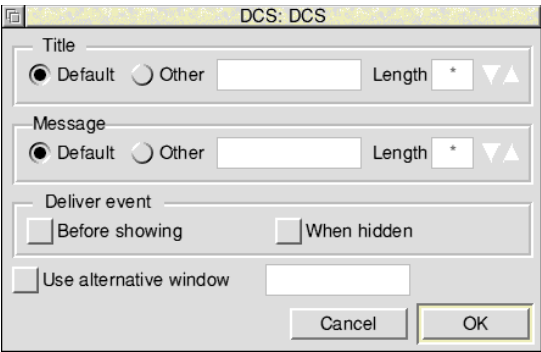


**Include "None" entry** is an option button that controls the presence of an entry for 'no colour' (i.e. **None**) on the menu.

The **Initial colour** display field shows the initially-ticked colour, and the pop-up menu to the right of it is itself a colour menu enabling the initial colour to be chosen. The option icon controls whether any value is ticked or not.

### DCS class

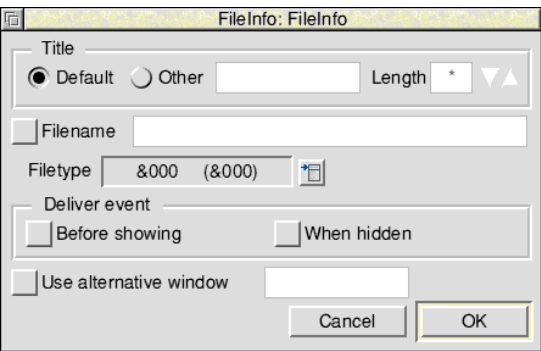
The DCS (Discard, Cancel, Save) object template is displayed as follows:



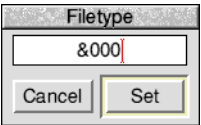
**Message** is a writable field for entering the message to be displayed in the centre of the window. Its behaviour is similar to that of the **Title** field.

### File Info class

The File Info object template is displayed as follows:



**Filename** is a writable field containing the initial contents of the filename display.

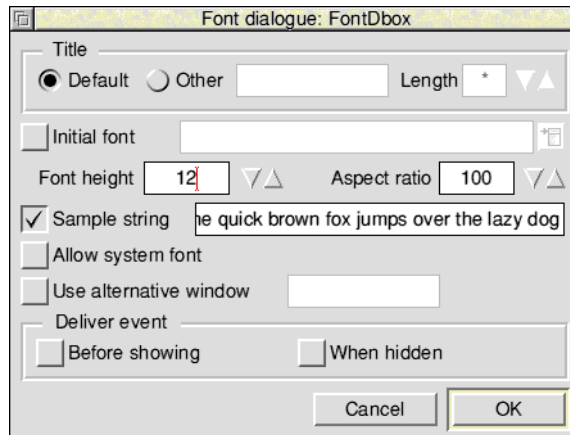


**Filetype** is a display field showing the initial filetype's name and hex value. Next to it is a pop-up menu button which displays a list of filetypes for you to choose from. If you want to specify a filetype not on this list you can go to the Filetype dialogue box (via the **Other** menu option) and fill in the writable field with any filetype name or number. The number must be in decimal unless preceded with '&'. The two special filetypes 'directory' (&1000) and 'application' (&2000) may also be entered.

Note that no interface is provided for setting the 'filesize', 'modified' and 'date' fields of the File Info object template because these cannot be known when the template is being created. They must be filled in by the application at run-time.

## Font Dialogue class

The Font Dialogue object template is displayed as follows:



**Initial font** is a writable field for you to type in the initial font name to be put into the font dialogue. Alternatively, you can select a font from the pop-up menu next to the writable field. Note that it is possible that the initial font will not be available at run-time; if so, a default will be substituted by the module (as will be the case if the option icon is not switched on).

**Font height** is a number range giving the initial contents of the object's font height setting. You can change the integer value using the adjuster arrows, or type a new value in yourself.

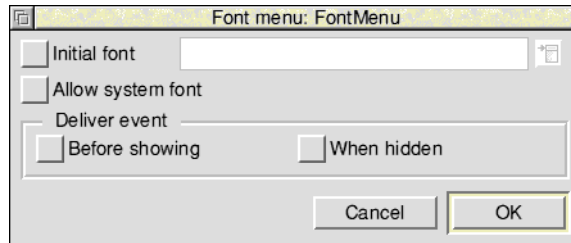
**Aspect ratio** is a number range giving the initial contents of the object's aspect ratio setting. You can change the integer value using the adjuster arrows, or type a new value in yourself.

**Sample string** is a writable field that lets you specify the test string to be displayed when the Font Dialogue's Try button is pressed. If the option icon is not switched on, the module will substitute a default.

The **Allow system font** option button controls whether System Font will be selectable using the Font Dialogue object.

## Font Menu class

The Font Menu object template is displayed as follows:



**Initial font** is a writable field for you to type in the initial font name. Alternatively, you can select a font from the popup menu next to the writable field. Note that it is possible that the initial font will not be available at run-time; if so, a default will be substituted by the module (as will be the case if the option icon is not switched on).

The **Allow system font** option button controls whether System Font will be on the menu. If you switch this option on, the **Initial font** menu has System Font on it too.



## Iconbar icon class

The Iconbar icon object template is displayed as follows:

**Position** and **Priority** control where on the iconbar the icon will appear. You can select the position from the adjoining pop-up menu or enter a value directly into the writable field.

Value	Position
-1	✓ Right side of iconbar
-2	Left side of iconbar
-3	Left of specified icon
-4	Right of specified icon
-5	Left side, scanning from left
-6	Left side, scanning from right
-7	Right side, scanning from left
-8	Right side, scanning from right

- Types -3 and -4 require a Wimp icon handle to be passed into the call to `Toolbox_ShowObject` to specify which icon the position is relative to. They are also incompatible with the object's auto-show bit being set, as they depend on a Wimp icon handle being specified in the call to `Toolbox_ShowObject`. The editor does not force this bit to be clear in these cases; the effect of setting it is undefined.

- Types -5, -6, -7 and -8 require an integer Priority to be specified in the writable field provided. The priority level is as documented in the RISC OS *Programmer's Reference Manual* entry for Wimp\_Createlcon on page 1-93. The Priority field is faded when Position is not set to one of -5 through -8. Priority is normally a decimal integer, but a hex value may be entered by preceding it with an '&'.

**Sprite name** is a writable field where you can enter the name of the sprite to be displayed in the icon. If the icon is to display text as well, you should switch on the **Text** option button. This unfades the two writable fields next to it, enabling you to enter the initial string and maximum length. Switching this option button on sets bit 0 of the object's flags word.

Grouped under **Select button** and **Adjust button** are the controls for specifying what should happen when the user clicks on the icon with the appropriate mouse buttons:

**Deliver event** is a writable field for the input of an event code to be delivered to the application.

**Show object** is a writable field that takes the name of an object template to be shown. You can enter the name of the object template by typing or by dragging an object template into the writable field (or into the associated option icon if the writable field is faded). It is possible to ask for both an event to be delivered and an object to be shown.

The **Transient** option selects whether the object will be shown as a transient or not.

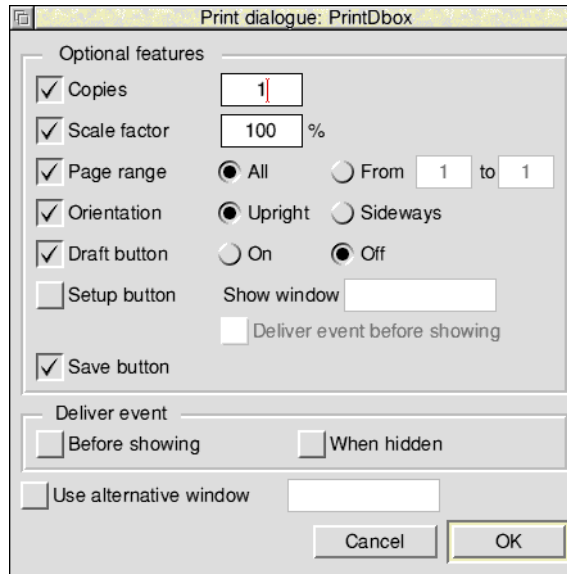
**Deliver event before showing** controls whether the client application will receive an Iconbar\_DialogueAboutToBeShown event when the object is about to be shown.

**Show menu** is a writable field for you to specify the name of a menu to be shown when the user clicks in the icon with the Menu mouse button. If the associated option button is turned off, the field is faded and no menu will be shown. You can enter the name of the menu by dragging a Menu object template from the resource file display into the writable field (or into the associated option icon if the writable field is faded).

The writable field next to **Help text** allows you to supply a suitable interactive help string for the Toolbox to send to !Help when the mouse pointer is over the object. If **Help text** is switched off then no help text will be sent.

## Print Dialogue class

The Print Dialogue object template is displayed as follows:



Listed under **Optional features** are a number of option buttons that select which of the optional controls will be present on the dialogue box. Some of these option buttons control the availability of further parameters.

**Copies** selects whether the dialogue box will allow the user to specify the number of copies to be printed. If this is selected, the writable field to its right is unfaded for the initial value of the number of copies to be specified.

**Scale factor** selects whether the dialogue box will allow the user to specify a scale factor for the print job. If this is selected, the writable field to its right is unfaded for the initial value of the scale factor to be specified.

**Page range** selects whether the dialogue box will allow the user to specify the range of pages to be printed. If you switch this option on, the two radio buttons to its right are unfaded for you to specify the default page range. Selecting **All** means that the default will be for all pages to be printed. Selecting **From** means that only a specified range of pages will be printed; this range is specified using the two writable fields (which are faded until **From** is selected.)

**Orientation** selects whether the Print dialogue box will include a choice of **Upright** (portrait) or **Sideways** (landscape) mode. The radio buttons to the right of it are faded unless you switch on this option, and enable you to choose what the default orientation will be.

**Draft button** selects whether the Print dialogue box has a Draft option button or not. The associated radio buttons choose the initial state of the Draft button.

**Setup button** selects whether the dialogue box has a **Setup** button. If you switch this option on, the fields underneath and to the right are unfaded to enable the specification of the following parameters:

**Show window** is the name of the Window object template to be used for the Setup dialogue. You can enter this by typing, or by dragging a Window object template into the writable field (or into the associated option icon if the writable field is faded).

**Deliver event before showing** is an option button that controls whether a Print\_SetUpAboutToBeShown event will be delivered before the Setup dialogue is shown.

**Save button** selects whether the Print dialogue box has a **Save** action button for saving the current printing setup.

## Prog Info class

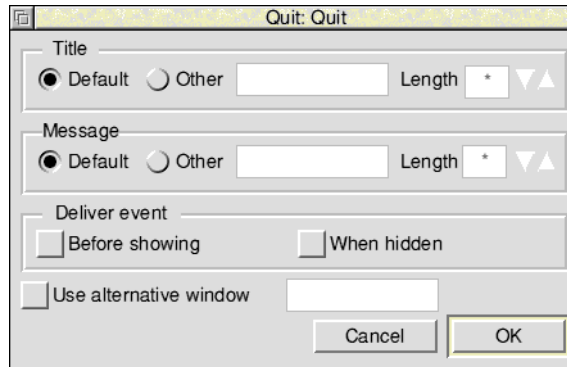
The Prog Info object template is displayed as follows:

**Purpose**, **Author** and **Version** are writable fields that allow you to specify the contents of the corresponding parts of the Prog Info dialogue box.

**Include "Licence"** is an option button which controls whether the Prog Info dialogue box has a **Licence type** field. If you switch on this option, you can select the licence type from the pop-up menu next to the writable field. The licence types available are **Public domain**, **Single user**, **Single machine**, **Site**, **Network** and **Authority**.

## Quit Dialogue class

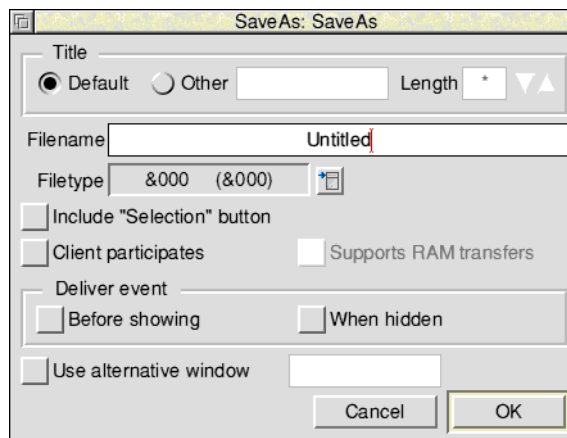
The Quit Dialogue object template is displayed as follows:



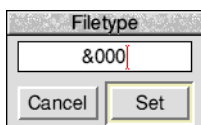
**Message** is a writable field that allows you to enter the message to be displayed in the centre of the window. Its behaviour is similar to that of the **Title** field.

## Save As class

The Save As object template is displayed as follows:



**Filename** is a writable field for you to enter the default filename to be displayed in the dialogue.



**Filetype** is a display field showing the current filetype's name and hex value. Next to it is a pop-up menu button which displays a list of filetypes for you to choose from. If you want to specify a filetype not on this list you can go to the Filetype dialogue box (via the **Other** menu option) and fill in the writable field with any

filetype name or number. The number must be in decimal unless preceded with '&'. The two special filetypes 'directory' (&1000) and 'application' (&2000) may also be entered.

**Include "Selection" Button** is an option button that allows you to control the presence or absence of the Save As dialogue's **Selection** option.

If the **Client participates** option button

- is off, the Save As module will itself handle all data saving on behalf of the client, and the **Supports RAM transfers** option button remains faded.
- is on, the Save As module will involve the client in data saving, using the RAM transfer protocol only when the **Supports RAM transfers** option button is on.

## Scale Dialogue class

The Scale Dialogue object template is displayed as follows:

**Minimum**, **Maximum** and **Step size** are writable integer fields for entering the constraints to be placed on user-specified scale factors.

**Preset values** is a list of four writable fields allowing you to specify the scale factors on the preset size local action buttons.

**Include "Scale to fit" button** is an option button that allows you to control the presence or absence of a **Scale to fit** action button in the Scale Dialogue object.

## Exporting and importing messages

For some purposes, especially internationalisation, you may want to edit the user-visible messages held in a resource file en masse. Rather than manually stepping through every object template in the file, it is useful to be able to edit all the messages in one place. You can do this using the **Export messages** menu item (see page 439). This menu item leads to a Save as box containing a Textfile icon. If you drag this icon into a Filer window or a text editor, ResEd generates a file of messages in MessageTrans format (see the *RISC OS Programmer's Reference Manual* for details).

The file produced contains the messages from each object template in turn. Because these do not have specific tags, a unique tag is generated automatically for each message. These tags take the form:

`<object name> | <number> :`

where

`<object name>` is the name of the object template

`<number>` is the number of the message within that object

You can then edit the resulting message file, and drag it back into the resource file display. A warning is displayed, and you must click on **Import** to proceed.

The messages are matched to their respective objects by use of the information stored in the tags. So, for example, the message

`SetColours|5:This is the setcolours dialogue`

will replace the fifth message in the object template whose name is 'Setcolours'. This means that you should take extra care when editing a resource file after its messages have been exported, and before they have been imported back again. Objects should not be renamed, and gadgets within window object templates must not be deleted. On the other hand it is safe to add new templates, or to add new gadgets, or move existing gadgets within a window.

**Note:** it is important that you do not alter any of the tags while editing the messages.

When revised messages are imported, to an object that is currently being edited it is forcibly re-loaded to ensure that its editor is kept up-to-date with the changes. Thus there is potential for you to lose changes made while editing, so care should be exercised when importing message files. Indeed, it is best, before exporting or importing messages, to ensure that there are no unconfirmed changes in any dialogue boxes associated with the file.

## Keystroke equivalents

On occasions, it can be quicker when you are working in ResEd to use the keyboard instead of the mouse, especially when you are familiar with ResEd.

### In the resource file display

Keystroke	Effect
Ctrl-O	open the <b>Object flags</b> dialogue box for the selected objects
F3	display a Save As dialogue box

### In the Window editor

Keystroke	Effect
Ctrl-W	open the <b>Main properties</b> dialogue box
Ctrl-E	open the <b>Extents</b> dialogue box
Shift-K	open the <b>Keyboard shortcuts</b> dialogue box
Ctrl-T	open the <b>Toolbars</b> dialogue box
Ctrl-G	open the <b>Gadgets</b> dialogue box
Ctrl-P	open the <b>properties</b> dialogue box for the selected gadget
Shift-C	open the <b>Coordinates</b> dialogue box for the selected gadget
Shift-G	
Ctrl-S	open the <b>Grid</b> dialogue box
Ctrl-R	snap the selected gadgets to the grid
Ctrl-L	make the selected radio buttons into a radio group
Ctrl-F2	link the selected writable gadgets together
Shift-R	close this window
	show all members of the radio group to which the selected radio button belongs

### In the Menu editor

Keystroke	Effect
Ctrl-M	open the <b>Menu properties</b> dialogue box for editing the top-level characteristics of a menu
Ctrl-P	open the <b>Menu entry properties</b> dialogue box for the selected menu entry



## When editing in general

Keystroke	Effect
Ctrl-A	select all entries, gadgets or objects
Ctrl-K	delete selected entries, gadgets or objects
Ctrl-Z	clear current selection

## Mouse behaviour

The following mouse actions work on individual menu entries, gadgets or object templates or selections of the same.

Object prototype windows, gadget windows and menu entry windows behave in the same manner as described below, except that, as they are non-editing windows, they do not allow operations such as deletion or repositioning.

## In the Window editor

Mouse action	Effect	Page
Double-click	on a gadget to open its properties dialogue box	477
Drag Select	on a gadget to move it around the window or to copy it from one window to another or on the resize handle of a gadget to resize it	467 468
Drag Adjust	on the resize handle of a gadget to move it in one direction only	468
Shift-Drag Select	on a gadget to make a copy of it within the window or move it from one window to another (deletes the original)	467
Ctrl-Shift-Drag Select	on a window (with or without a titlebar) to move it around the screen	461
Ctrl-Shift-Drag Adjust	on a window (with or without an Adjust size icon) to change its size	461

---

## In the Menu editor window

Mouse action	Effect	Page
Double-click	on a menu entry to open its properties dialogue box	446
Drag Select	on a menu entry to reposition it within the list of menu entries or to copy it from one menu to another	449
Shift-Drag Select	on a menu entry to make a copy of it within the list of menu entries or move it from one menu to another (deletes the original)	449

## In the resource file display

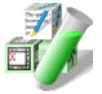
Mouse action	Effect	Page
Double-click	on a window, toolbar or menu object template to open its editor on any other object template to open its properties dialogue box	438
Drag Select	on an object template to copy it from one resource file display to another	438
Shift-Drag Select	on an object template to make a copy of it within the resource file display or move it from one resource file display to another (deletes the original)	438

## Box selection

The mouse can be used in two ways to select a group of object templates:

- Dragging a box around a group of object templates will select any object template partly or wholly within the Select box.
- Dragging a box around a group of object templates while holding down Shift will select only object templates wholly within the Select box.

Groups of gadgets (in the Window editor) or groups of menu entries (in the Menu editor) can be selected in a similar way.



**H**aving constructed a resource file you may wish to experiment with the interface to ensure that the proper links have been made between the different objects in the file. The resource file test application (ResTest) allows you to

- check the appearance and behaviour of all the objects in your resource file
- monitor the flow of Toolbox and Wimp event codes inside an event log window and, if required, save this event log to a file.

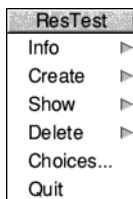
## Starting ResTest



Start ResTest in a similar way to other RISC OS applications, by double-clicking on its application icon. Then drag your resource file (or a selection of object templates from ResEd) to the ResTest iconbar icon.

ResTest will read the resource file and register it with the Toolbox. If your resource file contains any objects marked as auto-create they will be created automatically; any objects marked as auto-create and auto-show will be created and displayed. Thus certain objects in the resource file may appear immediately (e.g. iconbar icons). If these objects are linked to other objects, they will also be created, and these will be shown when you perform the appropriate action. For example, if an iconbar icon is linked to a menu, the menu will be shown when you press the Menu button on the icon. Then if the menu itself is linked to submenus, these will be shown when you traverse the submenu arrows.

## The iconbar menu



Once you have dragged your resource file to the ResTest icon then you can click Menu on the iconbar icon and the ResTest menu will be displayed.

**Info** displays an Info dialogue box.

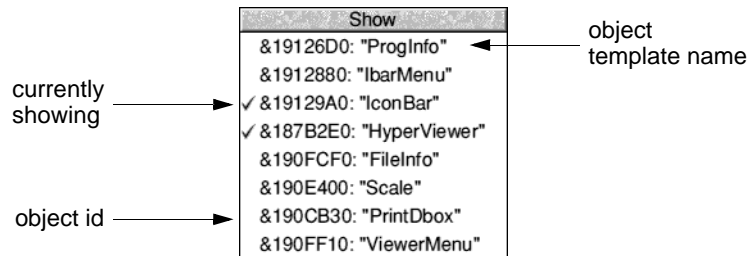
**Create** displays all the object template names in the resource file. Choosing an entry calls `Toolbox_CreateObject` on that template and creates the object. Shared objects which have already been created are shaded to indicate that they cannot be created more than once.

**Show** displays all the objects that have been created from the object templates. If you go to this submenu immediately after dragging your resource file to ResTest, only two types of object will be displayed:

- those objects marked auto-create
- other objects referenced from those objects (see *Attached objects* on page 11).

So, for example, if the only object marked auto-create was an iconbar icon object, then that object would be displayed, plus the menu object referenced by the iconbar icon object, plus any objects referenced by that menu object. Other objects are added to the Show list as you create them from the **Create** submenu.

Each entry shows the run-time generated object id and the name, or the object template from which it was created. For example:



Entries which are currently showing are ticked. You can cause an unshown object to be shown by clicking Select on its entry, and cause a shown object to be unshown by unticking. Click with the Adjust button causes an object to be shown transiently, and the menu tree will not stay open.

**Delete** displays all the objects that have been created. You can call `Toolbox_DeleteObject` on an object by clicking on its entry. If the object has unshared children then they are deleted too (a shared object will only be deleted when all its uses are deleted – see *Deleting an object* on page 7).

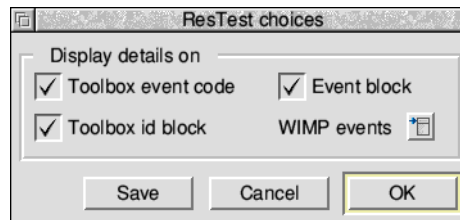
Note: If you delete one or more objects created by a menu object (i.e. attached to the menu object), and then try and delete the menu object itself, you may see the following ResTest error displayed (you should not worry about this error):

Invalid Object Id (*object id*)

*object id* is the object id of the attached object that was deleted before the menu object was deleted

So, in the example displayed of a Show menu (taken from the example application constructed in the chapter *Building an application* on page 39), if the Scale object were deleted, and then ViewerMenu were deleted (ViewerMenu is the menu object that created the Scale object), then the above error message would be displayed and the object id would be that of the Scale object.

**Choices** displays the following dialogue box:



This box allows you to select what information is displayed in the event log window. The options are fully described in the following section *The event log window*.

**Quit** shuts down ResTest, removes all its windows from the screen, and deletes any objects that were created in that session.

## The event log window

If you click Select on the ResTest iconbar icon, the event log window is displayed. This window contains a log of the events received from the Toolbox. You can use this to verify that the proper assignment of events to user actions has been made.

The output in the log window displays four sets of information, depending on what options you have selected from the Choices box in the ResTest menu:



## Toolbox event code

This displays the event code (including client-specified events) and the flags value of the event block. It is always preceded by 'EventCode:'

```
EventCode: Menu_AboutToBeShown (flags = 0x00000000)
EventCode: Menu_Selection (flags = 0x00000000)
EventCode: <client event 0x00000202> (flags = 0x00000000)
```

## Toolbox id block

This displays the contents of the id block. It is always preceded by 'IdBlock:'

```
IdBlock is: (so =0x0196DF8C sc =0xFFFFFFFF po =0x0196DE4C pc =0xFFFFFFFF ao =0x0196E4C  
IdBlock is: (so =0x0196DF8C sc =0x00000004 po =0x0196DE4C pc =0xFFFFFFFF ao =0x0196E4C  
IdBlock is: (so =0x0196D7CC sc =0x0000000E po =0x0196DF8C pc =0x00000004 ao =0x0196E4C
```

where

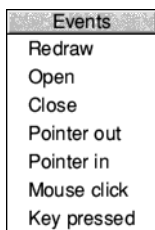
so = self object  
sc = self component  
po = parent object  
pc = parent component  
ao = ancestor object  
ac = ancestor component

## Event block

Once an event has occurred (e.g. DragEnded), information about that event is returned in the event block. This information is always displayed indented by eight spaces (how much information is displayed depends on the event):

```
    window handle = 0x0187D605  
    icon handle   = -1  
    x = 850  
    y = 460
```

## WIMP events

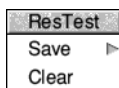


This option allows you to select various types of Wimp events from the attached pop-up menu. The information displayed is always preceded by 'WIMP event:'.

The following example shows the Wimp events reported when **Pointer in** and **Pointer out** have been selected from the pop-up menu:

```
WIMP event: Pointer_Entering_Window  
WIMP event: Pointer_Leaving_Window
```

## The ResTest menu



If you click Menu in the log window the ResTest menu is displayed.

**Save** leads to a **Save as** dialogue allowing you to save the text in the log window to a file.

**Clear** removes any text in the log window.

---

# Appendix A: Resource File Formats

---

**T**his appendix describes the resource file format, which is intended to replace the Wimp Template file format, allowing you to specify the appearance of not only window definitions, but also menu definitions and dialogue boxes.

## Terminology

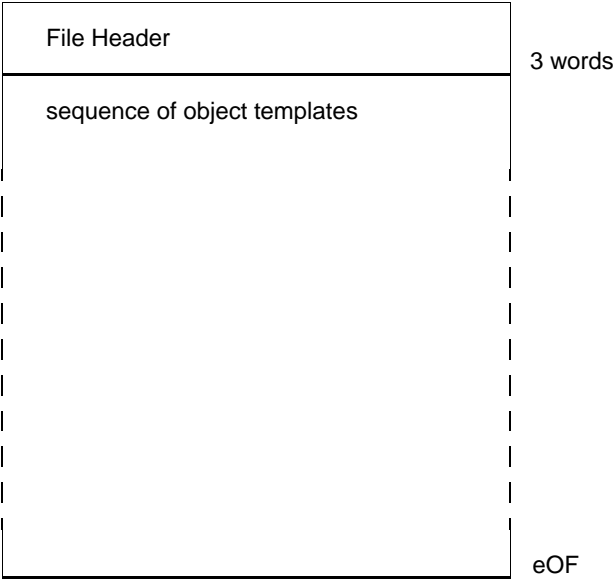
The following terms are used throughout this appendix:

Term	Meaning
word	4 bytes stored in a file in 'little-endian' format; that is the least significant byte of the word is stored first.
resource file	consists of a fixed size header, followed by a contiguous set of user interface object templates or 'objects'. An object consists of a fixed size header followed by the variable size 'body' of the object, followed by 3 tables: string table message table relocations table  All object headers are word-aligned. Unless otherwise explicitly stated, all occurrences of a 'word' in this appendix are assumed also to be aligned on a 4-byte address.
string	is a sequence of ASCII characters terminated by a NUL character. There is one table per object which holds all such strings.  A 'string reference' is given by its byte offset from the start of the strings table.  A null string reference is represented by -1. typedef int StringReference;
message	is some textual information which is visible to the user. All such messages for an object are held in its Messages Table.  A null message reference is represented by -1. typedef int MsgReference;

Resource file format

Diagrammatic representation

Diagrammatically, a resource file is as follows:

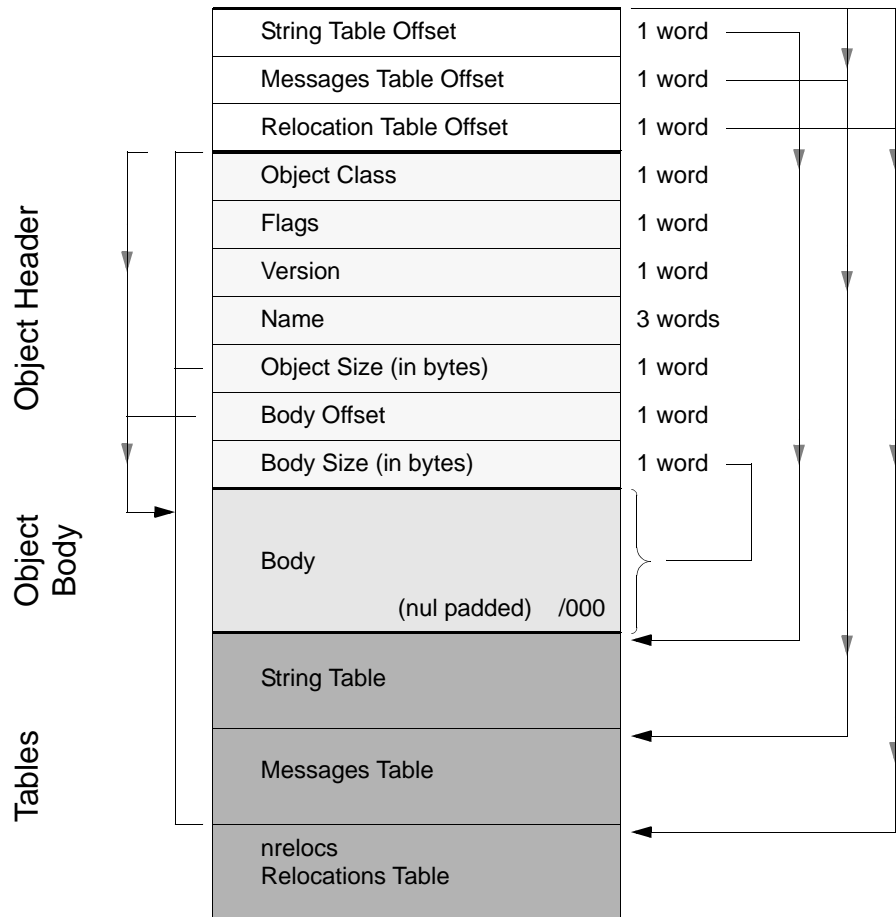


where the file header is:

Resource File ID 'RESF'	1 word
Version Number	1 word
Objects Offset	1 word



A resource file containing no objects has an objects Offset of -1 where an object template is:



A String Table Offset of -1 is used to denote an Object Template which has no String Table.

A Messages Table Offset of -1 is used to denote an Object Template which has no Messages Table.

A Relocation Table Offset of -1 is used to denote an Object Template which has no Relocation Table, and hence the nrelocs must always be > 0, if the Relocation Table exists.

When the Resource File is loaded by the Toolbox, the body offset field is always relocated to be a real pointer (but this is not specified as a relocation in the relocation table).

## Resource File Format Description

A resource file begins with a standard fixed size header which has the format:

'RESF'	1 word	
Version number	1 word	(* 100, e.g. 109 means 1.09)
Objects Offset	1 word	

The current version number is 1.01

The objects Offset gives the byte offset from the beginning of the file where the object templates begin.

```
typedef struct
{
    int      file_id;
    int      version_number;
    int      objects_offset;
} ResF_FileHeader;
```

The rest of the file starts with a contiguous sequence of object templates where each template has 3 words giving the byte offsets from the beginning of the template of each of the string, messages and relocations tables, followed by a standard fixed size header, followed by the body of the object, followed by its tables. All object headers are word-aligned.

Where the object header is:

Field	Type
Class of object	1 word
Flags	1 word
Version of the class module required	1 word
Object name	3 words
Total size of object in bytes	1 word
Offset of object body from start of object header	1 word
Total size of object body in bytes	1 word

Note that the name of an object is limited to 12 bytes including a terminating NUL character.

'Total size' of object refers to the total size of the object header, the object body and the string and message tables.

'Body size' refers only to the size of the object's body (i.e. without its string and message tables).

```
typedef struct
{
    int            class;
    int            flags;
    int            version;
    char           name[12];
    int            total_size;
    int            body_offset;
    int            body_size;
} ObjectTemplateHeader;

typedef struct
{
    int            string_table_offset;
    int            messages_table_offset;
    int            relocations_table_offset;
    ObjectTemplateHeader  hdr;
} ResourceFileObjectTemplateHeader;
```

The use of a `body_offset` field is to allow expansion in the header, without losing backwards compatibility.

## Relocations at Load Time

When the resource file is loaded into memory, the relocations table for each object is used to relocate any string, message, sprite area references and object offsets which appear in the object's body.

This means that the file can be loaded in one operation into memory, and when relocation has been done, the memory can be used directly to create an object.

## Table Formats

There are three tables which optionally appear at the end of an object template: strings table, messages table, and relocations table.

### Strings table

The string table contains all strings which are not visible to the user which are referenced elsewhere in the object. A string is a sequence of ASCII characters terminated by a NULL character.

**Messages Table**

The messages table contains a list of strings consisting of text strings which will be visible to the user at run-time, and which are referred to by the object template.

**Relocations Table**

The first word of the relocations table gives the number of relocations in the table.

The relocations table contains entries which give the byte offset of a word in the object which should be relocated at load time; this is an offset from the base of the object's body. Each entry is two words long: the byte offset, and a relocation directive. Possible relocation directives are:

Relocation Directive	Value	Meaning
StringReference	1	add the address of the base of the strings table to this word
MsgReference	2	add the address of the base of the messages table to this word
SpriteAreaReference	3	enter the address of the Sprite area into which the client's Sprites file has been loaded
ObjectOffset	4	add the address of the object's body to this word

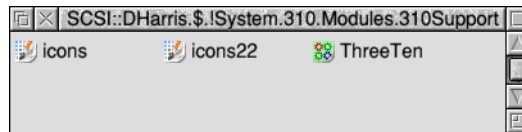
---

# Appendix B: Support for RISC OS 3.10

---

**T**his appendix describes the support provided for RISC OS 3.10.

RISC OS 3.10 support is located in `System:Modules.310Support`:



RISC OS 3.10 has the following restrictions which would affect Toolbox applications:

- basic 3.10 does not have 3D icons as standard (e.g. option buttons and radio buttons)
- fading icons on 3.10 is not always consistent (e.g. text label will gain a white box behind the text)
- deleting a window while a 'slabbed' button is pressed in will cause a crash.

The ThreeTen module addresses the above restrictions. It is automatically loaded by the Window module when running on a RISC OS 3.10 machine, and also looks for a new version of DragASprite and BorderUtils. It is able to co-exist with New Look.



---

# Index

---

## A

- action buttons 351-359
  - editing 478
  - events
    - ActionButton\_Selected 359
  - methods
    - ActionButton\_GetClickShow 357
    - ActionButton\_GetEvent 355
    - ActionButton\_GetText 353
    - ActionButton\_SetClickShow 356
    - ActionButton\_SetEvent 354
    - ActionButton\_SetFont 358
    - ActionButton\_SetText 352
  - templates 359
- adjuster arrows 360
  - editing 479
  - events
    - Adjuster\_Clicked 360
  - templates 360
- ancestor objects 9
- attached objects 11
- auto-create 10
- auto-show 10

## B

- button gadget 361-367
  - editing 479
  - events 367
  - methods
    - Button\_GetFlags 361
    - Button\_GetValidation 366
    - Button\_GetValue 364
    - Button\_SetFlags 362
    - Button\_SetFont 367

- Button\_SetValidation 365
- Button\_SetValue 363
- templates 367

## C

- class, definition 2
- client application, definition 2
- client handle
  - returning value of 25
  - setting and reading 9
- Colour Dialogue box class 67-82
  - Application Program Interface 68
  - attributes 68
  - before dialogue box is shown 69
  - colour selections 70
  - completing a colour dialogue 70
  - creating and deleting 68
  - editing 493
  - events
    - ColourDbox\_AboutToBeShown 79
    - ColourDbox\_ColourSelected 81
    - ColourDbox\_DialogueCompleted 81
  - methods
    - ColourDbox\_GetColour 74
    - ColourDbox\_GetColourModel 76
    - ColourDbox\_GetDialogueHandle 72
    - ColourDbox\_GetHelpMessage 79
    - ColourDbox\_GetNoneAvailable 77
    - ColourDbox\_GetWindowHandle 71
    - ColourDbox\_SetColour 73
    - ColourDbox\_SetColourModel 75
    - ColourDbox\_SetHelpMessage 78
    - ColourDbox\_SetNoneAvailable 77
  - setting and reading colour model 70
  - setting and reading colours 69

- showing 69
    - templates 82
    - user interface 67
  - Colour Menu Class
    - editing 493
  - Colour Menu class 83-92
    - Application Program Interface 84
    - attributes 84
    - before menu is shown 85
    - colour selection processing 85
    - creating and deleting 84
    - events
      - ColourMenu\_AboutToBeShown 90
      - ColourMenu\_ColourSelection 91
      - ColourMenu\_HasBeenHidden 90
    - methods
      - ColourMenu\_GetColour 87
      - ColourMenu\_GetNoneAvailable 88
      - ColourMenu\_GetTitle 89
      - ColourMenu\_SetColour 86
      - ColourMenu\_SetNoneAvailable 87
      - ColourMenu\_SetTitle 88
    - setting and getting selected colour 85
    - showing 85
    - templates 91
    - user interface 83
    - Wimp event handling 92
  - colours, definition 2
  - component 6
- D**
- dialogue box, definition 2
  - Discard/Cancel/Save Dialogue box class 93-105
    - Application Program Interface 94
    - attributes 94
    - changing the DCS message 96
    - creating and deleting 95
    - editing 494
    - events
      - DCS\_AboutToBeShown 101
      - DCS\_Cancel 103
      - DCS\_DialogueCompleted 103
      - DCS\_Discard 102
      - DCS\_Save 102
    - getting the underlying window ID 96
    - methods
      - DCS\_GetMessage 98
      - DCS\_GetTitle 100
      - DCS\_GetWindowID 96
      - DCS\_SetMessage 97
      - DCS\_SetTitle 99
    - showing 95
    - templates 104
    - user interface 93
    - Wimp event handling 105
    - window definition 104
  - display fields 368-370
    - editing 481
    - methods
      - DisplayField\_GetValue 369
      - DisplayField\_SetFont 370
      - DisplayField\_SetValue 368
    - templates 370
  - draggable gadgets 371-378
    - editing 481
    - events
      - Draggable\_DragEnded 378
      - Draggable\_DragStarted 377
    - methods
      - Draggable\_GetSprite 373
      - Draggable\_GetState 376
      - Draggable\_GetText 375
      - Draggable\_SetSprite 372
      - Draggable\_SetState 376
      - Draggable\_SetText 374
    - templates 378
  - DrawFile
    - example 55
    - specifying 62



## E

events *see* Toolbox event 11-14  
 example application *see* Hyper example 39

## F

File Info Dialogue box class 107-121  
   Application Program Interface 108  
   attributes 108  
   before File Info box is shown 109  
   creating and deleting 109  
   editing 494  
   events  
     FileInfo\_AboutToBeShown 119  
     FileInfo\_DialogueCompleted 120  
   methods  
     FileInfo\_GetDate 116  
     FileInfo\_GetFileName 114  
     FileInfo\_GetFileSize 115  
     FileInfo\_GetFileType 112  
     FileInfo\_GetModified 111  
     FileInfo\_GetTitle 118  
     FileInfo\_GetWindowID 110  
     FileInfo\_SetDate 116  
     FileInfo\_SetFileName 113  
     FileInfo\_SetFileSize 115  
     FileInfo\_SetFileType 112  
     FileInfo\_SetModified 111  
     FileInfo\_SetTitle 117  
   setting and reading fields 110  
   showing 109  
   templates 120  
   user interface 107  
   Wimp event handling 121  
   window definition 121  
 Font Dialogue box class 123-139  
   Application Program Interface 124  
   attributes 124  
   before Font box is shown 126  
   completing a Font dialogue 126  
   creating and deleting 125

  current selection 126  
   editing 495  
   events  
     FontDbox\_AboutToBeShown 135  
     FontDbox\_ApplyFont 136  
     FontDbox\_DialogueCompleted 136  
   font selection 126  
   methods  
     FontDbox\_GetFont 129  
     FontDbox\_GetSize 131  
     FontDbox\_GetTitle 134  
     FontDbox\_GetTryString 132  
     FontDbox\_GetWindowID 127  
     FontDbox\_SetFont 128  
     FontDbox\_SetSize 130  
     FontDbox\_SetTitle 133  
     FontDbox\_SetTryString 131  
   showing 125  
   templates 137  
   user interface 123  
   Wimp event handling 139  
   Window definition 137  
 Font Menu class 141-148  
   Application Program Interface 142  
   attributes 142  
   before Font Menu is shown 143  
   creating and deleting 142  
   editing 496  
   events  
     FontMenu\_AboutToBeShown 146  
     FontMenu\_FontSelection 147  
     FontMenu\_HasBeenHidden 146  
   font selection 143  
     receiving 143  
   methods  
     FontMenu\_GetFont 145  
     FontMenu\_SetFont 144  
   showing 143  
   templates 147  
   user interface 141  
   Wimp event handling 148

## G

Gadgets 304, 337-350  
    Application Program Interface 337  
    attributes 338  
    creating and deleting 339  
    flags 340  
    hotspots 56  
    methods 342  
        Gadget\_GetFlags 342  
        Gadget\_GetHelpMessage 345  
        Gadget\_GetIconList 346  
        Gadget\_GetType 347  
        Gadget\_MoveGadget 348  
        Gadget\_SetFlags 343  
        Gadget\_SetHelpMessage 344  
    Wimp event handling 350

## H

Hyper example 39-66  
    client events 64  
    client handle  
        example of 42  
    coding 48, 55  
    component id 56  
    creating a basic resource file 43  
    description of !Hyper 39  
    design requirements 41  
    designing 41  
    DrawFile 55  
    event driven interface 42  
    exporting a drawfile 60  
    file loading 50  
    find box 58  
    handlers 48  
    handling views 51  
    HCL files 39, 65  
    hotspots 56  
    keyboard short-cuts 57  
    linking data structures 56  
    object id 55

redraw handler 55  
ResTest 47  
scaling 55  
shared objects 42  
status bar 57

## I

Iconbar icon class 149-168  
    Adjust click events 153  
    Application Program Interface 150  
    attributes 150  
    creating and deleting 151, 173, 303  
    editing 497  
    events  
        Iconbar\_AdjustAboutToBeShown 167  
        Iconbar\_Clicked 166  
        Iconbar\_SelectAboutToBeShown 166  
    Help messages 153  
    menu 152  
    methods  
        Iconbar\_GetEvent 157  
        Iconbar\_GetHelpMessage 161  
        Iconbar\_GetIconHandle 154  
        Iconbar\_GetMenu 155  
        Iconbar\_GetShow 159  
        Iconbar\_GetSprite 165  
        Iconbar\_GetText 163  
        Iconbar\_SetEvent 156  
        Iconbar\_SetHelpMessage 160  
        Iconbar\_SetMenu 155  
        Iconbar\_SetShow 158  
        Iconbar\_SetSprite 164  
        Iconbar\_SetText 162  
    position and priority 152  
    Select click events 153  
    showing 152  
    templates 167  
    user interface 149  
    Wimp event handling 168  
id block 13

## L

labelled boxes 380  
     editing 483  
     templates 380  
 labels 379  
     editing 482  
     templates 379

## M

Menu class 169-204  
     adding menu entries 174  
     Adjust clicks on a Menu 175  
     Application Program Interface 170  
     attaching a submenu dynamically 175  
     attributes 170  
     changing a Menu entry 174  
     creating and deleting 173  
     events  
         Menu\_AboutToBeShown 201  
         Menu\_HasBeenHidden 201  
         Menu\_Selection 202  
         Menu\_SubMenu 202  
     fading a Menu entry 174  
     interactive help 176  
     menu attributes 170  
     menu entry attributes 171  
     Menu hits 175  
     methods  
         Menu\_AddEntry 197  
         Menu\_GetClickEvent 192  
         Menu\_GetClickShow 190  
         Menu\_GetEntryHelpMessage 196  
         Menu\_GetEntrySprite 184  
         Menu\_GetEntryText 182  
         Menu\_GetFade 180  
         Menu\_GetHeight 198  
         Menu\_GetHelpMessage 194  
         Menu\_GetSubMenuEvent 188  
         Menu\_GetSubMenuShow 186  
         Menu\_GetTick 178

        Menu\_GetTitle 200  
         Menu\_GetWidth 199  
         Menu\_RemoveEntry 198  
         Menu\_SetClickEvent 191  
         Menu\_SetClickShow 189  
         Menu\_SetEntryHelpMessage 195  
         Menu\_SetEntrySprite 183  
         Menu\_SetEntryText 181  
         Menu\_SetFade 179  
         Menu\_SetHelpMessage 193  
         Menu\_SetSubMenuEvent 187  
         Menu\_SetSubMenuShow 185  
         Menu\_SetTick 177  
         Menu\_SetTitle 199  
     removing menu entries 174  
     showing 174  
     submenu arrows 176  
     templates 203  
     ticking a Menu entry 174  
     user interface 169  
     Wimp event handling 204  
 messages 16  
     exporting 503  
     importing 503  
     messages table 516  
 method, definition 2  
 methods of objects 7

## N

number ranges 381-388  
     editing 483  
     events  
         NumberRange\_ValueChanged 388  
     methods  
         NumberRange\_GetBounds 386  
         NumberRange\_GetValue 384  
         NumberRange\_SetBounds 385  
         NumberRange\_SetValue 383  
     templates 388

## O

### object

- ancestor 9
  - returning 28
- attached objects 11
- auto-create 10
- auto-show 10
- classes 6
- component 6
- creating 7, 19
  - side effects 11
- customising a dialogue box 58
- definition 2
- deleting 7, 20
- example 17
- getting class of 6
- getting the template name 29
- hiding 8, 22
- id 6
- methods 7
- miscellaneous operation 24
- parent 9
  - returning 27
- returning class of 26
- returning information on 23
- returning value of client handle 25
- setting value of client handle 25
- shared 8, 42
- show types 8
- showing 7
- showing on screen 21
- template flags 441

### object id 6

- example 55

### option buttons 389-395

- editing 485
- events
  - OptionButton\_StateChanged 395
- methods
  - OptionButton\_GetEvent 393
  - OptionButton\_GetLabel 391
  - OptionButton\_GetState 394

- OptionButton\_SetEvent 392
- OptionButton\_SetLabel 390
- OptionButton\_SetState 393
- templates 395

## P

- parent objects 9
- persistent dialogue box, definition 2
- pop-up menus 396-399
  - editing 486
  - events
    - PopUp\_AboutToBeShown 399
  - methods
    - PopUp\_GetMenu 398
    - PopUp\_SetMenu 397
  - templates 399

- Print Dialogue box class 205-224
  - action button clicks 209
  - Application Program Interface 206
  - attributes 207
  - before Print box is shown 209
  - creating and deleting 208
  - editing 499
  - events
    - Print\_AboutToBeShown 217
    - Print\_DialogueCompleted 218
    - Print\_Print 221
    - Print\_Save 220
    - Print\_SetUp 220
    - Print\_SetUpAboutToBeShown 219
  - getting and setting printing options 209
  - getting Print Dialogue's title 210
  - getting underlying object ID 210
  - methods
    - Print\_GetCopies 212
    - Print\_GetDraft 216
    - Print\_GetOrientation 214
    - Print\_GetPageRange 211
    - Print\_GetScale 213
    - Print\_GetTitle 215
    - Print\_GetWindowID 210
    - Print\_SetCopies 212
    - Print\_SetDraft 216
    - Print\_SetOrientation 214
    - Print\_SetPageRange 211
    - Print\_SetScale 213
  - printing options 209
  - SetUp window 210
  - showing 208
  - templates 222
  - user interface 205
  - Wimp event handling 224
  - Window definition 222
- Prog Info Dialogue box class 225-243
  - Application Program Interface 226
  - attributes 226
  - creating and deleting 227
  - editing 500
  - events
    - ProgInfo\_AboutToBeShown 239
    - ProgInfo\_DialogueCompleted 241
    - ProgInfo\_LaunchWebPage 242
  - licence type 228
  - methods
    - ProgInfo\_GetLicenceType 233
    - ProgInfo\_GetTitle 235
    - ProgInfo\_GetUri 237
    - ProgInfo\_GetVersion 231
    - ProgInfo\_GetWebEvent 239
    - ProgInfo\_GetWindowID 229
    - ProgInfo\_SetLicenceType 232
    - ProgInfo\_SetTitle 234
    - ProgInfo\_SetUri 236
    - ProgInfo\_SetVersion 230
    - ProgInfo\_SetWebEvent 238
  - showing 227
  - templates 242
  - user interface 225
  - version string 227
  - Wimp event handling 243
  - Window definition 243

## Q

- Quit Dialogue box class 245-256
  - Application Program Interface 246
  - attributes 246
  - changing the Quit Dialogue's message 248
  - creating and deleting 247
  - editing 501
  - events
    - Quit\_AboutToBeShown 253
    - Quit\_Cancel 255
    - Quit\_DialogueCompleted 254
    - Quit\_Quit 254
  - getting ID of underlying window 248
  - methods
    - Quit\_GetMessage 250
    - Quit\_GetTitle 252
    - Quit\_GetWindowID 248
    - Quit\_SetMessage 249
    - Quit\_SetTitle 251
  - showing 247
  - templates 255
  - user interface 245
  - Wimp event handling 256
  - Window definition 256

## R

- radio buttons 400-408
  - editing 486
  - events
    - RadioButton\_SetLabel 401
    - RadioButton\_StateChanged 408
  - methods
    - RadioButton\_GetEvent 404
    - RadioButton\_GetLabel 402
    - RadioButton\_GetState 406
    - RadioButton\_SetEvent 403
    - RadioButton\_SetFont 407
    - RadioButton\_SetState 405
  - templates 408
- relocations table 515-516

- ResEd
  - action button properties 478
  - adjuster arrow properties 479
  - aligning gadgets 472
    - faded menu 472
  - button properties 479
  - Cancel box 444
  - colour dialogue template 493
  - colour menu template 493
  - common features in gadget properties 476
  - common features in standard dialogue
    - boxes and menus 492
  - creating a resource file 433
  - DCS template 494
  - dialogue boxes and standard
    - menus 491-502
      - common features 492
      - editing 491
      - example 451, 491
  - display field properties 481
  - draggable properties 481
  - editing an object template 438
  - example application 43
  - exporting messages 503
  - file info template 494
  - font dialogue template 495
  - font menu template 496
  - gadgets 466-490
    - Align menu 472
    - auto-scrolling 467
    - common features 476
    - coordinates dialogue box 471
    - Edit menu 469
    - inserting into a window 466
    - moving the caret between gadgets 468
    - positioning and moving 466
    - radio groups 470
    - re-sizing 468
    - snap to grid 470
    - stacking 468
  - grid in window template 465
  - Help
    - for gadgets 475
    - on menu entries 454, 475
  - help messages 442
  - iconbar icon template 497
  - importing messages 503
  - keyboard short-cuts 462
    - example 57, 453-454
  - label properties 482
  - labelled box properties 483
  - length fields 442
  - Menu class 445-451
    - copying menu entries 449
    - Edit menu 445
    - example 450
    - inserting a new menu entry 449
    - menu entry properties 446
    - menu properties 448
    - moving menu entries 449
    - re-ordering menu entries 449
  - messages
    - exporting 503
    - importing 503
  - number range properties 483
  - object flags 441
  - object prototypes window 437
  - object templates
    - box selection 444
    - Cancel box 444
    - help messages 442
    - Length fields 442
    - OK box 444
    - selection model 443
  - OK box 444
  - option button properties 485
  - pop-up menu properties 486
  - print dialogue template 499
  - prog info template 500
  - quit dialogue template 501
  - radio button properties 486
  - radio groups 470
  - ResEd iconbar icon 436
  - ResEd iconbar menu 436
  - resource file display 438-441
    - copying object templates 438

- Edit menu 440
- File menu 439
- moving object templates 438
- Object flags 441
- saving a resource file 439
- save as template 501
- scale dialogue template 502
- selection model for object templates 443
- slider properties 487
- snap to grid 470
- starting ResEd 436
- string set properties 488
- toolbar example 57
- toolbar template 473
- window objects 455-465
  - closing the window 461
  - colours in a window 461
  - extent of a window 462
  - grid 465
  - main properties 456
  - moving the window 461
  - other properties 459
  - re-sizing the window 461
  - Window menu 455
- writable field properties 490
- resource file
  - definition 2, 14
  - format 14
  - loading 14, 34
- resource file formats 511-516
  - description 514
  - diagrammatic representation 512
  - messages table 516
  - relocations at load time 515
  - relocations table 516
  - strings table 515
- ResTest 507-510
  - event log window
    - clear text in log window 510
    - event block 510
    - save text in log window 510
  - Toolbox event code 509
  - Toolbox id block 510
  - WIMP events 510
  - example session 47
  - iconbar menu 507
    - Choices 509
    - Create 507
    - Delete 508
    - Show 508
  - object ids 55
  - starting ResTest 507
- RISC OS 3.10 support 517



# S

## SaveAs Dialogue box class 257-282

- Application Program Interface 258
- attributes 259
- before dialogue box is shown 263
- cancelling the dialogue 263
- creating and deleting 259
- dialogue completed 265
- editing 501
- error handling 265
- events
  - SaveAs\_AboutToBeShown 277
  - SaveAs\_DialogueCompleted 278
  - SaveAs\_FillBuffer 279
  - SaveAs\_SaveCompleted 280
  - SaveAs\_SaveToFile 278
- file size, setting 263
- filename and filetype, setting 260
- methods
  - SaveAs\_BufferFilled 275
  - SaveAs\_FileSaveCompleted 276
  - SaveAs\_GetFileName 270
  - SaveAs\_GetFileSize 272
  - SaveAs\_GetFileType 271
  - SaveAs\_GetTitle 268
  - SaveAs\_GetWindowID 266
  - SaveAs\_SelectionAvailable 273
  - SaveAs\_SetDataAddress 274
  - SaveAs\_SetFileName 269
  - SaveAs\_SetFileSize 272
  - SaveAs\_SetFileType 271
  - SaveAs\_SetTitle 267
- save completed successfully 265
- saving by the module 263
- saving data from a Toolbox client 261
- saving to a file 264
- saving via RAM transfer 264
- Selection option button 263
- setting file size 263
- setting filename and filetype 260
- showing 260
- templates 280

- user interface 257

- Wimp event handling 281

- Window definition 281

## Scale Dialogue box class 283-297

- Application Program Interface 284
- attributes 285
- before Scale box is shown 286
- cancelling a Scale dialogue 286
- completion of a Scale dialogue 287
- creating and deleting 285
- editing 502
- events
  - Scale\_AboutToBeShown 294
  - Scale\_ApplyFactor 295
  - Scale\_DialogueCompleted 295
- methods
  - Scale\_GetBounds 291
  - Scale\_GetTitle 293
  - Scale\_GetValue 289
  - Scale\_GetWindowID 288
  - Scale\_SetBounds 290
  - Scale\_SetTitle 292
  - Scale\_SetValue 289
- reading and setting the writable field 287
- reading and setting writable field
  - parameters 287
- scale factor 286
- showing 286
- templates 296
- user interface 283
- Wimp event handling 297
- Window definition 296

shared objects 8

- sliders 409-416
  - editing 487
  - events
    - Slider\_ValueChanged 416
  - methods
    - Slider\_GetBounds 413
    - Slider\_GetColour 415
    - Slider\_GetValue 411
    - Slider\_SetBounds 412
    - Slider\_SetColour 414
    - Slider\_SetValue 410
  - templates 416
- string sets 417-425
  - editing 488
  - events
    - StringSet\_AboutToBeShown 424
    - StringSet\_ValueChanged 424
  - methods
    - StringSet\_\_SetFont 423
    - StringSet\_GetComponents 422
    - StringSet\_GetSelected 420
    - StringSet\_SetAllowable 421
    - StringSet\_SetAvailable 418
    - StringSet\_SetSelected 419
  - templates 425
- string, definition 2
- strings table 515
- support for RISC OS 3.10 517

## T

- task initialisation 15
- template flags 441
- templates
  - getting a template name 29
- terminology used in this manual 2
- textual name (name), definition 2
- title, changing 306
- toolbar 473
  - editing 473
  - example 57
  - positioning 473

## Toolbox

- application model 4
- get information for client application 31
- initialising 15, 32
- loading given resource file 34
- messages 16
- SWIs
  - Toolbox\_CreateObject 19
  - Toolbox\_DeleteObject 20
  - Toolbox\_GetAncestor 28
  - Toolbox\_GetClientHandle 25
  - Toolbox\_GetObjectClass 26
  - Toolbox\_GetObjectInfo 23
  - Toolbox\_GetParent 27
  - Toolbox\_GetSysInfo 31
  - Toolbox\_GetTemplateName 29
  - Toolbox\_HideObject 22
  - Toolbox\_Initialise 32
  - Toolbox\_LoadResources 34
  - Toolbox\_ObjectMiscOp 24
  - Toolbox\_RaiseToolboxEvent 30
  - Toolbox\_SetClientHandle 25
  - Toolbox\_ShowObject 21

## Toolbox event 11-14

- AboutToBeShown 42
- definition 12
- event codes 12
- events
  - Toolbox\_Error 36
  - Toolbox\_ObjectAutoCreated 37
  - Toolbox\_ObjectDeleted 37
- format of 12
- id block 13
- raising an event 14
- raising given event 30
- redraw 56

transient dialogue box, definition 2

## U

- User Interface Object (object), definition 2
- user, definition 2

---

## W

### Wimp

- events 5

### Window class 299-333

- Application Program Interface 300

- attributes 300

- changing the title 306

- events

  - Window\_AboutToBeShown 328

  - Window\_HasBeenHidden 329

- gadgets

  - in a window 304

  - see also* Gadgets

- getting and setting a client handle 306

- Help messages 306

- keyboard short-cuts 302, 305, 331

- menu 304

- methods

  - Window\_AddGadget 308

  - Window\_AddKeyboardShortcuts 315

  - Window\_GetHelpMessage 314

  - Window\_GetMenu 310

  - Window\_GetPointer 312

  - Window\_GetTitle 318

  - Window\_GetWimpHandle 307

  - Window\_RemoveGadget 309

  - Window\_RemoveKeyboardShortcuts 316

  - Window\_SetHelpMessage 313

  - Window\_SetMenu 310

  - Window\_SetPointer 311

  - Window\_SetTitle 317

- pointer shapes 305

- showing 303

- templates 329

- user interface 299

- Wimp event handling 332

### word, definition 2

### writable fields 426-431

- editing 490

- events

  - WritableField\_ValueChanged 431

- methods

  - WritableField\_GetValue 428

  - WritableField\_SetAllowable 429

  - WritableField\_SetFont 430

  - WritableField\_SetValue 427

- templates 431



---

# Reader's Comment Form

*User Interface Toolbox, Issue 4*

We would greatly appreciate your comments about this Manual, which will be taken into account for the next issue:

**Did you find the information you wanted?**

**Do you like the way the information is presented?**

**General comments:**

If there is not enough room for your comments, please continue overleaf

How would you classify your experience with computers?

☐

**Used computers before**

☐

**Experienced User**

☐

**Programmer**

☐

**Experienced Programmer**

*Please send an e-mail with your  
comments to:*

manuals@riscosopen.org

**Your name and address:**

This information will only be used to get in touch with you in case we wish to explore your comments further



---